

Videos
Available

Fretboard Logic

Reasoning Behind The Guitar's Unique Tuning



Reveals The Hidden Organization Of The Fretboard

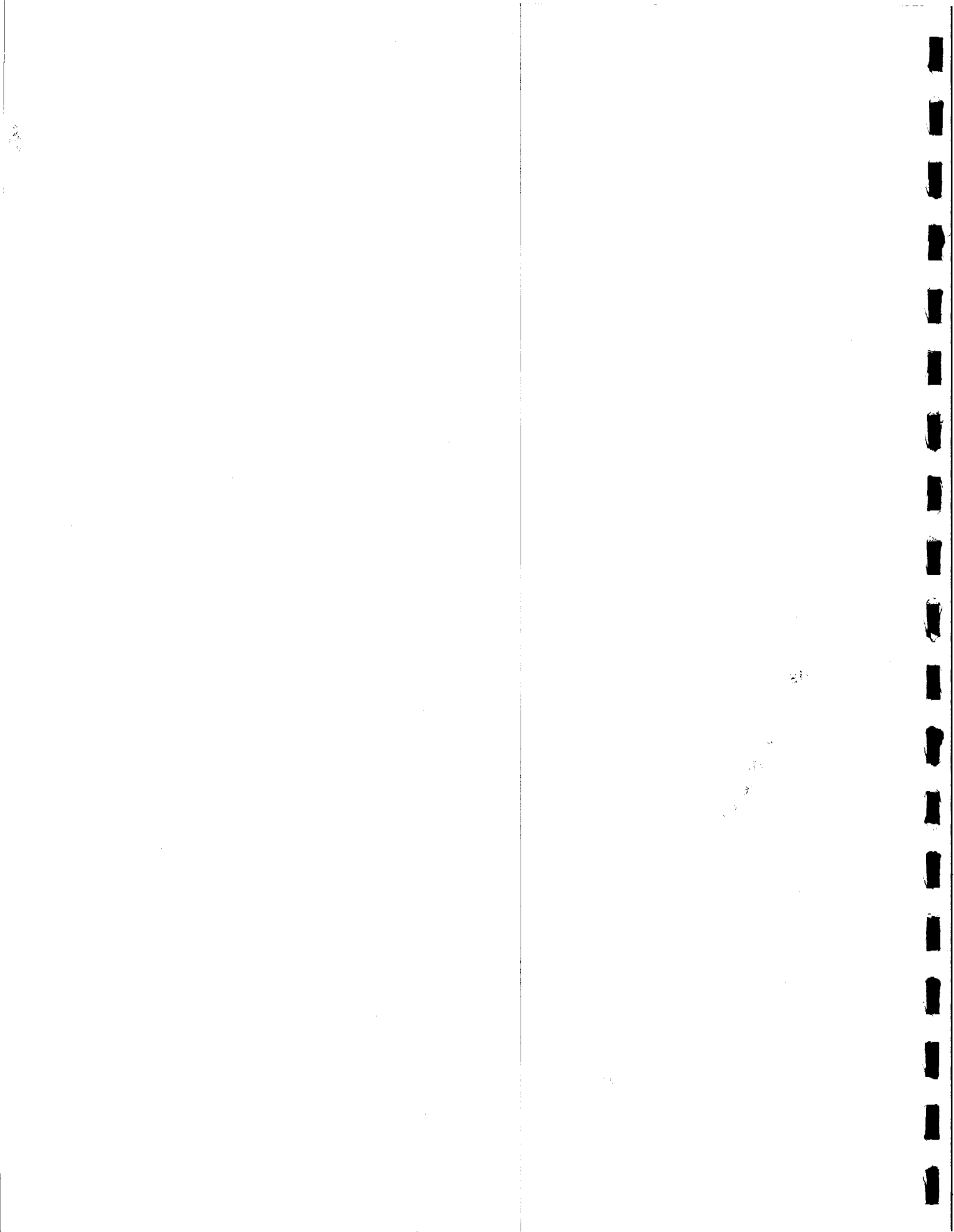


Fretboard Logic

Volume I

Bill Edwards Publishing

305 St. Augustine Ave.
Tampa FL 33617-7229



Dedication

To my many teachers, for contributing to my understanding of the instrument and music, and especially my students, for making me constantly reexamine what I thought I already knew.

Acknowledgements

Of all those who have made contributions, two people in particular deserve recognition here. Dave Carlisle and Steve Hodson have both provided counsel, assistance and expertise at various stages in the development of this method. Dave gets special thanks for his help with the cover design, and Steve for help with Bass

Logic, the videos, marketing and so much more.

I owe them both an enormous debt of gratitude for their continued advice, support and encouragement.

Thanks guys.

Copyright 1983, 1987, 1989 by Bill Edwards

All Rights Reserved

This volume may not be reproduced in whole or in part in any form without written permission from the publisher.

Teachers who wish to use this method may purchase it at a special discount by calling, writing, faxing or emailing to an address or number below. We now maintain an international database for the purpose of referring students who contact us in search of teachers who use Fretboard Logic in their area.

For a free listing in our registry as a Fretboard Logic teacher please contact us at:

Bill Edwards Publishing
305 St. Augustine Ave
Temple Terrace, FL 33617-7229
(813) 985-2689 Phone
(813) 985-0554 Fax
emupub@gate.net Email
billedwards.com Internet

Printed in the United States of America

“

Quote Box

A mind once expanded by a new idea
never again returns to its original dimensions.

Anon.

”

Contents

Preface.....	vii
Introduction.....	ix
The Five Basic Chord Forms.....	1
Forms and Positions - Chords.....	2
The CAGED Sequence - Chords.....	5
Naming Chords by Form and Position.....	7
Scales and Scale Forms.....	13
The Five Basic Scale Forms.....	14
Forms and Positions - Scales.....	16
The CAGED Sequence - Scales.....	17
Naming Scales by Form and Position.....	18
Lead Patterns.....	22
Forms and Positions - Lead Patterns.....	24
The CAGED Sequence - Lead Patterns.....	25
Naming the Lead Patterns.....	26
Finale.....	28
"Testing Testing...".....	29
The Answers to All Your Problems.....	32
The Twelve-Step Program.....	33
Alternate Placement of the "3rd" Interval.....	34
About the Author.....	35



Note Box

This book is a hands-on learning tool. It contains graphic illustrations of patterns that are to be played after the text has been read, left column then right, top to bottom. They are generally presented in order of difficulty in each section. **For the material to be learned and retained, it is essential that the diagrams be played repeatedly until familiar.** Sometimes ideas are best presented by explanation and sometimes by illustration. Both are used whenever possible.



30
25
20
15
10
5
0
-5
-10
-15

Preface

The idea for this book originated in the 1970's when the author was a guitar instructor at a music store. During that period, he stumbled upon something that demonstrated that despite years of lessons and countless books and courses, his teaching methods were still pretty disorganized. While mapping out a student's scale forms for the zillionth time, he finally recognized that although there were seven fundamental tonal orientations (modes), there were actually only five relevant guitar patterns, which corresponded to certain recurring chord forms as well. When the scale forms were rearranged to be played lengthwise along the neck, everything finally fit together for the first time in years of playing and teaching. He became aware that there was a guitar-specific pattern organization that was completely separate from the various music considerations such as theory, technique and style. He eventually came to the conclusion that the issues of this pattern organization should take first priority over the issues of music or style, if a truly structured learning experience was to occur.

Fretboard Logic evolved from the discovery that as a direct result of the guitar's tuning, number of strings, and the intervallic result (4th, 4th, 4th, 3rd, 4th), exactly three separate and specific pattern types occur on the fretboard: Chord Forms, Scale Forms and Lead Patterns. For learning purposes, each of these three pattern types will be examined in the same four contexts: First, as Basic Forms; second, as Forms in Positions; third, as forms in CAGED Sequence along the fretboard; and fourth, Naming them musically, from their form and position. There are five basic Chord Forms, five basic Scale Forms, and two basic Lead Patterns, and they are integral to one another as patterns.

A word about the format of the book. Given what is known about learning and the function of the two hemispheres of the brain, commonly known as left and right brain, the pages of the book have been divided into half text and half graphics whenever practical. The pattern nature of the fretboard also lends itself to this approach. Important concepts and points of interest are captioned in shadow boxes such as the one to the left. Relevant terms are italicized or boldfaced. When boldfaced, the terms are defined in context and included in a glossary at the end of the third and last volume of the series.

“

I am a little world made cunningly.

John Donne

”

17
18
19
20

21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100

Introduction

The guitar has changed in many ways since it evolved away from its ancestors but the tuning system of six strings tuned EADGBE, which is fundamentally different from any other instrument, has reigned as the standard for hundreds of years. The reason for this is that no one has yet been able to improve on it, nor, as you will see, are they ever likely to. In fact, many players have taken this aspect of the instrument for granted without ever questioning it. When you consider that virtually everything that is played on the instrument gets "filtered" through this tuning system, it is ironic that of the millions of people who play, very few fully understand the reasoning behind the pitch selection of the strings. Yet, what could be more essential than a working knowledge of the instrument itself? Most guitar methods tackle bits and pieces of many subjects and present them collectively in the equivalent of baby steps. Fretboard Logic Vol. I will teach you a great deal about just one thing: how the tuning works out on the fretboard in terms of patterns.

First a little background is in order. In this introduction, we'll look at the different classes of tunings for stringed instruments, and then discuss monophonic versus polyphonic capabilities. Next we'll examine instruments that increment in one or two dimensions and some of the problems associated with interpreting music given the different designs. Finally we'll make some observations on ergonomics and the human interface, and conclude with a comparison of methods and a discussion of objectives.

There are two primary classes of tunings for stringed instruments. They are either symmetrical, meaning equal string to string intervals, or chordal, meaning tuned to a specific chord. For example, most of the string family, violins, violas, etc., are tuned symmetrically in 5ths. The electric bass is likewise tuned in straight 4ths. On the other hand, traditional five-string banjo tuning is GDGBD, making an open stringed G Major chord, and a pedal steel is tuned to either an E9th or a C6th chord. The guitar's tuning system is neither symmetrical nor chordal. It is literally in a class by itself. The notes EADGBE from bass to treble, result in the intervals of 4th, 4th, 4th, 3rd, and 4th. The tuning produces the intervals which create the pattern organization on the fretboard.

A **monophone** is an instrument which can only produce one tone at a time. If an instrument is **polyphonic**, it is designed to produce multiple tones simultaneously, making harmonic material such as chords and their voicings possible. Instruments of the brass, woodwind and string families are generally monophonic. Keyboard instruments such as pianos, organs, etc., are polyphonic. Normally, monophones are played in groups such as brass bands, string quartets, and symphony orchestras. The members of the string family, including violins, violas, cellos, etc., given multiple strings, can produce more than one or two notes at a time,

Introduction

but the curvature of the bridge makes playing more than two simultaneous notes impractical in continuous usage. Even with a relatively flat bridge, the guitar would have a similar problem given the limitation of four fretting fingers, if not for the difference in tuning systems. The pattern organization produces an optimization of four fretting fingers, and therefore a practical polyphony.

Another difference in overall instrument design concerns whether the notes increment in only one or two dimensions. On a keyboard, the notes get higher or lower in only one dimension (right to left). On a violin, the notes increment in two dimensions creating a matrix of the playing area. In a matrix, there can be several duplicates of the exact same pitch, whereas on a keyboard, there is one and only one of each. When reading for a matrix instrument, a designation or a choice must be made to determine which of the available duplicates is to be played. However, the symmetry of the tuning means that the musical patterns, such as whole step, whole step, half step, etc., will continue to apply from position to position and string to string, making certain note choices more logical than others. Put another way, the shape of, say, a minor scale will be the same on any string and in any position. The odd interval on the guitar prevents this. With piano, there are several one-to-one correspondences which simplify things for the person reading music. One finger plays one key, producing one pitch, represented by one dot on the staff in standard notation. On guitar, a separate designation is often necessary to specify the string upon which a note should be played. It would appear that since the guitar increments in two dimensions, producing multiples of most notes, combined with the irregular intervals which eliminate musical symmetry, that we are provided with the worst of all possible worlds in terms of design. That would be true only if you attempt to understand the guitar in terms of the matrix of the violin, or the polyphony of the keyboard. The guitar cannot be truly understood in terms of either the violin or the piano except by contrast and comparison (although I am convinced that many teachers and guitar method authors have attempted both).

A major premise of this method is that the issues of the guitar should be understood separate from the issues of music for learning purposes. They are always at work together while playing, but while learning, they are best kept apart in one's mind. The guitar is imbued with a pattern organization which can be considered an ergonomic *interface* between the player and the music he or she plays. On the instrument side, the patterns are the interface for the four fretting fingers as output devices. On the music side, the tone groups and rhythms combine to produce a vibratory interface for our ears as input devices, which we perceive as music of differing quality and character. Those qualities and characters in turn become perceived as styles and physiological messages to which we respond as human beings given our own background and development. The fretboard, to repurpose the old tire ad, is where the rubber meets the road. If you're familiar

Introduction

with computers, think of a piano keyboard as a hardware interface. By contrast, the guitar's should be considered a software interface, and not so obvious. The concept of interface can also be related to the typewriter keyboard in an interesting, if somewhat bizarre, way. Most people never question why each key is placed where it is on a typewriter or computer keyboard. If asked, they usually think what is termed the "QWERTY" organization, was developed for speed and ease of typing. In fact, the reverse is true. The mechanical linkages of the old style typewriters were easily overrun and jammed by an average typist. The designers were unable to come up with a speedier design, so some "Dilbertian" engineer hit upon the idea of slowing people down. The typewriter interface was designed to actually slow down the user to prevent key jams. Fortunately, the guitar's interface was designed to improve output, unlike the typewriter keyboard.

Fretboard Logic was developed to help guitarists achieve their musical goals regardless of whatever style of music or type of guitar is preferred. By becoming acquainted with the guitar's interface, you'll be able to apply other areas of study in a more organized manner. A large percentage of guitarists are self taught and rely on gathering random nuggets of information from here and there without much in the way of a game plan. Unfortunately, a thorough grasp of the fretboard layout is not really the kind of thing that you can pick up off a recording, or learn from a friend. It tends to get lost in the sauce, as the cook said.

Most guitar books fall into three categories: Popular arrangements, methods and what can only be termed reference books. Many books that are advertised as teaching methods are actually only useful for occasional reference material, since the material is not presented with any semblance of organization or structure. The attitude of the authors seems to be, "You figure it out." Fretboard Logic is not just another mindless "chord encyclopedia" or redundant "scale and mode" book. How chords and scales work out on the guitar is actually explained in terms of the fretboard pattern organization. On the other hand, a lot of guitar methods overwhelm even dedicated students by trying to cover reading, theory, technique, repertoire, style, etc., all at one time but on a simplified level. Many teach songs that are of no interest except perhaps, to small children. Books that are style oriented such as rock, heavy metal, blues, jazz, country, and classical methods, often do much the same thing, limiting the focus to certain kinds of music, guitars, techniques and/or artists. The problem with this is they often try to do too much at one time without proper foundations, and frequently students just drift away, perhaps blaming themselves for lack of talent. And another thing. Educational publishers prefer to use public domain material since they don't have to pay out composer royalties. Maybe you don't want to play songs that were a hit 75 years ago. The classic one for this is the kid who went into his first guitar lesson dreaming of "Eruption" and came out playing "Go Tell Aunt Rhody."

Introduction

With all that said, I want to conclude with some observations that may surprise you. As a practicing guitarist, I am of the firm belief that no one else can make you a better player. It is up to each of us as individuals to stand out among the others. There is no method, gimmick, book or video which has the ability to make you play better or worse. Being a quality player means continually practicing and playing with the intent of improving, never giving up and often sacrificing much in the process. You can't substitute a few weeks or months of intense effort for years of sustained effort. That's not even the worst of it. It is all too easy to lose the hard won ground gained by sustained practice, to a few weeks or even days off from the grind. Ok, so you're thinking, "Well, what about those self-taught guys who never read a book or took a lesson and play better than a lot of guys who've taken lessons for years?" As far as I'm concerned, any guitarist can reasonably claim that he or she is self-taught even if they've taken years of lessons and read countless books. The reason is that only we as individuals can make that all important leap from theory to practice, and practice to perfection. Also, it comes easier for some than others.

I see Fretboard Logic as a kind of rosetta stone for guitar players. In other words, it is merely a learning tool. On the other hand, it won't make anyone a better player until they find a way to use it to produce music that other people want to listen to. Each of us has to find our own way to make that happen.

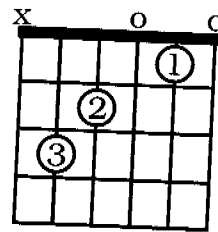
The Five Basic Chord Forms

Although musically, **chords** are groups of three or more different notes played at the same time, on the guitar they are realized through Five Basic Chord Forms, or shapes. (Not three as shown in the little chord computers and certainly not dozens, as suggested in the chord encyclopedias.) There are exactly five fundamentally different ways to play chords as fretboard forms provided for by the tuning. These forms are the **C, A, G, E and D Forms**. They are presented first as open, or unbarred forms, using the first three fingers of the left hand. They can be considered the cornerstone of the fretboard's pattern organization.

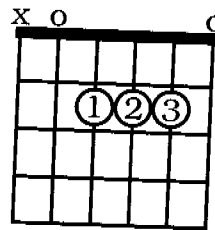
For beginners, the circles show where you place each fretting finger, just behind the frets without touching them. The numbers in the circles represent which finger of the left hand to fret with so that the Index = 1, Middle = 2, Ring = 3, and Pinky = 4. The lines going up and down represent the six strings, and the lines going across are the frets. The dark bar at the top is the nut, indicating open position. An "X" over a string means don't play it with the right hand, and an "O" means play it unfretted or open. **Open** can mean unfretted or unbarred.

If you're a just starting out you can gauge how well you know a chord form by being able to do these three things:

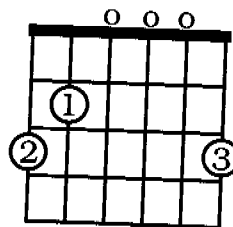
- 1) Play all the chord tones (fretted and open) clearly with no buzzing or muted strings.
- 2) Memorize the form.
- 3) Make the changes from chord to chord quickly and accurately.



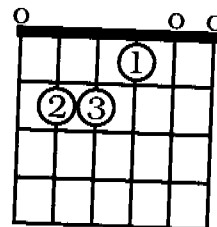
C Form
Open Position
(This is the Fretboard Description.)
C Chord
(This is the Chord Name.)



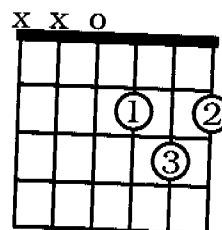
A Form
Open Position
(Guitar Description)
A Chord
(Chord Name)



G Form
Open Position
(Description)
G Chord
(Name)



E Form
Open Position
E Chord



D Form
Open Position
D Chord

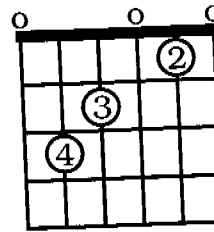
Forms and Positions - Chords

The next stage is to treat the open chord forms as moveable, so they can be described as forms in other positions. This involves using the index finger to **bar**, (aka barre) or cover simultaneously, some or all of the strings while fretting the Chord Form with the three remaining fingers. This will require more strength and accuracy than the open chords, and is usually easier on the electric guitar than the classic or steel string acoustic.

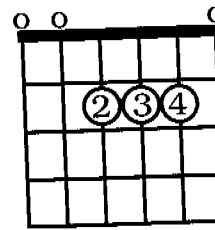
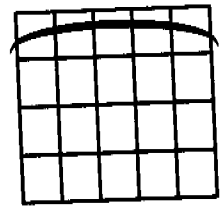
For now, the **position** is simply the number of the fret your index finger is barring. For example 7th position is barring the 7th fret using any form. The point is to recognize and identify chords by their Form and Position. Almost any chord that can be played as an open form can be used in other positions. To notate a position other than open, a number is placed next to the fret marker. If you are new to bar chords, start out by making the open forms using the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th fingers of the left hand as illustrated in the left hand column. Next make just the bar alone in various positions. Then combine. **The first two or three positions are the hardest, so don't waste too much time trying to fret them there at first.**

Three exercises for becoming familiar with forms and positions and making your hand stronger for bar chords are as follows:

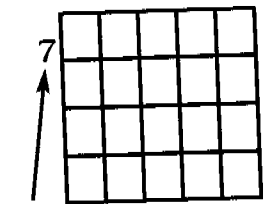
- 1) Start with the open forms using just the last three fingers and, releasing pressure, slide up the frets, fingers on strings, playing each as you go.
- 2) Bar any position and then change just the forms.
- 3) Combine the two previous exercises by playing up the neck from the open position and changing the form each time you move to a new position.



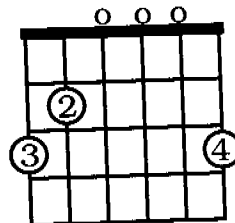
C Form Open
Last 3 Fingers



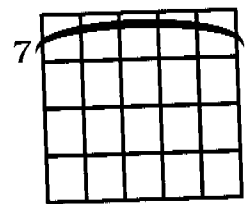
A Form Open
Last 3 Fingers



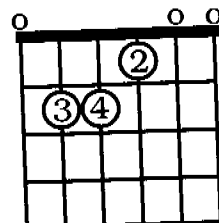
Number Indicates
Position



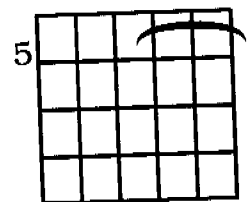
G Form Open
Last 3 Fingers



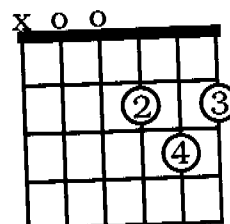
7th Position Bar



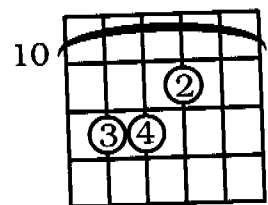
E Form Open
Last 3 Fingers



5th Position
Half Bar



D Form Open
Last 3 Fingers



E Form
10th Position

Forms and Positions - Chords

The left column illustrates the Five Basic Chord Forms in the 5th position.

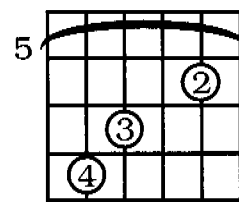
You will soon realize that there are two easy bar chords, two hard ones, and one in the middle. The E form and the A form are the easiest, the G and D are the hardest (because of the reach) and the C form is somewhere in between.

In order to make them more accessible for beginners, the forms have been illustrated in the right hand column with alternate fingerings and partial forms. It's easier to *recognize* them as full forms but it's usually easier to *play* them using partial forms. In each case, how you actually use them will depend on the circumstances.

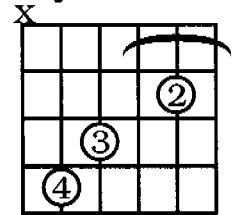
Since the E and the A forms are the least difficult to play, they tend to get used the most, and the rhythm part in many popular guitar songs consists of one or another of these forms moved around in various positions. Regardless of the style of music you prefer, you'll soon find you need facility with more than just the most common ones. Practice each form equally in various positions and don't limit yourself to just the easy ones.

The barred chords are considerably more difficult than the open chords especially on acoustic guitars. If you are having trouble with them, have your guitar restrung with the lightest possible strings, and ask your repairman to set your **action** or relative string height, as low as possible. If they still seem too hard to play, you can even loosen the string's tension to a lower pitch until you build up strength.

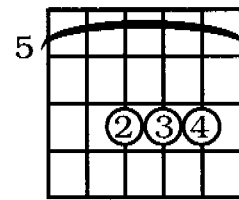
Forms in 5th Pos. Easy Variations



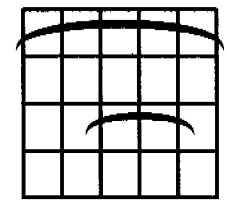
C Form
5th Position



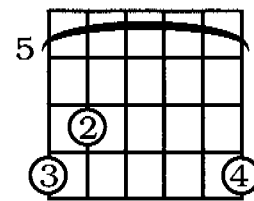
C Form
Half Bar



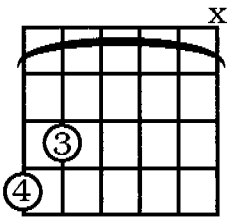
A Form
5th Position



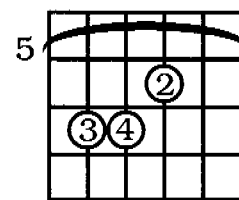
A Form 1st &
3rd fingers only



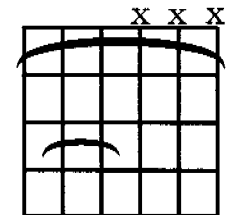
G Form
5th Position



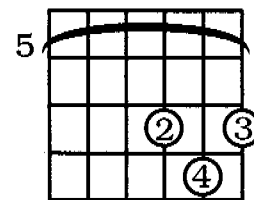
Partial G Form
Bass Strings



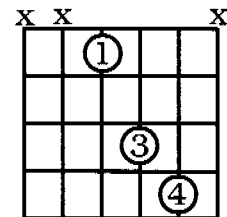
E Form
5th Position



E Form 1st &
3rd fingers only



D Form 5th Pos.



Partial D Form

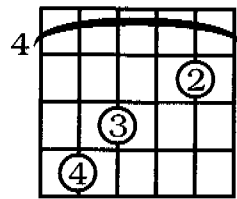
Forms and Positions - Chords

Play through the following assorted forms and positions saying the description out loud as you go. Now is the time to get into the habit of using the fretboard descriptions. Say "C Form, 4th Position" **not** "C in the 4th position" or "C chord, 4th position." **Verbally distinguish the guitar forms from the chord names from now on.**

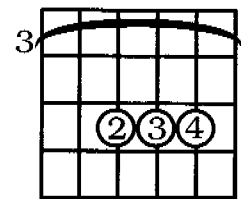
For now it is important to identify them by describing what your eyes are seeing and your fingers are playing. The *form* is what you play, the *chord* is what you hear. Note that the C and E forms are directly adjacent to the bar, whereas the A, G and D forms require a space of one fret between the bar and the form.

In the beginning, hand fatigue may be a problem. In fact, the strain can show up in your shoulders and back as well. Fortunately the more you play, the stronger you get. I'll bet any orthopedist would advise you to get up and do some stretching exercises if your hands get tired but you want to keep at it. Also don't forget about the numerous partial forms. If you can visualize the partial G and D forms with no trouble, don't hesitate to substitute them for the full forms for ease of playing.

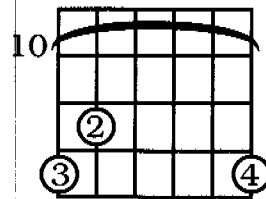
The important thing is to keep in mind that there are 5 forms to choose from - not just two or three. There is no doubt that many readers have bought huge chord books and then wondered how in the world you were supposed to remember all the different chords graphed out in them. If you try to memorize them you'll probably only remember a few of the more common ones. The way to learn them easily and permanently is to be able to build them from one or another of the five basic forms. This chord "building" is taken up in detail in Vol. II, and it is based on what is being presented here.



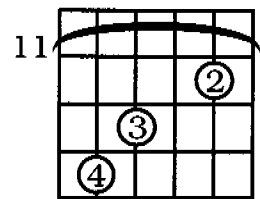
C Form
4th Position



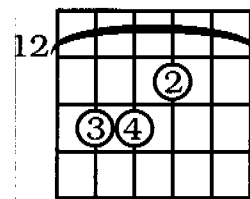
A Form
3rd Position



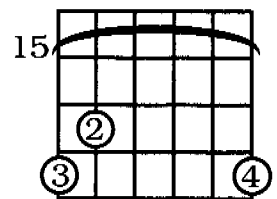
G Form
10th Position



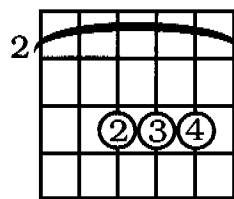
C Form
11th Position



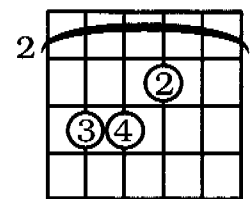
E Form
12th Position



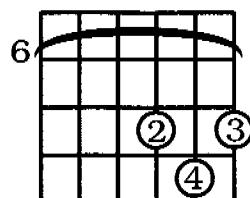
G Form
15th Position



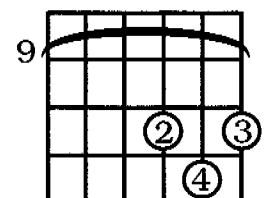
A Form
2nd Position



E Form
2nd Position



D Form
6th Position



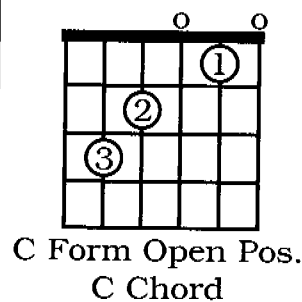
D Form
9th Position

The CAGED Sequence - Chords

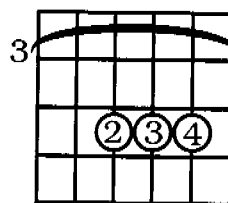
If you've never seen this before, by the time you finish the section, you'll understand why the author considers the inventor(s) of the guitar's tuning system among the unsung heroes in music history. I don't know who gets the credit, but I've always wondered if he or she thought it out, tried a zillion combinations, or just stumbled onto it because their guitar was always out of tune. When the five basic chord forms are arranged in order along the length of the fretboard, they produce a contiguous **C-A-G-E-D Sequence** that provides the player with a failsafe method for finding their way around the neck, form by form. No matter which form or position you are using, the CAGED Sequence is all around you. It repeats at the twelfth fret and continues until you run out of real estate. Each form in the sequence is the exact same chord *musically*, played five different ways, *guitaristically*. The end of one form is the beginning of the next one.

In order to convey the structure of the CAGED Sequence, we have jumped somewhat out of order by **naming** or identifying musically, some chords without having laid the proper groundwork for this. Naming chords is taken up in the following section. While you play each form of the CAGED Sequence, visualize the forms that are adjacent to it. Keep in mind that you are traversing the fretboard form by form, as opposed to position by position. If your hand gets tired from the constant pressure, just lay your fingers on the strings with little or no pressure applied and proceed through the sequences.

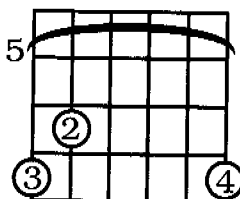
The essence of this procedure is that you are playing the same music chord using different guitar forms in a sequence.



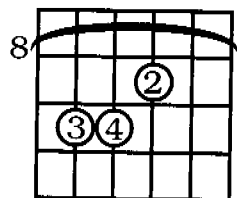
C Form Open Pos.
C Chord



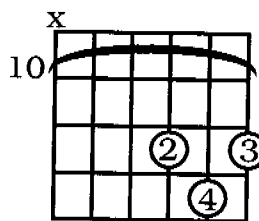
A Form 3rd Pos.
C Chord



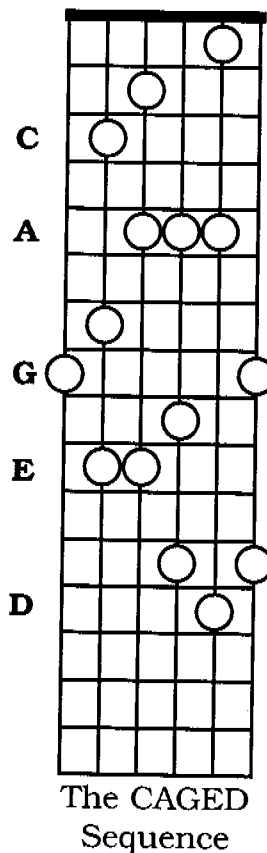
G Form 5th Pos.
C Chord



E Form 8th Pos.
C Chord



D Form 10th Pos.
C Chord



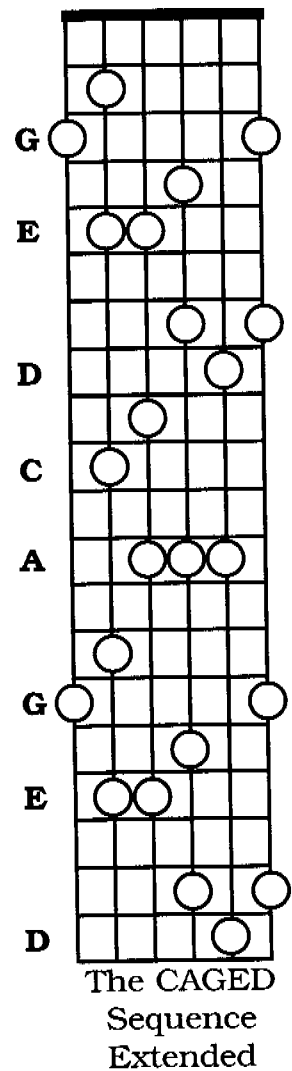
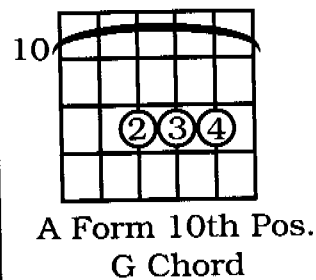
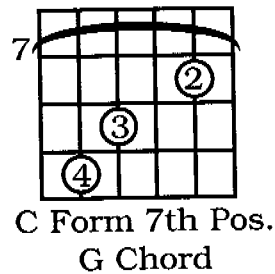
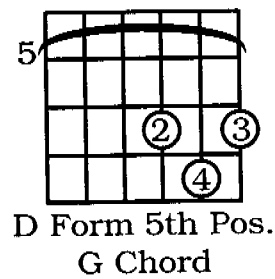
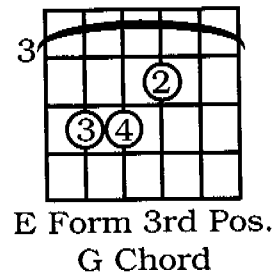
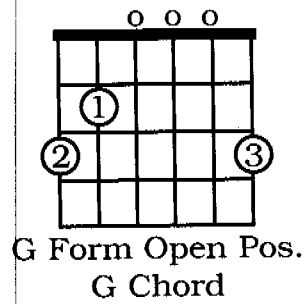
The CAGED
Sequence

The CAGED Sequence - Chords

The end of each form is the beginning of the next. The sequence never changes relative to itself. In other words, it can start in any position, with any of the basic forms, and the others will always be in the same location relative to it. Once you have established any form in any position, you should be able to recognize the sequence starting with the next form directly above and below the one you are playing.

Only the CAGED Sequences starting with the open C Form and G Form have been diagrammed but you should be familiar with the concept as a whole. The next exercise (not illustrated) is to play through the CAGED Sequence for chords starting with the A, E, and D forms in the open position. Then start with forms in the middle positions and do the sequence in both directions. If you don't understand the sequence well enough to do them without the graphs, go back to the beginning of the section and keep playing the diagrams until "it clicks." Each time through gets easier and more familiar. You have to picture the forms that are adjacent to the ones you are actually playing. The trick seems to be to hold the form in place until you've visualized the next one. Remember that the approach to the Scale Forms and Lead Patterns will be based upon what is shown for the Chord Forms.

The column on the right shows an extended version of the CAGED Sequence to illustrate that it continues on for as far as you can play. Electric guitars generally have a more accessible fretboard than their classical and acoustic counterparts, so a larger percentage of the playing area is going to be usable. **All of the chord forms in the sequence are completely separate from each other except for the C and D forms, which share a note on the second string.**



Naming Chords by Form and Position

This section will require somewhat more mental effort on the part of the reader than previously. Up to this point, the majority of what has been presented has been relatively easy to visualize on the fretboard. Some ideas are not easily illustrated and have to be grasped in a more abstract manner. Naming chords by counting letters and accidentals is an example.

So far we have used only descriptive terminology. Forms, Positions, and Sequences only describe what is happening on the fretboard in a guitar orientation. The next step is to name the chords in a musical orientation. Again, the form is what you feel and see on the fretboard whereas the chord is what you hear played. In the last section we used different forms to play the same chord. Here we'll use the same form to play different chords. Some examples of chord *names* are E, Ab, B, and F#. Examples of chord *types* would be major, minor, suspended, and augmented seventh. A complete chord identification including both name and type would be something like C min., Ab diminished, and C# maj. 7th. Abbreviations and symbols are generally used rather than the complete written name and type. This section of Volume I will discuss naming the chords only. The different chord types are another subject altogether.

A minimum of three things are necessary to identify chords by their correct musical name. You need to know: 1) The music alphabet, 2) How accidentals (sharps and flats) work, and 3) How to count fret by fret using letters and accidentals. It sounds ridiculously simple but it winds up being harder than it seems. Counting on your fingers can be a transitional help but only if you do it right. Spread your fingers out wide and hold them still. Use a finger of the other hand for counting, not the thumb. This probably looks suspiciously like I'm teaching people their "ABCs" and how to count on their fingers but, oh well, there's no denying it. Call it better guitaring through Pre-K basics. Here goes:



- 1) The music alphabet uses only the first 7 letters, ABCDEF and G. (No H, I, etc.) You need to know it forward and backwards from any letter. It is also important to think of it as a circle so that the letter after G is A, and the letter before A is G.
- 2) A sharp (#) is when you *raise* any note or chord (move it one fret toward the body). The term "raised" indicates the pitch is higher by what is known as a 1/2 step. A flat (♭) is when you *lower* a note or chord or (move it one fret toward the headstock). The note above A is A#; the note below E is E♭ (for now).
- 3) To count fret by fret, you combine the letters with either the sharps or flats, but not both. For now, we'll put a sharp in between each letter and count forward. The counting rule is: letter, then same letter sharped; next letter then same letter sharped, and so on. There are two exceptions to this. **The exceptions are the pairs B and C, and E and F.** There is no # or ♭ in between B and C or E and F. Starting with the letter A, and counting one fret at a time, the order of notes and chords is: A, A#, B, C, C#, D, D#, E, F, F#, G, G# and back to A. Regardless what letter, form or or position you start from, they count the same. If counting on your fingers gets in the way, don't use it.

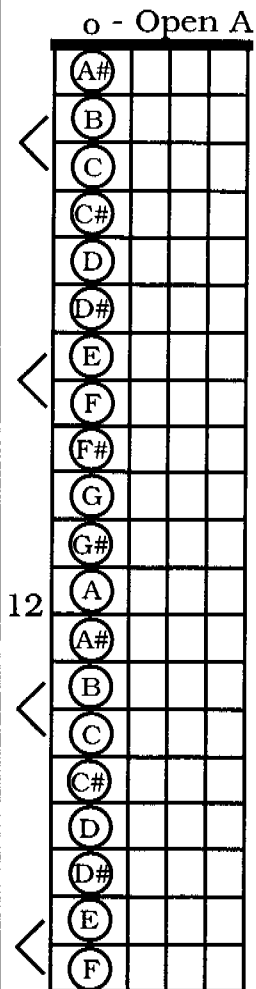
Naming Chords by Form and Position

This system of counting letters works the same for notes and chords. The graph on the left shows the notes starting with the 5th string open A. The graph on the right shows the fret-by-fret counting of the A Chord Form. **Column 2 is continued on the next page.** All five forms work the same way. The order of the fret-by-fret counting stays the same. It just depends on which letter, note or form you start from. If you start with an open C Form, start your counting from the letter C. If you start from the E Form, start counting with E, and so on.

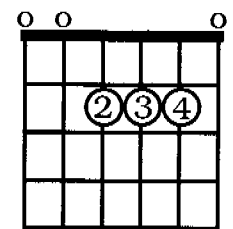
Don't forget the B-C and E-F rule. There is no sharp or flat between these pairs. On a piano keyboard we naturally tend to see groups of three black keys and then pairs of two. If you look from the point of view of the white keys, you'll notice that there are two pairs of notes that don't have a black key between them. Those notes are B & C and E & F. The B-C and E-F pairs are easy to see on the piano, but on the guitar you just have to remember them.

As you are playing the forms from the open position, start by using the last three fingers, and as you move up, count the bar finger to mark your place. After all, the bar designates the position. This way the counting procedure is the same for every form. Otherwise you'll have to count something different on each form, and it will take longer and be harder for no good reason.

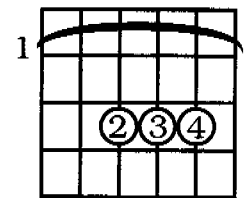
 You name chords by counting fret by fret from the open position, or nut, **starting with the letter of the form you are using.** 



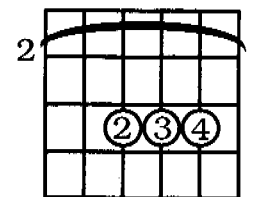
The notes of the A string fret by fret



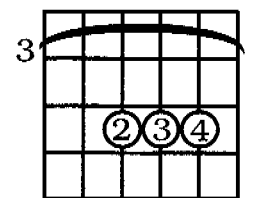
A Form Open
A Chord



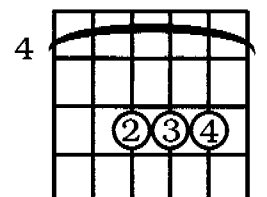
A Form 1st Pos.
A# Chord



A Form 2nd Pos.
B Chord



A Form 3rd Pos.
C Chord



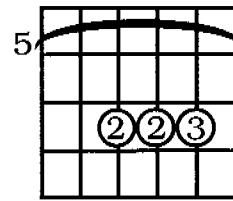
A Form 4th Pos.
C# Chord

cont. next page>

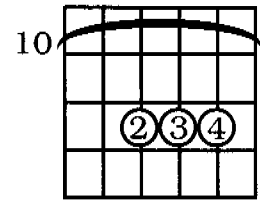
Naming Chords by Form and Position

The graphs on both sides continue the fret-by-fret counting of the A form from the previous page up to the fourteenth fret.

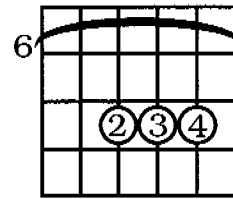
Don't spend too much time or effort trying to play chords in the first few barred positions perfectly. That's where the string tension is highest. Just concentrate instead on keeping the form intact during the initial transition from the open form to the barred. That seems to be where things are most likely to go to pieces formwise. It is natural to want to play the open forms the easy way at first, but it only makes it harder for the transition to the barred forms and so harder to name the chords. After you get used to the idea of naming by counting the letters, it won't matter so much which fingers you use. If you have previously learned to identify chords by naming the "root" on the fifth or sixth string, please try to avoid this. It is old fashioned and not well thought out. It requires the use of several different means to accomplish one thing. It also tends to cause players to think they can base everything on the two easiest forms. Again, get into the habit of verbally distinguishing between the form you are using and the actual chord name. It is important that the terms and concepts be differentiated and applied. The key to being able to count the forms fret by fret is to practice saying the music alphabet (A A# B C C# D D# E F F# G G# A...) over and over until you know it without mistakes from any letter. Then, when you add the forms on the fretboard, you can better divide your attention between the mental and physical requirements. Counting the flats is harder simply because we aren't used to saying the alphabet backwards especially with the added confusion of the the B-C, E-F exceptions.



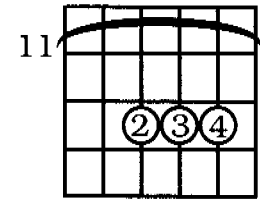
A Form 5th Pos.
D Chord



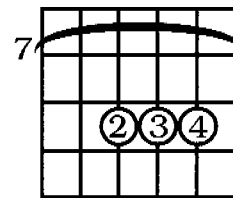
A Form 10th Pos.
G Chord



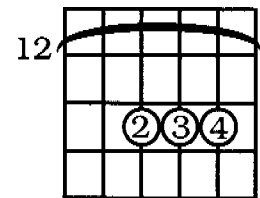
A Form 6th Pos.
D# Chord



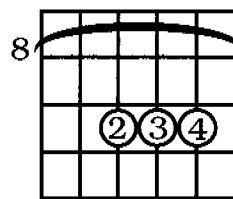
A Form 11th Pos.
G# Chord



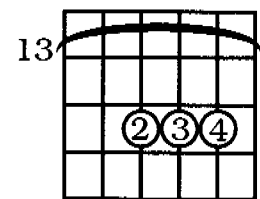
A Form 7th Pos.
E Chord



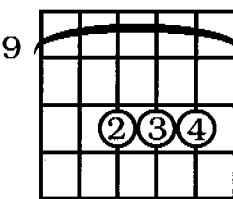
A Form 12th Pos.
A Chord



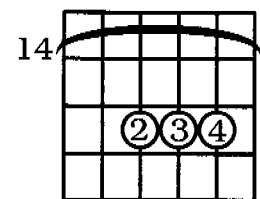
A Form 8th Pos.
F Chord



A Form 13th Pos.
A# Chord



A Form 9th Pos.
F# Chord



A Form 14th Pos.
B Chord

Naming Chords by Form and Position - Sharps

The left column graph counts and names the first five positions using the E Form.

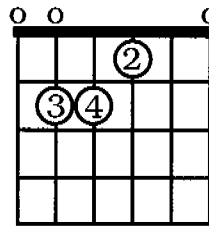
The right hand column counts and names the first five positions using the C Form.

Don't forget that the position is the number of the fret you are barring with your index finger. It is the same for all the forms.

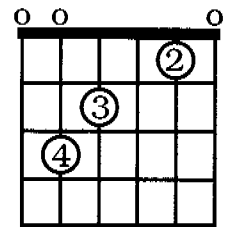
When you've completed these exercises, count up the remaining forms that aren't illustrated to at least the 12th position. If you do them right, when you get there you will be on the same chord that you started with.

If you're starting out, a good way to practice counting up the frets for naming is to put a form, any form, in any position and hold it in place. Don't let it move. Then, with the index finger of the right (or non-fretting) hand, count up to the bar by starting right on the nut and laying your index finger across the strings just like it is a bar. Count and move this "bar" as you go until it is on top of the bar of the fretting hand. It is a simple method but also visually oriented, and has often made the difference between whether a student learns to name chords correctly in one sitting or not.

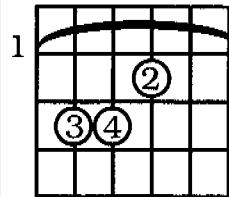
The key, I believe, is to remember to start counting with the letter name of the form you are using.



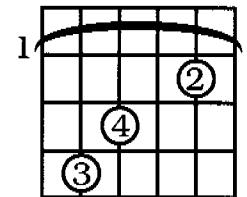
E Form Open
E Chord



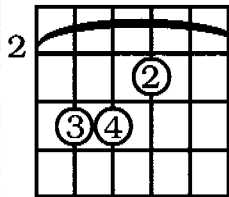
C Form Open
C Chord



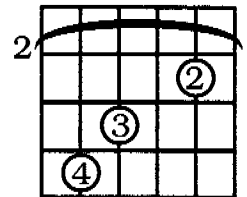
E Form 1st Pos.
F Chord



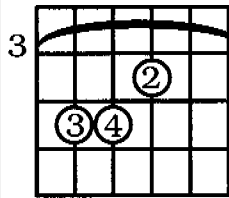
C Form 1st Pos.
C# Chord



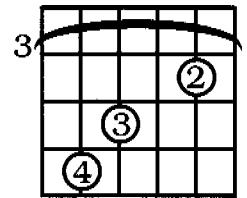
E Form 2nd Pos.
F# Chord



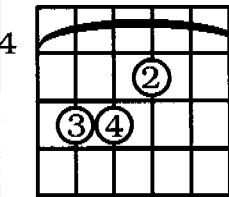
C Form 2nd Pos.
D Chord



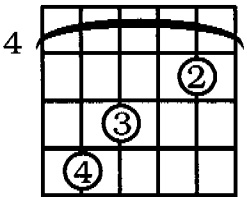
E Form 3rd Pos.
G Chord



C Form 3rd Pos.
D# Chord



E Form 4th Pos.
G# Chord



C Form 4th Pos.
E Chord

Naming Chords by Form and Position - Flats

Having done it with sharps, and gone up the fretboard successfully will make the next part, going down using flats, easier. Play the chords starting in the left column saying both the form and position and the chord name, then do the right column and continue onto the next page.

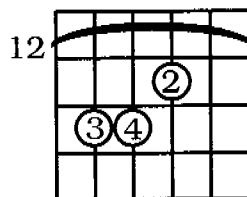
Working with flats, everything is reversed, and so a little more difficult. The key to doing this is to say the music alphabet using flats backwards a few times for practice before starting. The idea is to get the order straight in your mind so that looking at the different forms and positions and thinking new names won't throw you off. Also, you probably identify certain forms and positions as sharped, and this can also throw you off. As with the sharps, once you see it for a couple of forms, the process becomes automatic. Again, it is more important to know how the system works than to memorize chord names with no real understanding.

You will quickly realize that the chords in between the letters have two possible names. For example, Bb when counting down the fretboard, is the same as A# when counting up. For now either name is correct. Later on, which one is to be used will be determined by a music concept known as key.

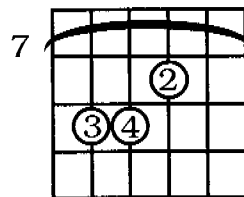


Music's meant to be fun, not like some crass music machine... that's not what we care about at all. We care a damn lot about music but like, so what if you mess up a couple of chords? Big deal. The point is you tried, and that's what counts.

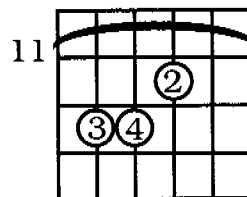
Johnny Rotten



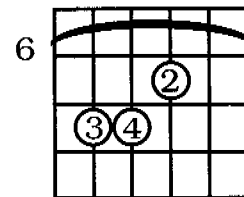
E Form 12th Pos.
E Chord



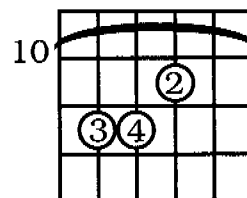
E Form 7th Pos.
B Chord



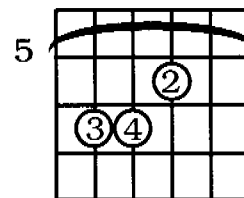
E Form 11th Pos.
Eb Chord



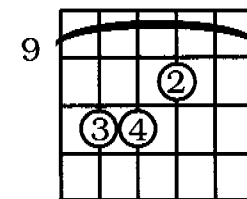
E Form 6th Pos.
Bb Chord



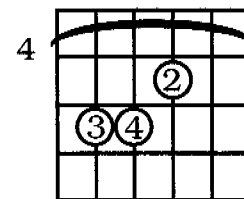
E Form 10th Pos.
D Chord



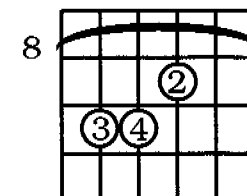
E Form 5th Pos.
A Chord



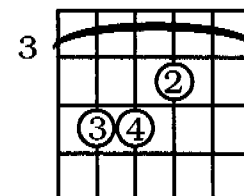
E Form 9th Pos.
Db Chord



E Form 4th Pos.
Ab Chord



E Form 8th Pos.
C Chord



E Form 3rd Pos.
G Chord

Naming Chords by Form and Position - Flats

The column on the left completes the E forms counted down a fret at a time from the 12th position from the preceding page, ending with the open E Form.

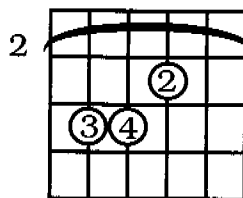
On the right, the G Forms have been diagrammed for five positions starting at the 12th using flats. These are not continued on the next page, but count down the fretboard until you reach the open G Form anyway. If you have done it right you will wind up at the open G chord. Count down the other three undiagrammed forms from the 12th position. You should end up at the familiar open chord each time. Don't forget to try using the index finger of the right hand as a movable counter. While holding a form in position for naming, lay the index across the nut and count up or down to the fretting hand bar, one fret at a time.

Distinguish between Naming chords by counting a fret at a time, and connecting the forms by the CAGED Sequence. Counting fret by fret will give you the correct name for any chord, and the CAGED Sequence gives you the overall layout of the fretboard plus a shortcut to naming.

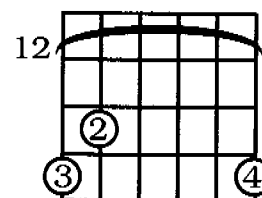
Recap

By now you should be able to recognize all five Basic Chord Forms in any position, connect them in CAGED Sequence from any position, and name the chord from any form and position.

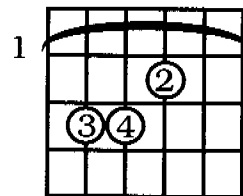
Now would be a good time to go back and review everything from the beginning. It always makes more sense the second time, and you may discover something you missed.



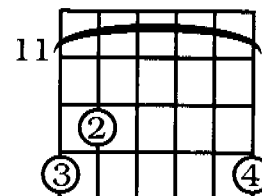
E Form 2nd Pos.
G_b Chord



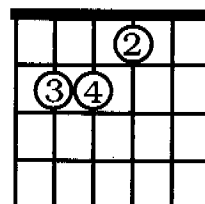
G Form 12th Pos.
G Chord



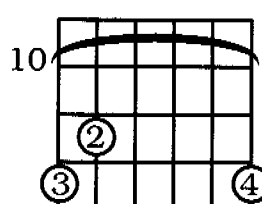
E Form 1st Pos.
F Chord



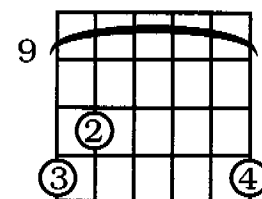
G Form 11th Pos.
G_b Chord



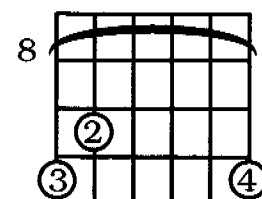
E Form Open Pos.
E Chord



G Form 10th Pos.
F Chord



G Form 9th Pos.
E Chord



G Form 8th Pos.
E_b Chord

Scales and Scale Forms

Whereas chords are notes played simultaneously, **scales** are groups of notes played in succession. As with the Chord Forms, the guitar's tuning provides five specific patterns for these as well, and they correspond in a precise manner. Although the Chord Forms are held in place and fairly easy to see and remember, Scale Forms must be visualized as a continuous pattern when being learned, since only one note at a time is played.

Over the years I've encountered various labeling and coinage for the Five Basic Scale Forms. I believe they have been more or less pasted on by well-meaning but ill-informed guitar teachers. Among them are the Greek modes (Ionian, Dorian, Phrygian, etc.,) Roman numerals and alphanumeric (Form I, Form IA, Form II, Form IIA, etc.,) primary/secondary terms like "transitional patterns," descriptors like "boxes," and stylistic names like "blues scale" and "rock pattern." I imagine few things to be more confusing to a guitar student than the variety of arbitrary naming conventions given to the Basic Scale Forms. The problem stems at least partially from the music vs. instrument overlap. Also, terms used in one field of endeavor are often misused, varied or corrupted when applied in another. Tremolo and vibrato are a good example of this type of confusion. Tremolo, by definition, is a steady change in volume whereas vibrato is a change in pitch. So naturally the guitar companies call their pitch changing bars, "tremolos."

Similarly, the Greek names for modes pertain to a music concept and have no function on a fretboard unless you choose to limit yourself to playing to and from the E strings starting with a certain finger. (Any teacher who still uses the Greek modes to identify Scale Forms to a beginning guitar student should be flogged.) It is easy to see how the mode and Scale Form confusion began, however. The association between the two seems convenient with respect to the aforementioned E strings on either end of the fretboard. It is similar to the limitation that occurs when players use the fifth or sixth string to identify chords with. On a guitar, the only naming convention that is sufficiently comprehensive is to identify the Scale Forms by their corresponding Chord Form. You will see that the Scale Forms can be visualized as a natural continuation of the Chord Forms, instead of a separate and unrelated entity.

We tend to take the paths of least resistance when learning, and you will find it easier to learn the Scale Forms by developing them as pattern extensions to the chord forms you already recognize than the arbitrary IIA form or the arcane Mixolydian mode. Trust me. And another thing. The dot scheme on guitar fretboards should go down in history as one of the worst design implementations ever, right along side color coded keyboards on those old electronic organs. How the current fretboard dot placement scheme has lasted, I'll never understand. With the exception of the ones at the 12th and the 5th frets, they just get in the way. Guitar tuning system: Good. Fretboard dots: Bad.

The most basic scales consist of five notes and are called **pentatonic**, or five-toned. There's nothing complicated about that particular Greek term.

The Five Basic Scale Forms

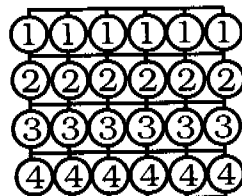
Just as there are Chord Forms that are easily recognized in any position, there are also Scale Forms that make patterns which can be easily learned and used. There is a C Scale Form that corresponds to the C Chord Form, an A Scale Form that is related to the A Chord Form, and so on.

Since the Scale Forms are not held in place like the Chord Forms, the general idea behind which finger to use for which note is four fingers to four frets, as illustrated in the top left diagram. For example, if you are playing a Scale Form in the second position, the index finger frets the necessary strings at the 2nd fret, the middle finger frets the strings at the 3rd fret, the ring frets them at the 4th, and the pinky takes the 5th.

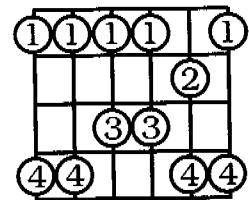
However, you will soon encounter Scale Forms that span more than four frets. This requires what is termed a finger **extension**, meaning a note that is played either above or below the usual four fret area. The position does not actually change though, and for all practical purposes, only the index and pinky fingers make extensions.

Not all Scale Forms will begin with the index finger, and not all Scale Form positions will be designated by the first finger. The index is sometimes treated as an extension so the Scale Form can better correspond to the Chord Form.

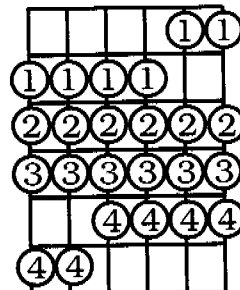
The graphs in the left hand column illustrate basic finger position for Scale Forms and extensions. Play through each of them one string at a time, ascending and then descending. The right column illustrates the Five Basic Scale Forms. The D Scale Form is the only one of the five basics to require an extension. The fingerings shown are optional, and as with chords, the correct fingers to use for scales will depend on the particular circumstances.



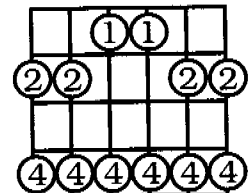
Normal Scale Form
Finger Positions
4 Fingers: 4 Frets



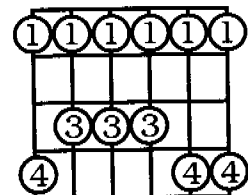
C Scale Form



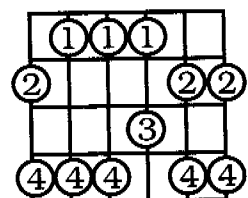
Scale Form
Finger Positions
with Extensions



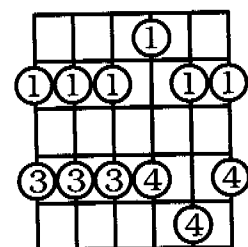
A Scale Form



G Scale Form



E Scale Form



D Scale Form

The Five Basic Scale Forms

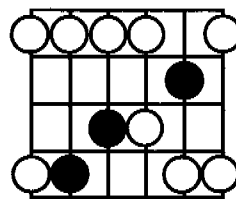
The left hand column illustrates that the Chord Forms are actually an integral part of the Scale Forms. This also shows why calling the Scale Forms anything else puts the subject into another area of discussion. The term "C Scale Form" (or C Form Scale) is a purely guitar oriented designation, and doesn't apply to any other instrument. As with the different types of chords, learning different types of scales will be a matter of developing them from the basic forms.

Practice playing the Basic Scale Forms in various positions. Learn them forward and backward from memory. When playing with a pick, it is a good idea to start with a down stroke and alternate directions for each note. It will be hard at first especially when changing from string to string, but discipline yourself now and you will benefit many times over later especially in terms of speed and accuracy. If you are using your fingers to pluck the strings, alternate them as well, using thumb and index or middle and index.

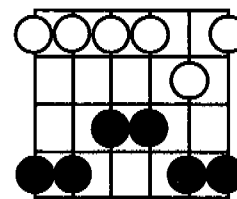
The forms in the right column have been contrasted to show that the end of one is the beginning of another. The "bottom" of the C Form is the "top" of the A Form. The bottom of the A is the top of the G, the top of the D form is the bottom of the E, and so on.



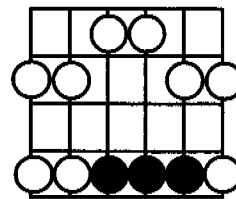
When learning scales, try to play as slowly as possible for accuracy the first few times. If the first few tries are correct, it will be much easier than trying to unlearn a rush job. The best way is to play dead slow until you are familiar with the form.



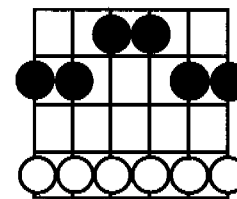
C Scale Form



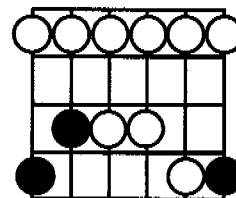
C Scale Form



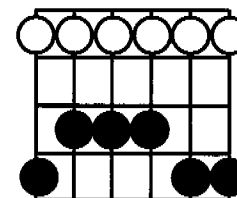
A Scale Form



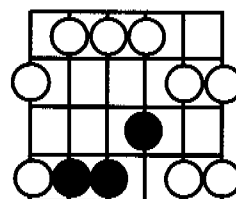
A Scale Form



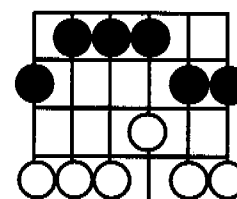
G Scale Form



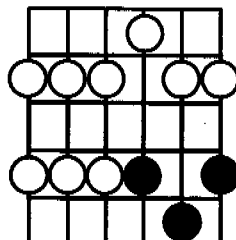
G Scale Form



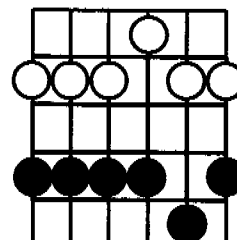
E Scale Form



E Scale Form



D Scale Form



D Scale Form

Forms and Positions - Scales

Describing scales by form and position is similar to the method for chords. The pattern stays the same, but is moveable and can be played in various locations on the fretboard. The main difference stems from the fact that the position of the Scale Forms is not always referenced by the index finger as were each of the Chord Forms. The C and G Scale Forms are located by the index like the chord forms. For example, if you were to play a G form scale in the 4th position, your index would fret the strings at the 4th fret. As drawn, the D Form is also positioned by the index but contains an index extension that moves it temporarily out of place.

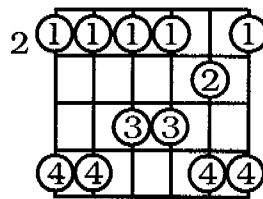
The A and E Scale Forms (*) are not referenced by the index finger for position. The index notes in these two scale forms are treated like extensions in order for the Scale Forms to better follow the Chord Forms as patterns.

The graphs in the left hand column illustrate the reference point of the Basic Scale Forms in various positions. The graphs on the right show the relative positions of the corresponding Chord Forms.

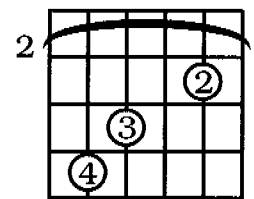


My daddy knew a lot of guitar players and most of them didn't work, so he said 'You should make up your mind to either be a guitar player or an electrician, but I never saw a guitar player that was worth a damn.'

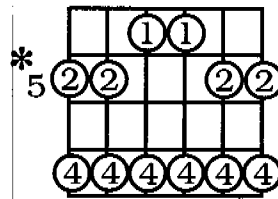
Elvis Presley



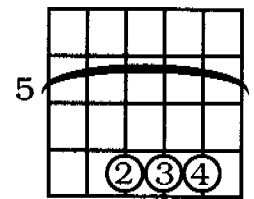
C Scale Form
2nd Position



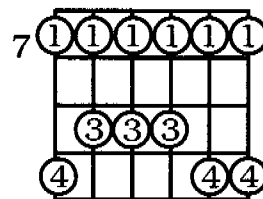
C Chord Form
2nd Position



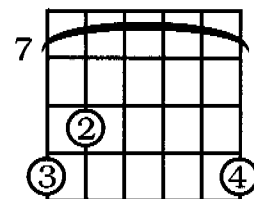
A Scale Form
5th Position



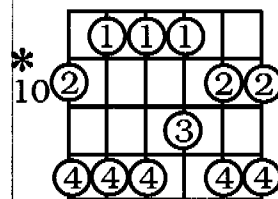
A Chord Form
5th Position



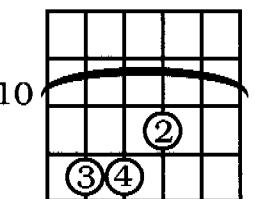
G Scale Form
7th Position



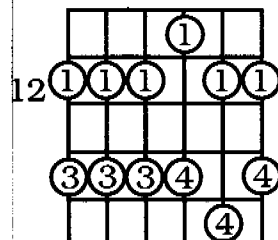
G Chord Form
7th Position



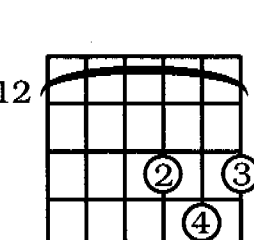
E Scale Form
10th Position



E Chord Form
10th Position

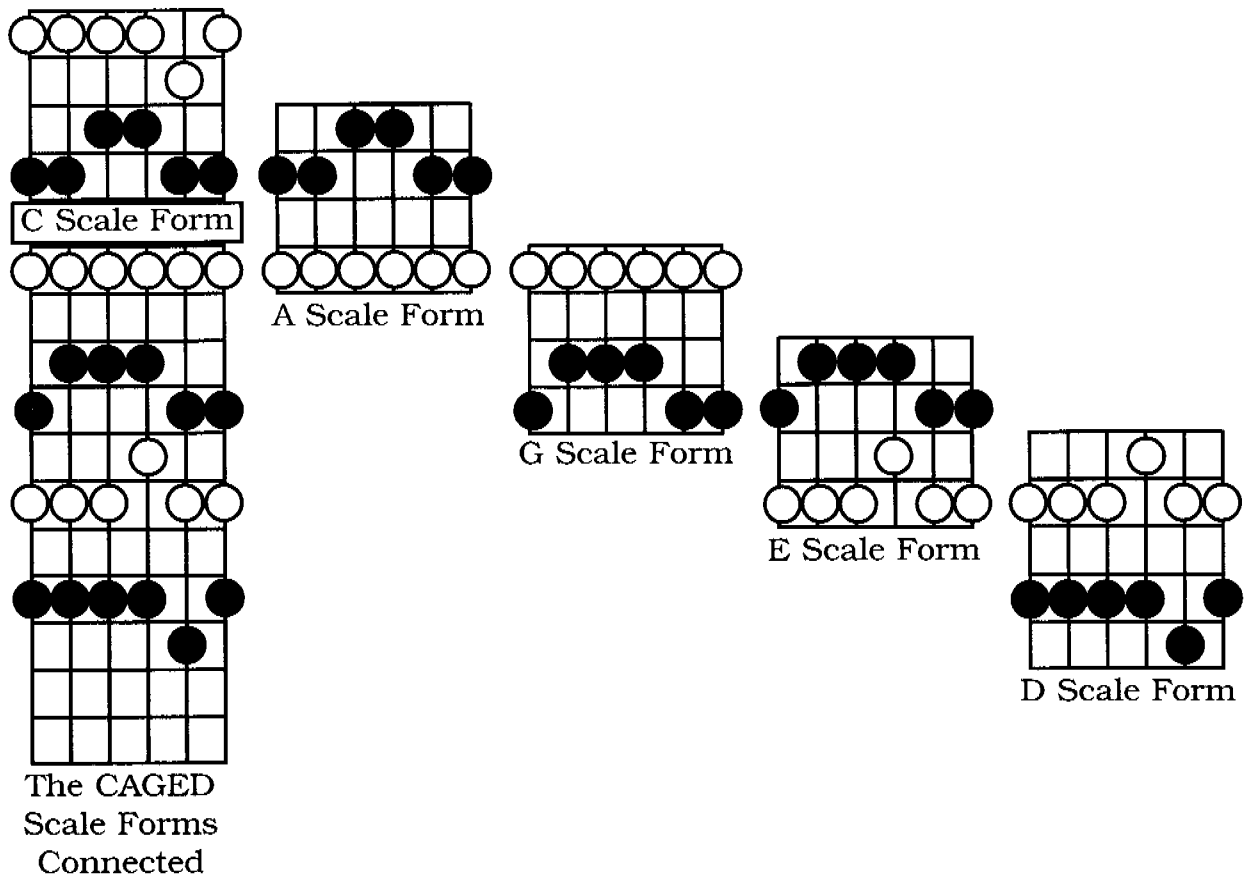


D Scale Form
12th Position



D Chord Form
5th Position


The CAGED Sequence - Scales




This series of graphs is intended to lure you away from thinking of the scales as just five separate forms, and into seeing them also as parts of a continuous whole. Each Scale Form is the same five notes played at least twice in different positions starting with a different note.

The graphs are shaded to illustrate that the bottom of one Scale Form is the top of another. The diagram on the left shows how the Basic Scale Forms appear when connected end to end on the fretboard.

In this view, you should be able to see that the CAGED Sequence applies equally to both scales and chords.



 The Chord Forms are generally separate from one another. The Scale Forms all share notes with adjacent forms on either end.



Naming Scales by Form and Position

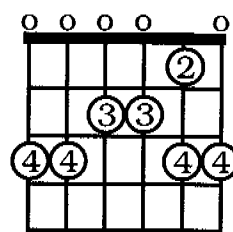
As with the chords, we established five basic forms for scales, and described them in terms of form and position. Then we viewed them as five parts of a contiguous sequence spanning more or less the length of the fretboard.

Now we will identify them by name, and later (in Vol. II), by *type*. Naming scales requires the same tools that naming the chords did, and since you've gone through the procedure already, you'll find it easier, if not automatic. If you find this section difficult, it would be a good idea to go back over the section on naming chords.

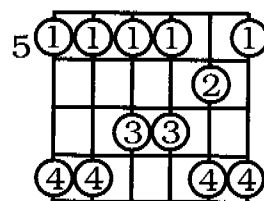
To find the correct name of a Scale Form, count fret by fret using the music alphabet with either sharps ascending or flats descending starting with the letter of the form you are playing. A quick review of the music alphabet ascending starting with the letter C: C C# D D# E F F# G G# A A# B and back to C. Using flats and descending starting with E: E Eb D Db C B Bb A Ab G Gb F and back to E.

The use of sharps only, when ascending, and flats only, when descending, is a simplification for the purpose of focusing on the issues at hand. The fingering suggested is also for learning purposes only, and once you know the forms, you can substitute whatever works best for you.

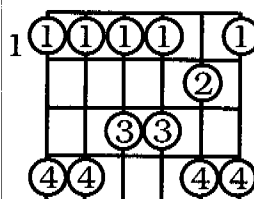
Some Scale Forms cannot be played from the open position, making the counting somewhat more difficult than for chords. When in doubt, refer to the corresponding Chord Form. The graphs show the scale names of the C form in each position starting with open and ending with the 14th on the next page. Play the form in every position and name it out loud as you go.



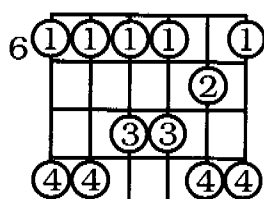
C Form Open
C Scale



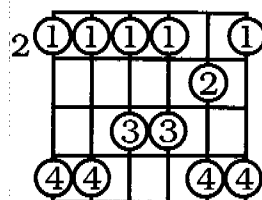
C Form 5th Pos.
F Scale



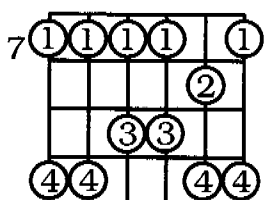
C Form 1st Pos.
C# Scale



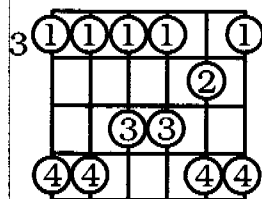
C Form 6th Pos.
F# Scale



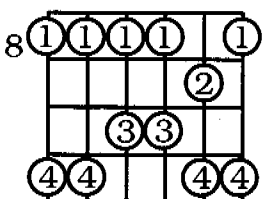
C Form 2nd Pos.
D Scale



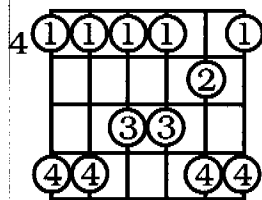
C Form 7th Pos.
G Scale



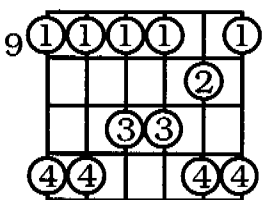
C Form 3rd Pos.
D# Scale



C Form 8th Pos.
G# Scale



C Form 4th Pos.
E Scale



C Form 9th Pos.
A Scale

Naming Scales by Form and Position

The column on the left completes the C Scale Form circle from the previous page and continues up to the 14th fret.

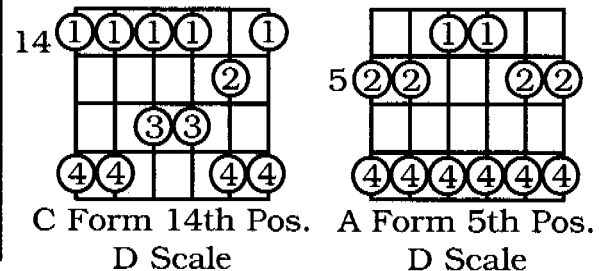
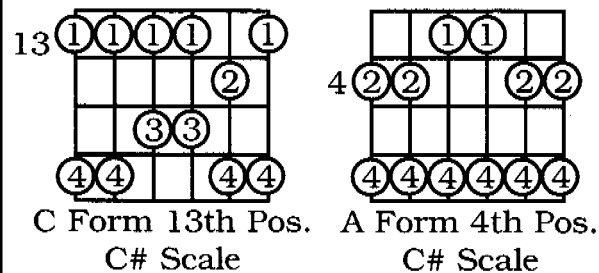
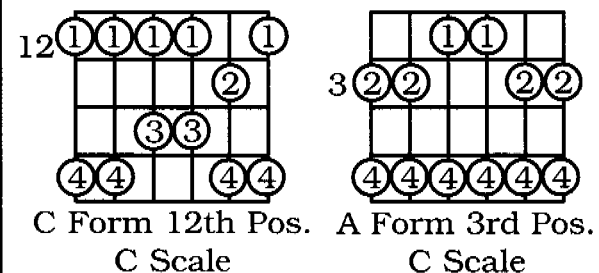
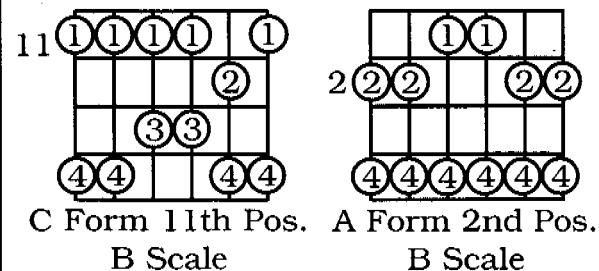
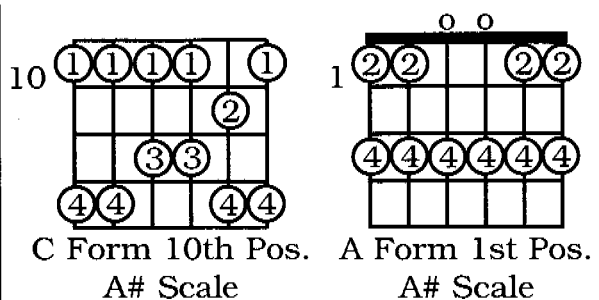
The right hand column counts the A Scale Form from the 1st position to the 5th. There is no open position possible for the A form scale. Play the A form in each position and name it as you go. Don't forget that the A form and the E form treat the index finger as an extension to better follow the Chord Forms and the second finger determines the correct position.

The other Scale Forms are illustrated in just a few positions rather than the entire range of the fretboard. Again, it is more functional to know how the system works than to rely on memorization. As you progress, you will automatically remember what you use the most anyway. If you are having trouble, go back to the Chord Forms and count them fret by fret, then try it with the scales again.



It is a decisive moment for civilization when man lays aside his arrows and devotes himself to plucking bowstrings for music. He can be very vulnerable at that point, as David discovered, in the Book of Kings, when he found himself suddenly the target of a tossed spear. But this very vulnerability is a precondition to all art, which reposes in fragile guitars rather than in swords. And thus the history of the guitar is essentially the story of some of man's best moments...

Frederic V. Grunfeld



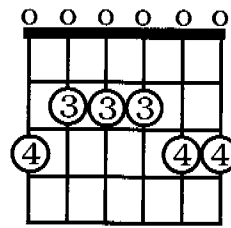
Naming Scales by Form and Position

The column on the left names each of the G Scale Forms from the open position to the 4th. Even though they aren't pictured, continue on and play through each position until it repeats at the 12th fret and see if you come back to G. If you do, you've done it right.

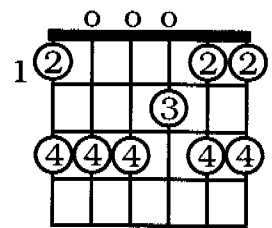
The right hand column shows the E Scale Forms. Here again, for naming purposes, the E Form, like the A Form, behaves as if the index were an extension, and the position is referenced by the second finger instead of the first.

Since there is no possible open E Form, the series starts in the 1st position.

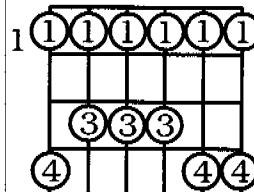
As with the G Form Scale, only five positions of the E Form are illustrated, but you should again play them all the way up the neck, naming each different scale as you go.



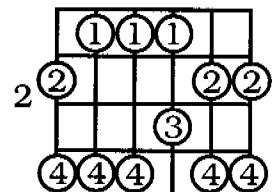
G Form Open
G Scale



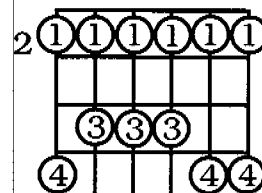
E Form 1st Pos.
F Scale



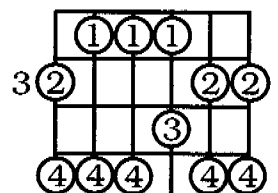
G Form 1st Pos.
G# Scale



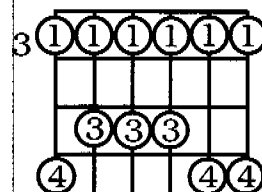
E Form 2nd Pos.
F# Scale



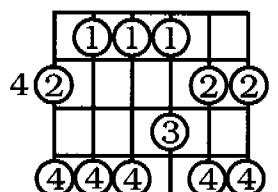
G Form 2nd Pos.
A Scale



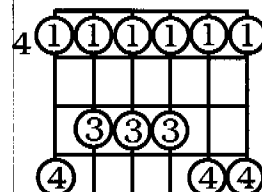
E Form 3rd Pos.
G Scale



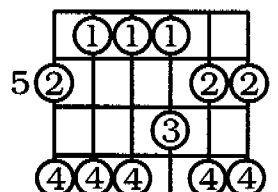
G Form 3rd Pos.
A# Scale



E Form 4th Pos.
G# Scale



G Form 4th Pos.
B Scale



E Form 5th Pos.
A Scale

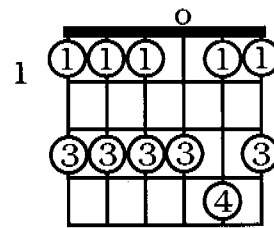
Naming Scales by Form and Position

The last of the Basic Scale Forms, D Form, like the A and E, also cannot be played open, so it too will begin in the 1st position. It is illustrated such that the position is determined by the first finger, with an index extension on the third string. The series continues in the right hand column up to the ninth position.

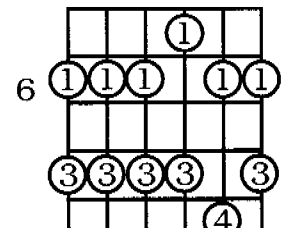
The importance of being thoroughly familiar with *all* five Scale Forms cannot be overemphasized. Since the notes are the same five, played with different patterns, the natural tendency is to use the form or forms that are easiest to manage. Of the five, the G form is without a doubt the most often used in beginning lead playing, but this can become limiting. The different look and feel of the five forms will cause you to phrase things in a way that is more unusual and perhaps more interesting.

Recap

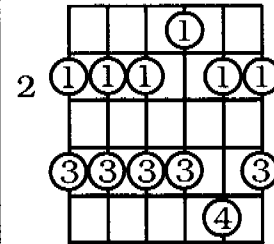
By this time you should have the same skills for the Basic Scale Forms that you acquired for the Chord Forms. You should be able to recognize and play all five Forms in any Position, visualize them in CAGED Sequence, and Name a scale by its Form and Position. Because of the relative degree of difficulty, you should expect to play the Scale Forms about 10-20 times as much as the Chord Forms to get control of them. Always distinguish between the fretboard description and the exact music name. If you are thinking the description, use the words "form and position" as in "C (Scale) Form, 2nd Position". If you are thinking key, use the name as in "D Scale." When talking to other guitar players, the physical description is useful, but other instrumentalists are only going to be aware of the musical terms.



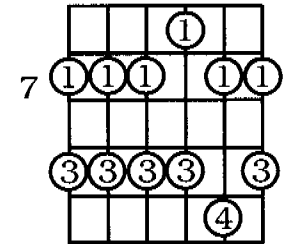
1 D Form 1st Pos.
D# Scale



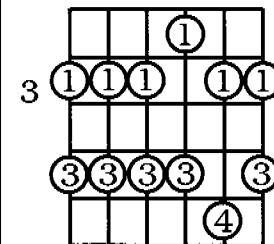
6 D Form 6th Pos.
G# Scale



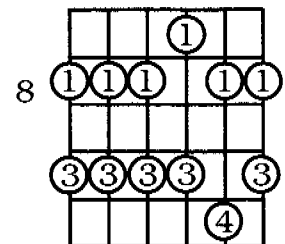
2 D Form 2nd Pos.
E Scale



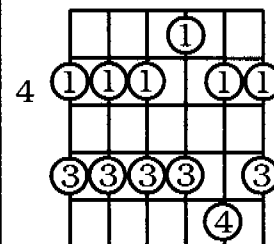
7 D Form 7th Pos.
A Scale



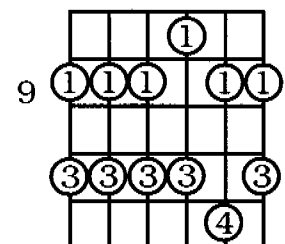
3 D Form 3rd Pos.
F Scale



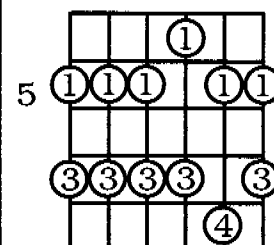
8 D Form 8th Pos.
A# Scale



4 D Form 4th Pos.
F# Scale



9 D Form 9th Pos.
B Scale




5 D Form 5th Pos.
G Scale


Lead Patterns

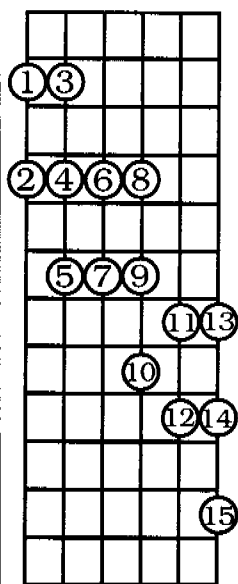
There are Two Basic Lead Patterns which result from the guitar's tuning. This new arrangement gives us the ability to access more notes, and enables us to play things that would be impossible otherwise. The term **Lead Pattern** has been adopted primarily to distinguish these types of patterns from Scale Forms, but also to convey that they are often used in soloing, improvisation and lead playing. It is a guitar oriented name for a different form of scale, or more precisely, a symmetrical, extended, scale form which is played along the fret-board instead of across it. Whereas the Scale Forms are irregular patterns in one position, the Lead Patterns are regular patterns in several positions. (You get bonus points if you noticed that the Lead Patterns are made up of just the small or whole-step reaches of the Scale Forms.) They are illustrated first showing the notes numbered in ascending order in the left hand column. The right hand column illustrates that each Lead Pattern can be viewed as three groups of five notes with an adjustment made for the smaller interval of the 2nd and 3rd string pair. I hope you appreciate the elegance of the system when you realize that LP1 descending, is the same 3 motions string-to-string and position-to-position, as LP2 ascending. (And vice versa. See next page.) This may take a little longer to grasp, but it will be worth it.

The Lead Patterns represent the third distinct pattern type that occurs solely as a result of the guitar's tuning system.

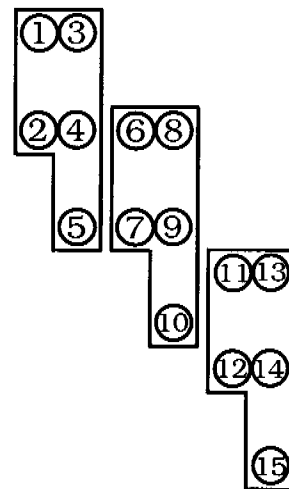


Visualize the lead patterns as all five Basic Scale Forms joined together, and then divided into two equal parts.

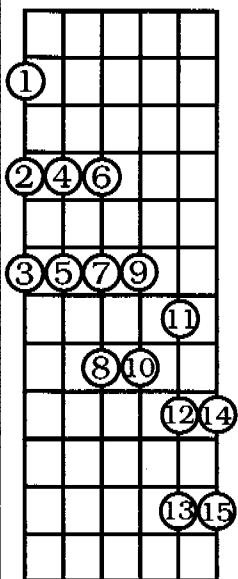




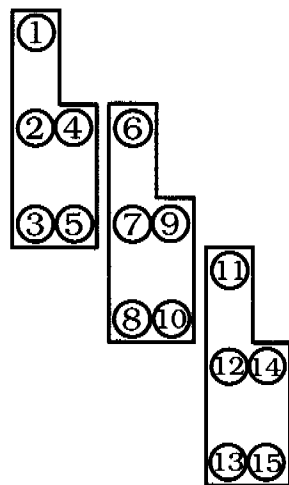
Lead Pattern 1



Lead Pattern 1
Ascending Groups



Lead Pattern 2



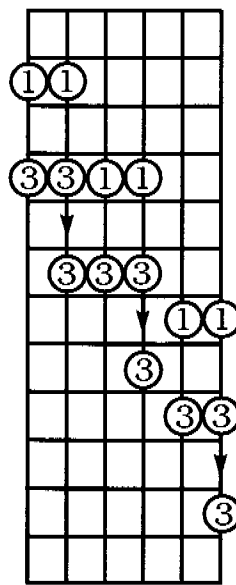
Lead Pattern 2
Ascending Groups

Lead Patterns

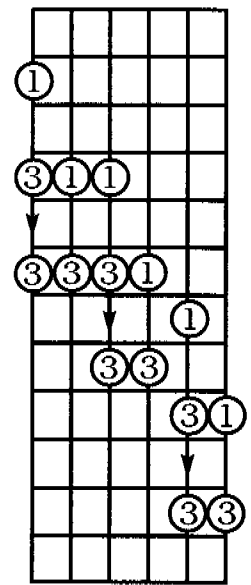
In these diagrams, the two Lead Patterns have been illustrated showing a fingering convention which is limited to the index and ring fingers only, so the player can concentrate on learning to move from position to position smoothly without having too many fingers get in the way.

The arrows indicate position changes, not *slides*, and are shown in ascending order in the top two graphs and descending order in the bottom two. The fingering, as usual, will become a matter of choice given the circumstances later on. The important thing right now is to be able to play the patterns in various positions without getting lost in the dots on the neck. One of the first things you will notice about the patterns is that they use a **stepwise**, or two fret motion. They progress in a regular fashion until they get to the 2nd and 3rd string, and then the pattern changes to a half step "finger squeeze" and then it goes back to being stepped.

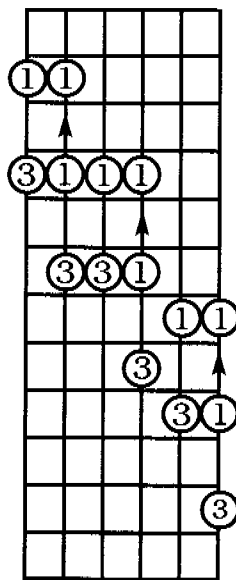
The finger motion of each three fives in LP1 ascending, is to change strings then change positions. This is the same for LP2 descending. The motion of each three fives in LP2 ascending, is to change positions, then change strings. This is the same for LP1 descending. As with the Chord Forms and Scale Forms, these patterns are the basic framework for a significant portion of the organization of the fretboard. Playing these patterns is not "playing lead" per se, but its a start. If you want to really play lead, learn these Basic Lead Patterns, and then experiment with putting the notes together into **phrases**, or musical statements, combined with other elements such as tonal groupings, coherent rhythmic statements, articulation techniques, etc. This is further discussed in Vols. II and III.



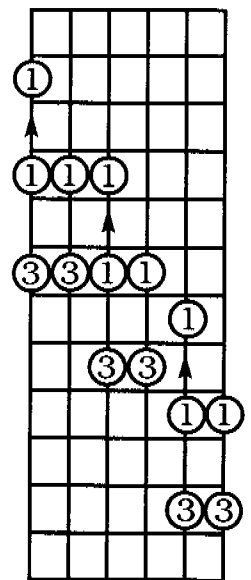
Lead Pattern 1
Ascending



Lead Pattern 2
Ascending



Lead Pattern 1
Descending



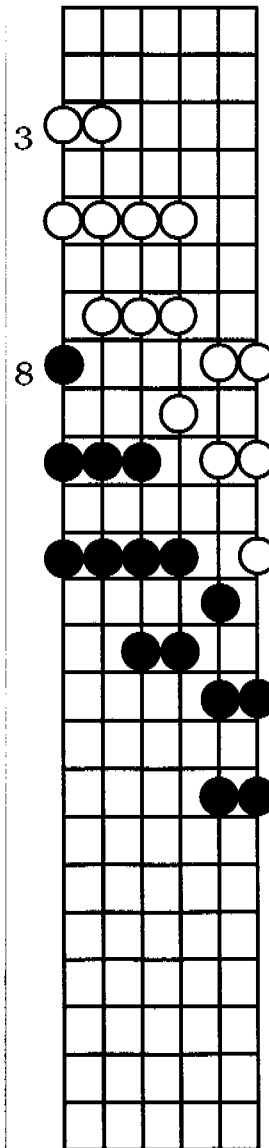
Lead Pattern 2
Descending

Forms and Positions - Lead Patterns

The graphs on the right illustrate the Lead Patterns' proximity to one another. In the left hand column, Lead Pattern 1 played in the 3rd position is the equivalent to Lead Pattern 2 played in the 8th position. In the right hand column, Lead Pattern 2 played in the 3rd position is the same as Lead Pattern 1 in the 10th position. (The first time you read the above, it will be about as clear as the ground water in the Love Canal, but it will make sense sooner or later.) As you play them you'll hear the similarities.

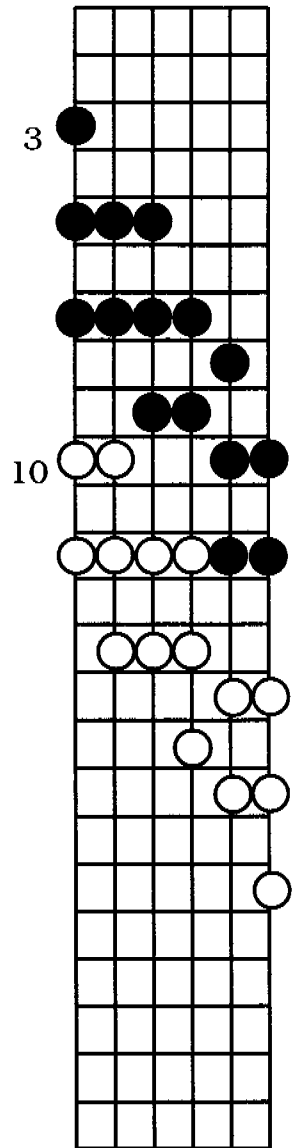
Tonally, each Lead Pattern is the same five notes played in the Scale Forms but with more range. The primary difference is that they run lengthwise instead of widthwise relative to the fretboard. The Scale Forms are all of the available notes in one position, and the Lead Patterns are a few notes from each Scale Form in several positions. When both Lead Patterns are illustrated side by side, all of the notes of the Five Basic Scale Forms are accounted for.

The patterns should be learned well enough to be played in any position possible using either one or both. To accomplish this with Lead Patterns, it will help to be able to move as easily from position to position, as from string to string. So practice using the string itself as a guide when changing positions and don't take your finger completely off when moving. As with the Chord and Scale Forms, the use of the term position is for descriptive purposes only and pertains to a fretboard location. Saying "Lead Pattern 1 in the 4th Position" will only make sense to another guitar player. The players of the other instruments in the group will have to have it translated to a scale, a key, or number in order for it to make sense to them. This is discussed in the section entitled Naming the Lead Patterns.



Lead Pattern 1
3rd Position

Lead Pattern 2
8th Position
Darkened



Lead Pattern 2
3rd Position
Darkened

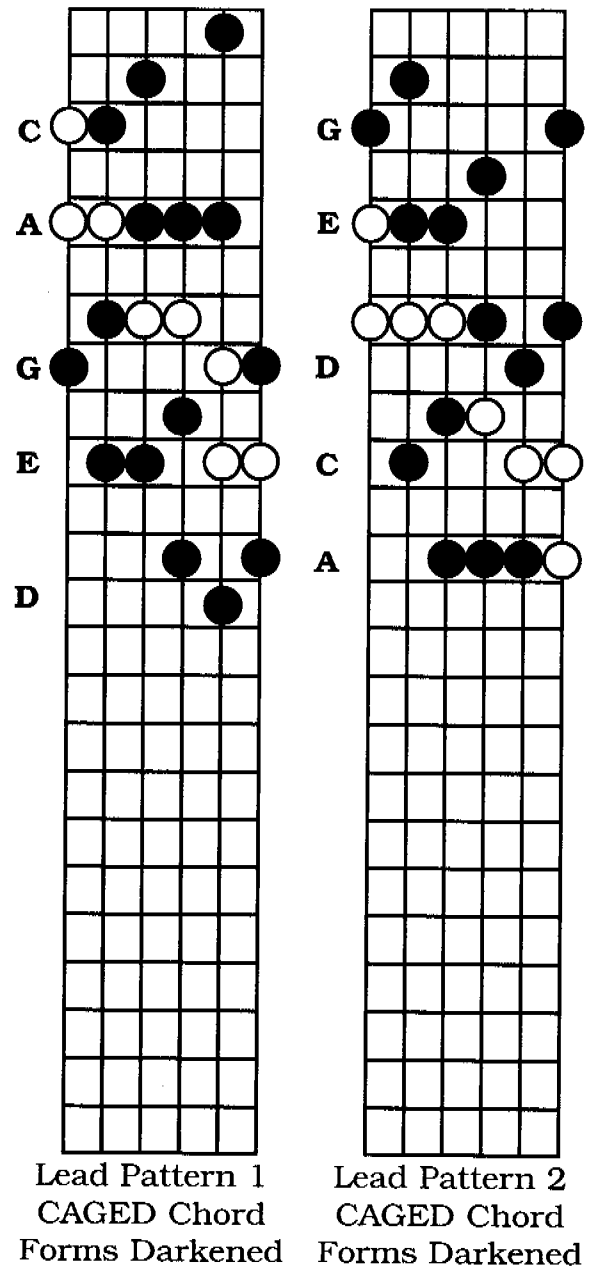
Lead Pattern 1
10th Position

The CAGED Sequence - Lead Patterns

The diagrams to the right show the relationship between the Lead Patterns and the Five Basic Chord Forms in Sequence. The Chord Forms are darkened. Notes have been added where necessary for clarity.

By now you should be able to appreciate the pervasive nature of the CAGED Sequence on the guitar fretboard. The Chord Forms, Scale Forms and Lead Patterns are each integral to this unique arrangement. In fact, no matter what you are trying to accomplish on the fretboard, you'll be working within or without the CAGED Sequence one way or another. The more aware of this you are, the easier your job will be when it comes time to apply what you know to the instrument.

With the Lead Patterns, the sequence functions differently than with the Chord and Scale Forms. Before, each form progressed along the length of the fretboard in CAGED order. Since the Lead Patterns flow along the fretboard as opposed to across it, the CAGED Sequence becomes stationary relative to what you are playing. It's function here is more on the order of a series of guide posts along the way.



Naming the Lead Patterns

Naming the Lead Patterns requires one more step than naming either the Chord or Scale Forms. **The Lead Patterns are referenced by the first Chord Form of the CAGED Sequence included in the pattern.**

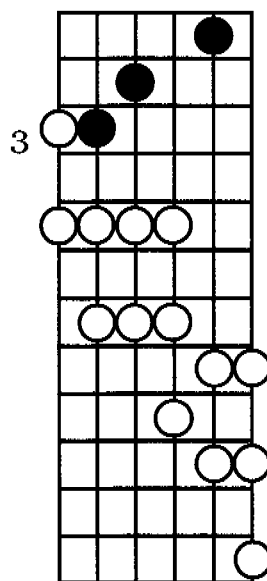
Lead Pattern 1 is referenced by the C Chord Form and Lead Pattern 2 is referenced by the G Chord Form. Given this, it will now be helpful to designate them as Groups - the C Group and G Group. This orientation also gives the player something more visual to grasp than the somewhat arbitrary "Lead Pattern 1" and "Lead Pattern 2" for naming purposes.

In the top left graph, LP1, or the C Group, begins on the third fret, and so it corresponds to the C Chord Form in the open position, therefore, it is in the key of C (for now). It is a C Group Lead Pattern (guitarwise) and a C Scale (musicwise).

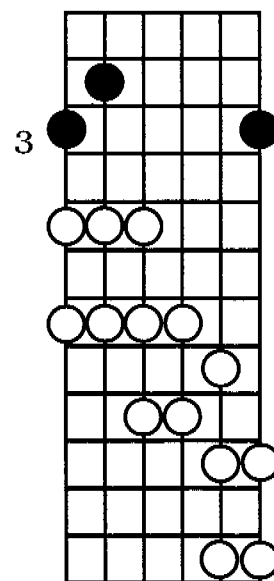
In the top right graph, LP2, or the G Group, begins on the 3rd fret, and corresponds to the G Chord Form in the open position, and so is in the key of G, musicaly.

The lower graphs illustrate this in higher positions. In the graph on the bottom left, the C Group is played from the 7th position. This corresponds musically with the C Chord Form in the 4th position which is an E chord. Therefore the Lead Pattern is in the key of E, or an E scale (for now).

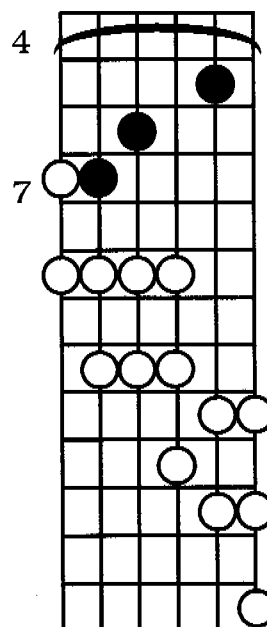
The bottom right hand graph shows the G Group Lead Pattern in the 7th position. This matches the G Chord Form in the 4th position which is a B chord. So this Lead Pattern is in the key of B, or a B Scale (again, for now). If you can name the Chord and Scale Forms, you will also be able to name the Lead Patterns provided you remember to reference it to the correct Chord Form.



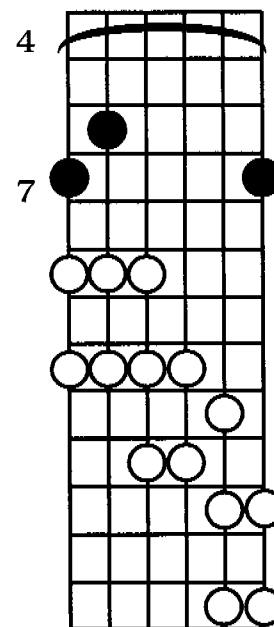
C Group
3rd Position
C Scale



G Group
3rd Position
G Scale



C Group
7th Position
E Scale



G Group
7th Position
B Scale

Naming the Lead Patterns

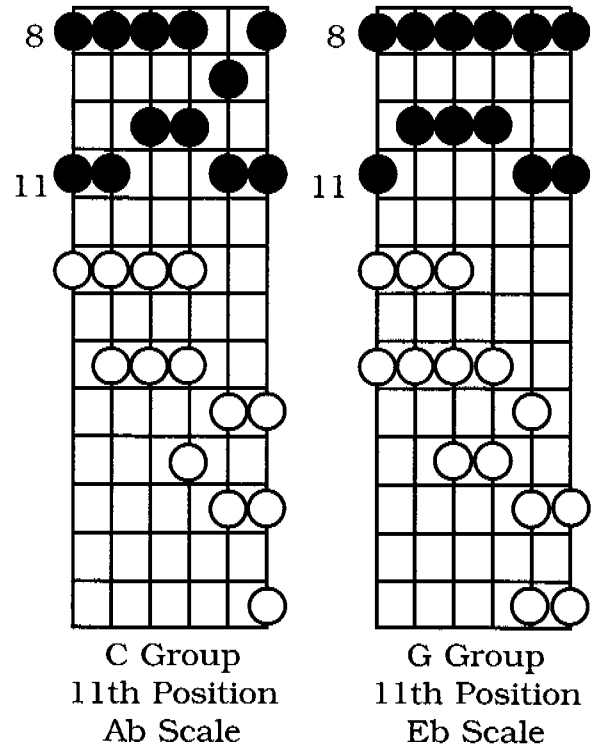
These graphs have been drawn to show that the naming of Lead Patterns can be done with Scale Forms, just as with the Chord Forms, so they have been matched up with their corresponding Scale Forms.

The C Group in the left column matches the C Scale Form in the 8th position so the key is Ab. The G Group in the 11th position matches the G Scale Form in the 8th position so the key is Eb. Using the Scale Forms instead of the Chord Forms for a reference isn't really as easy visually, but has been included for the sake of completeness.

At every opportunity an effort has been made to differentiate between the guitar description and the musical identity. Chords, scales and keys are music concepts common to all (polyphonic) instruments. Chord Forms, Scale Forms and Lead Patterns, as described here are specific to the guitar and are the sole result of the instrument's tuning.

Recap

This is the end of the third section of Fretboard Logic Volume I. By now you should be familiar with the Lead Patterns in much the same manner as the Chord and Scale Forms which preceded them. You should be able to recognize and play both Lead Patterns in any position on the fretboard. You should be able to visualize the CAGED Sequence forms in relation to each of them, and you should be able to use the C and the G Chord or Scale Forms as a reference to name them in any position. Here is another pitch to reread and replay everything from the beginning. After you've done that a time or two, take the test. Then put down the book for a while and come back to it later. See if it stuck.



Finale

The Basic Chord Forms, Scale Forms, and Lead Patterns are the three fundamental components of the pattern organization of the fretboard. They result from the implementation of six strings tuned 4th, 4th, 4th, 3rd, and 4th, and evolved as a means to confer true polyphonic capabilities upon the instrument given the limitation of four fretting fingers. This fretboard organization is the interface between the guitar player and the music he or she plays. I believe its comprehension is essential to the knowledgeable application of musical ideas to the guitar. Volume I focused on this pattern organization exclusively as the guitarist's first priority. Consider it just a foundation upon which to build. Without an understanding of why the instrument is tuned the way it is, learning the guitar can be unnecessarily frustrating. While the guitar's overall design and capabilities have evolved through advances in technology and changes in music styles, the tuning has remained the same. It is simple and efficient. It works perfectly. Although it is less than obvious, as you have seen, it can be learned in a short amount of time when not clouded by other issues. It is important that guitar players, even more than other instrumentalists, learn to distinguish the realm of the instrument's interface from the other areas of learning to be taken up. The fretboard relationships introduced here are merely a framework within which you can work to extract music from your guitar.

There are a total of three volumes to the series. The next, Fretboard Logic II continues from this point and covers the tonal elements of music exclusively. You will learn how to play different types of Chords, Scales and Arpeggios, by building them up from the basic fretboard forms. Our approach is faster, easier and more direct than either rote memorization or the cut and try approach. Groups of tones can only be expressed two ways: as played together or in succession. Chords are groups of tones played at the same time, Scales are tones played one after another, and Arpeggios are a hybrid whereby chords are played like scales. Each are presented within the context of the pattern organization discussed here.

I hope the following test provides an incentive to - you guessed it - reread and replay everything. I encourage feedback, so feel free to write with any questions, comments, criticisms or suggestions on how to improve the method. (If you want to help out, tell the folks at the stores to keep us in stock.) I've put many years of work into these little books, and done countless rewrites to make them more accurate and readable (and yes, I still find typos). I truly hope they help you get more out of your guitar. The bottom line is this: You've made a good decision in your choice of an instrument. As a vehicle for self expression, the guitar is second to none. And one more thing. The only way I've ever been able to learn anything difficult is to just keep at it until it somehow sinks in. Consider that whenever something new is presented, our brains have to fit it into what is called our "frame of reference." Maybe this is a little like breaking eggs to make an omelet. I believe there is a natural resistance to changing the status quo. Anything of value will not usually be easily attained, and learning to play the guitar is no exception.

“Testing Testing...”

1) The two chords in the first column are common in many chord books. Can they also be considered basic chord forms? Explain.

2) If the E form chord is grouped on another set of strings (such as the 2nd, 3rd & 4th), will it still be an E form?

3) Describe the 5 chords in the right column in terms of form and position.

4) Give the names of the 5 diagrammed chords in question number three.

5) Which two pairs of notes do not have a sharp or flat in between them when counting fret by fret to name a chord?

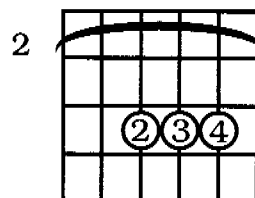
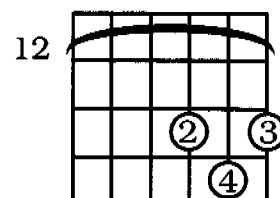
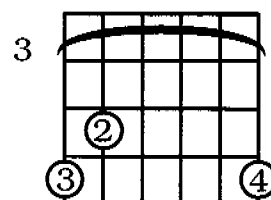
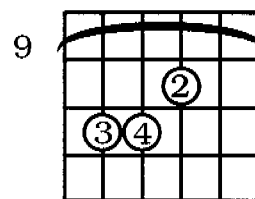
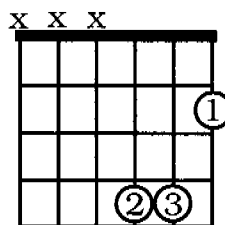
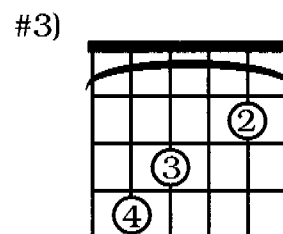
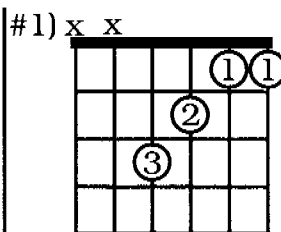
6) In the CAGED sequence, which two chord forms share a note? Where?

7) What flat chord is the same as A#? What sharp chord is the same as Eb?

8) Name the scale played when the C form is in the 5th position. Name the chord.

9) What is the term for a five note scale?

10) What are the three types of patterns which occur on the fretboard as a result of the tuning system?



"Testing, Testing..."

11) Describe the Scale Forms in the left hand column in terms of form and position.

12) Name the scales in question 11.

13) Who is funnier, Elvis Presley or Johnny Rotten?

14) Which Scale Forms treat the index as an extension instead of the position marker in order to correspond more closely to the chord form?

15) What are four ways Chord Forms, Scale Forms and Lead Patterns should be learned?

16) Which Chord Form identifies Lead Pattern 1? Lead Pattern 2?

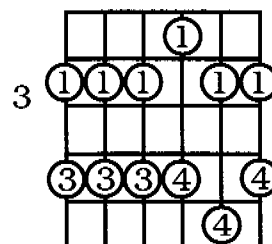
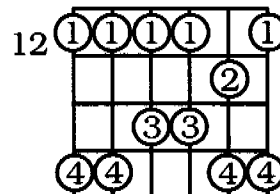
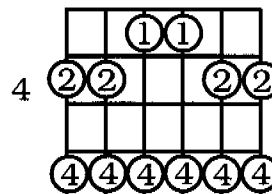
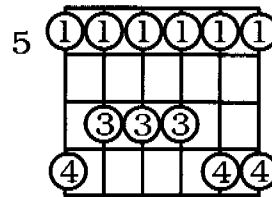
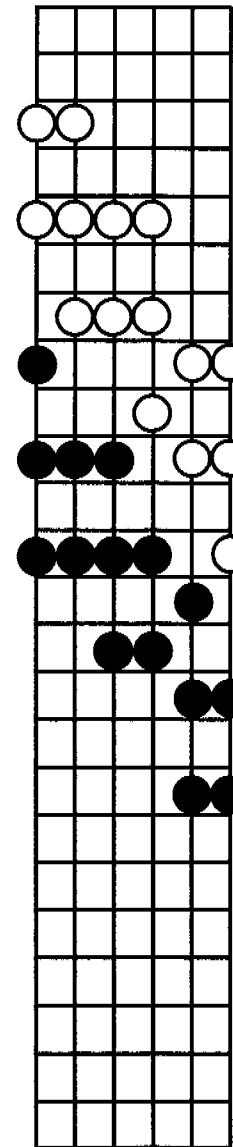
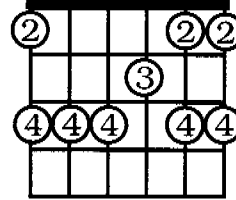
17) What position would you start the G Group on in order to play a B scale? (See diagrams on next page.)

18) Name the scale if you play the C Group from the 2nd fret.

19) Name the scale if you play Lead Pattern 2 from the 1st fret.

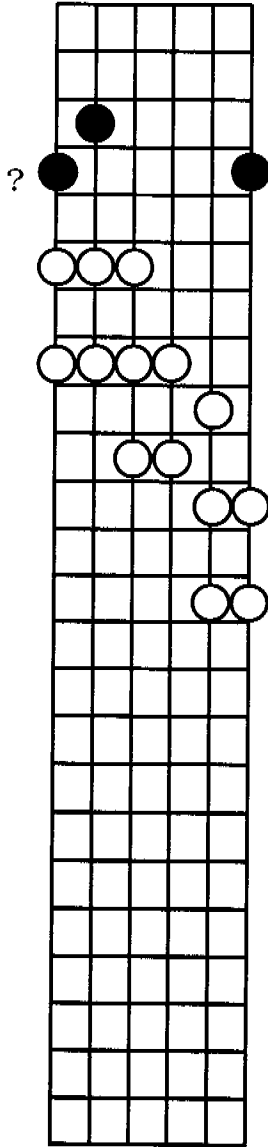
20) What fret would you start Lead Pattern 2 on to play a G# scale

#12) o o o #16)

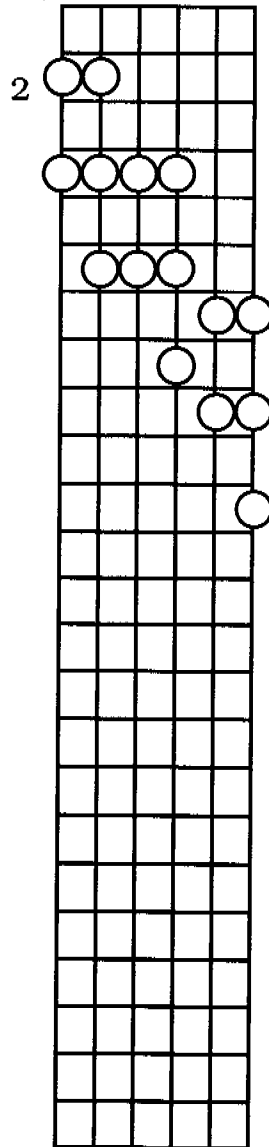


"Testing, Testing..."

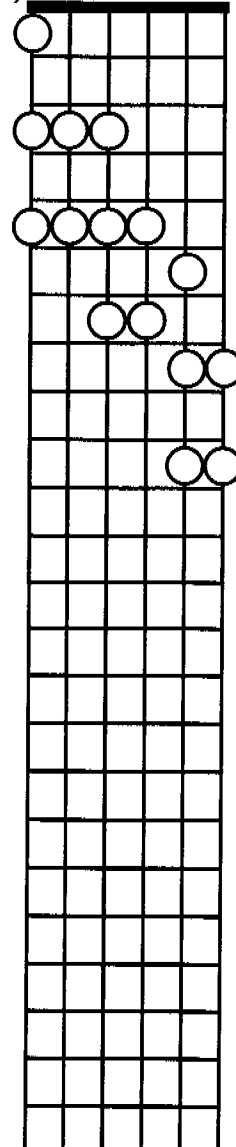
#17)



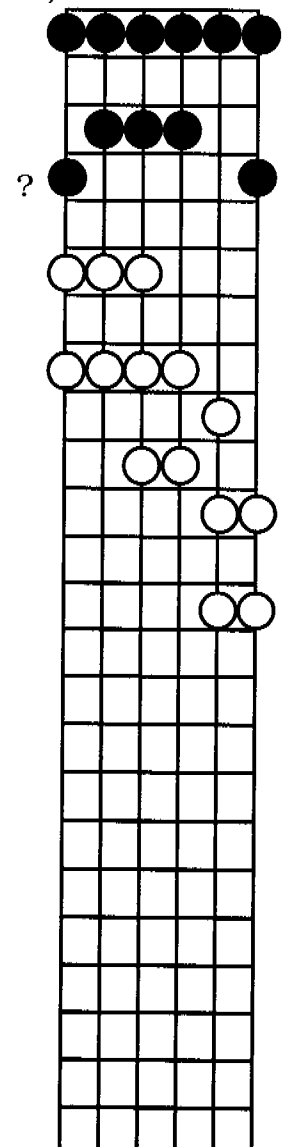
#18)



#19)



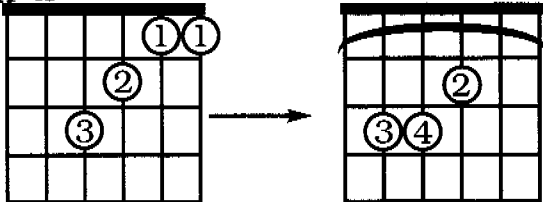
#20)



The Answers To All Your Problems

1) The F and B chords pictured are often treated as basic forms. They are really only portions of other Chord Forms. The F chord pictured is a portion of the E form in the 1st position. (The B chord was a portion of the A form in the 2nd position.)

#1) x x



2) No. The forms retain their character only along the length of the strings, not across them. The form as described would be an A minor form.

3) C Chord Form 1st position.
E Chord Form 9th position.
G Chord Form 3rd position.
D Chord Form 12th position.
A Chord Form 2nd position.

4) C# (or Db)
C# (or Db)
A# (or Bb)
D
B

5) B and C, E and F.

6) D form and C form. 2nd string.

7) Bb. D#.

8) F scale.
F chord.

9) Pentatonic.

10) Chord Forms, Scale Forms and Lead Patterns.

11) E Scale Form 1st position.
G Scale Form 5th position.
A Scale Form 4th position.
C Scale Form 12th position.
D Scale Form 3rd position.

12) F
C
C# (or Db)
C
F

13) Wrong. Fred Grunfeld. Clearly a trick question.

14) The A scale form and E scale form.

15) 1. As Basic Forms
2. As Forms in Positions
3. Within (or without) the CAGED Sequence.
4. Named as a musical entity.

16) C form.
G form.

17) 7th position.

18) B scale.

19) F scale.

20) 4th fret.

Fretboard Logic 12 Step Program

Here it is one last time. Condensed. The reasoning behind the guitar's tuning is to make the instrument a practical polyphonic given the limitation of four fretting fingers. Because of the tuning, EADGBE, and the resultant string to string intervals, three distinct pattern types occur on the fretboard. They are Chord Forms, Scale Forms, and Lead Patterns. They are organized and interrelated to one another as patterns and can be considered separate from typical music issues such as pitch and time.

This pattern organization can be overviewed in a series of twelve steps as illustrated below. The three pattern types each must be grasped four separate ways in order for the guitarist to have a functional understanding of the interface between the player and the music he or she plays.

The four ways each pattern type must be learned are:

- 1) As Basic Forms distinct from one another and from other pattern types,
- 2) As Forms to be used in various Positions on the fretboard,
- 3) As forms in CAGED Sequence along the fretboard, and
- 4) Identified and Named as music entities.

Five Basic Chord Forms	Five Basic Scale Forms	Two Basic Lead Patterns
Chord Forms In Positions	Scale Forms In Positions	Lead Patterns In Positions
Chord Forms In CAGED Sequence	Scale Forms In CAGED Sequence	Lead Patterns Overlying The CAGED Sequence
Chord Forms In Positions Named As Chords	Scale Forms In Positions Named As Scales	Lead Patterns In Positions Named As Scales

Alternate Placement of the "3rd" Interval

<p>3rd NCT D G B E A D</p>	<p>3rd NCT A D G B E A</p>	<p>3rd E A D G B E</p>	<p>NCT 3rd B E A D G B</p>	C Form
<p>3rd NCT D G B E A D</p>	<p>3rd A D G B E A</p>	<p>3rd E A D G B E</p>	<p>NCT 3rd B E A D G B</p>	A Form
<p>3rd D G B E A D</p>	<p>3rd A D G B E A</p>	<p>3rd E A D G B E</p>	<p>3rd B E A D G B</p>	G Form
<p>3rd NCT D G B E A D</p>	<p>3rd NCT A D G B E A</p>	<p>3rd E A D G B E</p>	<p>3rd B E A D G B</p>	E Form
<p>3rd D G B E A D</p>	<p>3rd A D G B E A</p>	<p>NCT 3rd E A D G B E</p>	<p>NCT 3rd B E A D G B</p>	D Form

These graphs were included to illustrate that the placement of the 3rd anywhere but the 4th string pair (from the bass), produces more non-chord tones (NCTs), and so are less optimal given the limitation of three fretting fingers per form. The two left hand columns were common lute tunings, and are the intervallic equivalents of: CFADGC (4th 3rd 4th 4th 4th), GCFADG (4th 4th 3rd 4th 4th). The third column is standard tuning, included for comparison.

About the Author

Bill Edwards became fascinated with the guitar in high school after hearing a friend (who actually took lessons) perform. He's made a living as a teacher and performer, and as an owner of a music store. He is the inventor and patent holder of the original Finger-Tite Locking Nut. In his spare time he works on projects that he hopes will make back the ton he lost to the pirates on that one. (It's a long and gruesome story and you don't wanna know. It's caused him to, at times, refer to himself in the third person.)

"After 33 years of playing, perhaps there is hope yet."

George Johnson New Brunswick
Canada

"Dear Sir, I am writing to express my complete satisfaction with Fretboard Logic Volume I. Many thanks."

Mike Murphy Coral Gables FL

"I was totally amazed at how easy it was to understand and apply it to the guitar. I've learned through other books, but little bits and pieces. Your book made sense of it all. I really wish I could of had this book years ago. Thank you for writing a masterpiece."

Chris Gronskei East Bethel MN

"All those quotes were true. It does fill in gaps. Do you know the Castalia Guitar Poster? Well, you finally made sense out of it for me. Fantastic job."

Dominick Furlano East Stroudsburg PA

"I must have \$400.00 worth of guitar books at home, but these are the first ones that taught me what I really needed to know."

James Porter Riverview FL

"Thanks to you for writing the Fretboard Logic series - it sure made a difference in my musical life as a guitarist."

Felix Rodriguez Arkansas Pass TX

"One of my students first brought it in and I looked it over and said wow, this is the first book that teaches the way I've been doing things for years. Before, I had to constantly write out patterns and graphs but now they're organized in one place. They really are excellent."

Steve Jolemore Virginia Beach VA

*"No Fat.. like Grays Anatomy."
Paul Whitehead Eagan MN*

"I brought my set of books w/me on a recent trip skiing in Utah, showed them to my brother and told him I would buy him his own set for his birthday if he liked them. He is an eye surgeon one heck of a great brother and has been (as have I) struggling with the fretboard for ten years. Your books ignited a great spark of understanding in both of us. I am right brained he is left brained but the books clicked us both on. Thank you very much.

James B. Wood Hollywood FL

"It's like a unified field theory for guitar players."

David Carlisle Plant City FL

"My satisfaction is beyond expression... 15 years well spent."
Keith Foster Dallas TX

"It is quite simply the best most helpful system of guitar pedagogy I've encountered in a great many years of unsuccessful searching, & after many abortive attempts during that time to develop some fundamental understanding of the instrument. Thanks."
Dr. Doug Dobson Naperville, IL

"I am finishing Fretboard Logic Vol 1 and also have Vol II. I find them the best thing to come down the pike. Thanks a lot. Please send me Fretboard Logic Vol. 3. Vols. I & II were great!!!" Dennis Snellgrove Amarillo TX

"I'm glad somebody has finally dealt once and for all with that black hole known as the fretboard. I'm basing our entire video series on Fretboard Logic."
Craig Tarwater Walla Walla WA...

"... Dear Craig [Tarwater] I took your advice and ordered Bill Edwards' course Fretboard Logic. I agree its simplicity is almost genius."
Michael Clarkson Dallas TX

"The first book is great!! Please send the second."
Mac Hawley Evergreen CO

"I've got a lot of music books and tapes and yours are far and away the best. I'm a lawyer and your books are way better."
Robert Kellman Lafayette CA

"I'm not in the habit of plugging books other than my own, but I have to compliment you... please send 5 copies for my own students." Ande Flavelle Caldwell NJ

"I've found your FRETBOARD LOGIC Series to be every bit as impressive as your many published customer's testimonials claim! A such, I'm delighted to (at last) be able to order myself a copy of Vol. III, and very much look forward to the hours and years of musical education and enjoyment that it's likely to initiate. Many thanks!"

Dan Leman Calgary Alberta Canada

"I have your wonderful book, Fretboard Logic. Would you please let me know how I may purchase Volume II by mail and please tell me what other books you have available?"

Jack Kershner Stafford NY

"I've been teaching myself to play for two years, and all along I've been waiting for someone to tell me what I read in your book. All of a sudden everything fell into place. Thank you so much."
Kyle Ancowitz Hanover NH

"I've had my classical guitar for four years (it was a gift). I've tried to learn to play it numerous times but never got past the first 10 pages of any of the 20 (no lie) guitar 'method' books I've bought. I bought your book 'Fretboard Logic Vol. I yesterday and I've been engrossed. I finally get it. After reading/practicing the concepts in the first 19 pages - I can honestly hope to make music! Bless you. Thanks again for sharing your knowledge -- I don't understand how other people's methods are still selling -- I will swear by this book as long as I'm playing (hopefully til my death -- at age 120.)"

Inge Leland Fresh Meadows NY

Vol. 1 is the owners manual that should have come with your guitar.

"You're going to change the way the guitar is taught forever..."

Rich DiBiase Bristol CT

"I have, and frequently use, the first two volumes in this series. I have studied music at the university level and have played professionally for nearly twenty years and have never felt as clear about or confident with the guitar as I now do having applied your method. Many thanks." Mark Lee Amherst NY

"Brilliant."

John Holly Denver CO

"I see the greatness of these books and I understand what you are doing. And I thank you. It's a good thing you're doing." Bob Savage Friendsville MD

"Fretboard Logic is 'The Best'!!"
C. J. Hamwyk Delft Netherlands

"I've been playing about 28 years believe it or not, and I'm a guitar teacher. I found some of those patterns in Book One but not like you have. You've really done a good job here." Don LaDolce Cassadaga NY

"Bells rang. Lights flashed. A little siren went off - your system is so tight - it makes honest to God sense." Jeffrey Ford Pendleton IN

ISBN 0-9624770-0-1



9 780962 477003

50995>



"I would like to say that I've spent more money on guitar lesson books than I have on all my guitar equipment put together. If FRETBOARD LOGIC and FRETBOARD LOGIC II were available when I first started playing guitar I would have saved a lot of money. FRETBOARD LOGIC and FRETBOARD LOGIC II are the best instruction books I own, they are very easy to understand and very well put together. I would recommend these books to everybody from beginner to advanced players." Scott Spaulding Virginia Beach VA

"I thought Volume I was excellent. It fills in gaps in my fretboard knowledge. I wish I'd had this 25 years ago."

David Tyra Terre Haute IN

"The claims were outrageous, the quotes unbelievable and I thought it just can't be that simple. Now I am feeling sorry for anyone who hasn't gotten your books. They honestly advanced me years beyond where I'm at. Thank you."

P.S. Why doesn't everyone know about this?"

Rev. Garth Heckman Madison WI

"I just received your books, and I want you to know they are intensely appreciated. I've been playing almost 30 years, and I've got all kinds of books and videos, but these books mean more to me than all that other [expletive deleted]. I've had teachers but I learn best on my own. Have you studied systems analysis? I'm a scientist and these books are presented in a way that I would have if I knew the material. I wish I'd had these 15 years ago when my fingers weren't so stiff. Why aren't these books in every music store in America?"

Michael Fitzgerald Waukeegan IL

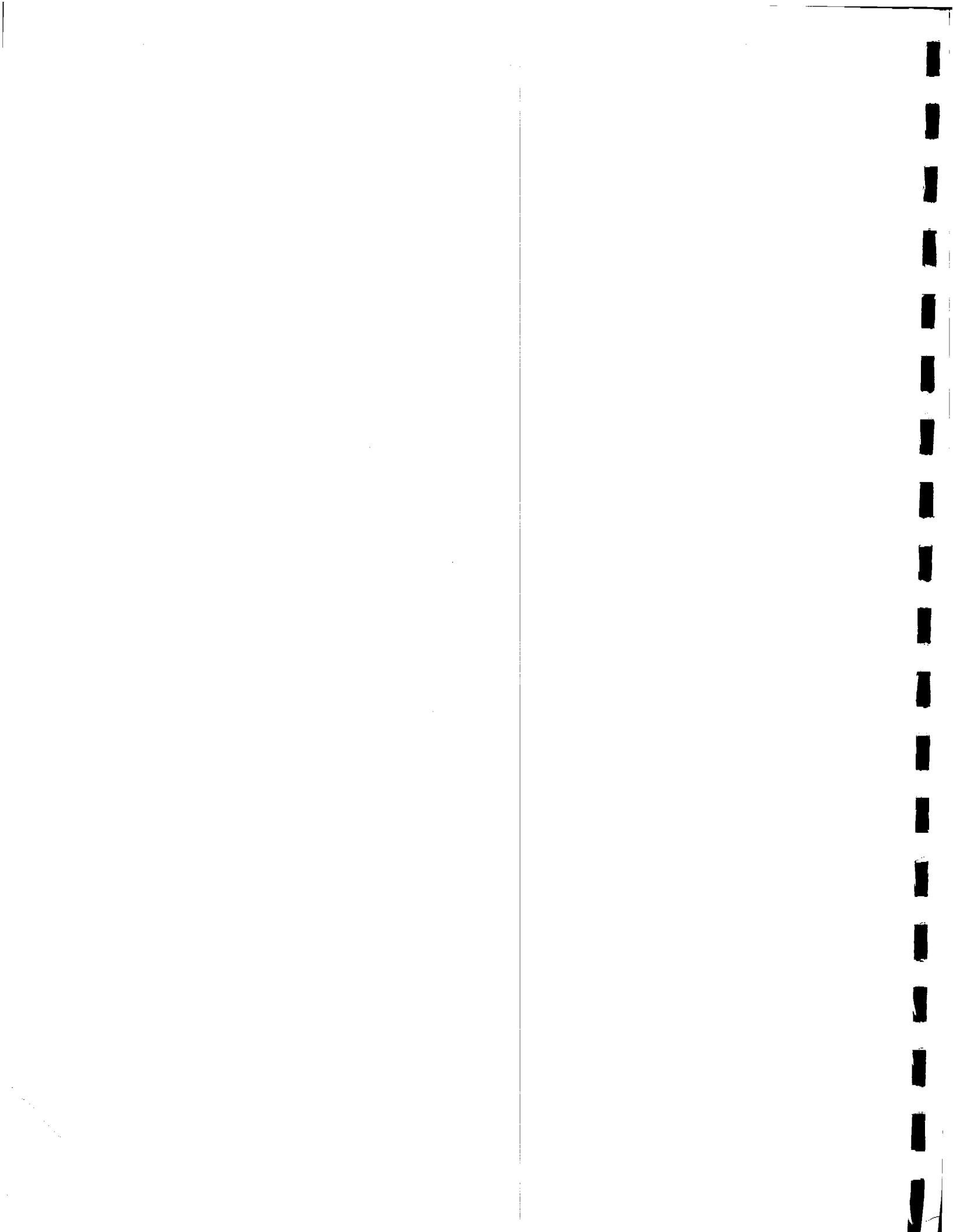
ISBN 0-9624770-0-1 U.S. 9.95
Canada/Intl. 10.95

Fretboard Logic II



...Tonal Elements of Music with a Focus on the work of Rote

Down to



Fretboard Logic

Volume II

Bill Edwards

Bill Edwards Publishing

305 St. Augustine Ave.
Tampa FL 33617-7229



Dedication

For the people who read Fretboard Logic and
encouraged me to continue on.

Copyright 1989 by Bill Edwards

All Rights Reserved

This volume may not be reproduced in whole or in part in any form without
written permission from the publisher.

Teachers who wish to use this method may purchase it at a special discount by
calling, writing, faxing or emailing to an address or number below. We now main-
tain an international database for the purpose of referring students who contact
us in search of teachers who use Fretboard Logic in their area.

For a free listing in our registry as a Fretboard Logic teacher
please contact us at:

Bill Edwards Publishing
305 St. Augustine Ave
Temple Terrace, FL 33617-7229
(813) 985-2689 Phone
(813) 985-0554 Fax
emupub@gate.net Email
billedwards.com Internet

Printed in the United States of America

Contents

Preface.....	vii
Introduction.....	ix
Triads.....	1
Seventh Chords.....	7
Diatonic Scales.....	13
CAGED Sequence.....	16
Diatonic Lead Patterns.....	17
Naming Diatonic Lead Patterns.....	22
Modes.....	24
Arpeggios.....	33
Loose Ends.....	40
Components.....	48
Theory.....	49
Technique.....	51
Rhythm Playing.....	53
Lead Playing.....	54
Styles.....	55
Finale.....	56
Twenty Questions.....	57
Twenty Answers.....	58
About the Author.....	59

“

Information is anything which reduces uncertainty.

Claude Shannon

”

Preface

The Fretboard Logic Series began when, after years of thinking otherwise, the author finally came to see that the guitar's tuning system represented a completely separate endeavor from the typical educational requirements of other musical instruments. As the first book developed, he felt that it was something unique in the field of guitar methods and also very tidy, since it focused on this fretboard pattern organization to the exclusion of everything else. It distinguished itself from many earlier method books by avoiding the tendency to muddy things up by touching on many topics superficially and was, in a sense, clean and well defined.

So upon it's completion, there was no intention on the part of the author, of opening up the can of worms that the next levels of involvement represented. His students and readers had other ideas, however, and they persuaded him to continue on from that point. After numerous false starts, a decision was made to limit the second effort to the subject of the tonal elements of music as viewed within the context of the pattern organization described in Volume I.

As Volume II progressed, the author again became concerned with avoiding anything that would distract from the central purpose of the book. Every effort was made to prevent it from becoming one of those methods that talks a little bit about a lot of different subjects - usually growing enormous in the process - but one that never really nails down anything in a meaningful, original or lasting way. It was and is his intention to continue to approach the guitar in a systematic, if somewhat unorthodox, way.

As a practical matter, Volume II could be considered a well stocked "tonal tool box" for guitar players. The idea is to provide the basic tonal elements of music in a format that is consistent with the instrument's design. Volume I dealt with the fretboard aspects of playing. Volume II will focus on the tonal elements of music taught in the context of that fretboard pattern organization.

Chords, Scales and Arpeggios are not really music per se, but you will use them to make your own music and to fully understand the music of others.

Introduction

Fretboard Logic Vol. II has been designed to build on the foundations established in the original Fretboard Logic. If you have not yet read Volume I, what is written here will be more difficult and won't work as intended because the structure that supports it will not yet have been established. I can't stress strongly enough to learn the material in the first book before continuing with Vol. II. If you have just completed Vol. I, you'll know that one of main differences between this approach and the others is that the various components that make up music have been separated from one another so that each may be more closely examined, learned and retained. The focus of Vol. I was the unique and largely unappreciated reasoning behind the guitar's unusual pitch selection - EADGBE. This tuning was implemented as a way to combine simple pattern recognition with left hand efficiency. It takes a whole book to explain this completely, but in terms of your guitar playing education, the layout of the fretboard is just the beginning.

As a guitarist, the other aspects of music, including theory, technique, and the different styles of music, must each be understood through this tuning system, otherwise you will find yourself reduced to guesswork or rote memorization much of the time. If you study theory, you are taking an intellectual approach to the pitch and time relationships in music. If you are working on technique, you are dealing with the physical requirements, and style refers to the various combinations of elements which produce music to your liking. You no doubt prefer certain types or kinds of music to others and that, too, can change from time to time. Some of the more common styles of music are rock, metal, blues, country, classical, jazz, and bluegrass. Learning music from copying records or reading could be described generally as an analytical approach, where you slowly assimilate a little bit from each different area with each piece you learn. If you write or compose, you are putting your creative faculties to use.

Fretboard Logic is, at it's heart, a guitar-oriented approach. It makes no assumptions about which of the various components the player prefers to study. It does not prescribe or endorse a particular style or technique and is not music theory per se. It tries to provide information that is common to all of the aspects of guitar playing, expanding outward from the fretboard pattern organization. Illustrating the different components of music separately is to the benefit of the student two ways. It makes things easier both on the front end when learning, and later on, when applying them in various playing situations. However, as progress is made, this separation becomes more and more difficult. The lines between the styles of music, creative vs. analytic thinking, feelings and thoughts, etc., will become blurred. Words and images used to describe musical entities become less effective as their meanings overlap and become vague. Still, from a teaching standpoint, it is important to be able to distinguish them from the outset, regardless of whatever long or short term objectives the player has in mind. Just as we may

Introduction

value different styles at different times of our lives, the level of interest and skill in the components and areas of music changes from time to time for each of us. A conscious effort was made to focus exclusively on the guitar's pattern organization in Vol. I. Volume II is confined to the tonal elements of music in a guitaristic orientation. Rhythmic and other elements are separated away so that the common tone groups can be more carefully examined. Vol. II starts by developing the different types of Chords, Scales, and Arpeggios, and ends by introducing some of the more significant components of music, with an emphasis on understanding how they work within the context of the fretboard operating system.

In the past, the learning of the tonal elements has been relegated to one of two divergent philosophical approaches. The first approach is the "bootstrap" school of thought, where chords, etc., are considered merely items of information to be learned by rote memorization, i.e., without a frame of reference. Teachers of this school feel it is best to get them out of the way as soon as possible, and get on to more important matters. Unfortunately, if you happen to forget a chord or scale, for example, you must go back and memorize it over again from scratch. This occurs all too often because without supports and without integration, new information tends to get lost in our brains - the old "in one ear and out the other" effect. The net result is that guitarists retain only a small portion of what they learn and become handicapped when the time comes for more advanced activities.

The second school of thought is what is believed to be the more academic method. It considers tone groupings in terms of their most basic sub-components. In other words, chords, scales and arpeggios must be broken down into intervals and individual notes to be understood. Because of the unique nature of the guitar, I deem this to be something akin to looking at the elephant through a microscope - a variation on the blind men and the elephant fable. This method presumes that if you know the notes on the fretboard, and also know the notes of, say, a Bbm7b5 chord, then playing it is a simple matter of combining them. No problem - if you happen to be on a *keyboard*. The problems for guitarists are many. First, the prerequisite information itself is a steep learning curve. In order to make one chord you have to know the key signature, the notes in the key, the notes in the chord, and the formula for the chord. After you have all this information then the real work begins. On a piano, there is only one of each pitch, and the notes are laid out in a line, in one dimension. On a guitar, there are multiples of most notes, and they are laid out in an irregular matrix. So after all that, you have to come to a decision about which string upon which to look for each note, and which of the available notes is going to be the most appropriate in the context of how long and strong your fingers are. As you can guess, there are a mind-boggling number of permutations of each chord within the context of a note by note approach. So it comes down to cut and try. The difficulty of this method makes the previous

Introduction

method of rote memorization look pretty sensible by comparison.

Do either of these approaches sound familiar? I'll bet they do. If you were frustrated by either of them, don't feel too bad. They are an example of how the dominant influences of other instruments, especially keyboards, have corrupted the teaching of the guitar for hundreds of years. It may be another hundred years before the academics and bootstrappers figure that out. For those of us who want to not only play, but understand what we're doing, there is an alternative. It boils down to looking at the guitar as if it had an interface of its own independent of the piano or violin, which it does. The method for learning tone groups here is to combine a minimum amount of information so you can *build* them without guesswork or rote. By relying more or less on the basic fretboard forms provided by the tuning, and the formula of each tone group, you can build any tone grouping, in any key, easily.

Chords, scales and arpeggios can be considered the basic building blocks of music and they are all derived from the same origins: the notes in a *key*. The difference between them is the order in which they are taken and the way they are played. To prepare you for the process of combining fretboard and music elements, it is a good idea to make sure you are familiar with some of the basic terminology used in music, and prepare you in advance for a few of the many linguistic pitfalls that await you. Many terms in music are bandied about casually, with their meanings not very well defined. The terms note and tone, and key and scale, are good examples. Strictly speaking, a **note** is a concept which represents a pitch unit and a **tone** is an actuality - the vibrations you hear. When you play a note, it produces a tone. In other words you can't hear notes and you can't write tones. The same relationship exists for the terms key, a concept, and scale, an actuality. However, ask just about any music teacher on the planet where the notes of chord come from, and he or she will say with absolute certainty, "From a scale." If it didn't produce logic jams later on, I'd even be willing to let it go at that, just to avoid the argument, but here's what happens. Scales have both even and odd degrees; chords have only odd degrees, and it makes all the difference in the world when building, identifying and using them for more important purposes. Using a term like Sus. 4, instead of Sus. 11, only confuses things unnecessarily. So the very words we use can lead to more or less understanding of both the more fundamental and more advanced issues in music.

A **key** is a group of related notes (or tones, if you must). The word note and tone are often used interchangeably, but again, here, tone is taken to mean the sound produced, and the note is the idea we manipulate. The concept of key (normally) combines three things: 1) seven notes of the twelve tone system, 2) the first seven letters of the alphabet, and 3) alterations known as sharps (#) or

Introduction

flats (b). For example, the notes in the key of C are: C D E F G A and B. The notes in the key of F are: F G A B \flat C D and E. The notes in the key of D are: D E F \sharp G A B and C \sharp . Each key has at least one note different from the others designated by its **signature**, which is the number of sharps or the number of flats, given in a specific order. **Chords** are groups of three or more notes that are selected from every other degree in a key (the odd ones), and played simultaneously. A "C chord" is the notes C, E, and G played together. **Inversion** is when they are played in any other order. G C E is the same chord with the notes inverted. All the chord tones in that key are C E G B D F and A. Remember that *chords* are every other note - the odd numbers - in a key. **Scales** are groups of tones that are made up of each note in the key, but played in succession. For example, in the key of C, the C scale is: C D E F G A B and C, forward or back, one after another. **Arpeggios** are chords that are played like scales. In other words, instead of playing the chord tones all at once, you would play each tone one after the other, perhaps up and back.

Most of Volume II is devoted to establishing the Chords, Scales and Arpeggios from which you will learn to better understand the music of others, and experiment with your own musical ideas. It is the next logical step after you have mastered the layout of the fretboard. This should not be to the exclusion of acquiring a repertoire of pieces to play. That's the other half of the battle. Learning to build tone groups is a way of understanding an important part of what's going on. After that, other components of music will be introduced so each person will be able to choose for him or herself which direction to explore next, in order to achieve their own objectives. A few of these areas including theory, technique, style, rhythm, and lead playing are introduced briefly at the end of the book. By the time you have finished Vol. I and II, you will have been exposed to the operating system of the guitar and the basic tonal elements of music. When you examine the type of music you're interested in, you will hopefully see it in a new light and comprehend it on different levels. By the way, the work gets harder as you progress, but that is natural. Besides, if you have come this far, it is likely you have more than just a passing interest in the guitar.

One or two more observations and we'll get on with it. When most people want to teach themselves guitar, they go out and buy a chord book to learn chords from, and a songbook to learn the songs they'd like to play. It seems like all they need to do is memorize the chords one by one and add a right hand strumming or picking pattern and they'll sound pretty much like the record. If you've tried this - I sure did - then you already know that it's not that simple. There are a couple of things working against us. First of all, there are many types of chords and numerous ways to form them on the neck, and they aren't all easy to use or remember. Second, trying to make sense of the way things work on the fretboard is not exactly the easiest thing in the world. Third, the forms used in the songbook are often

Introduction

simplified, I believe, to keep from scaring off potential buyers, and often don't sound quite right. A common misconception about songbooks is that the artists themselves are responsible for their content and accuracy.

In Volume I, we explored the basic chord and scale *forms* or shapes, as a function of the guitar's pitch selection. In Volume II, the next step is to learn the chord and scale *types* as a function of the twelve tone system in music.

Chords are classified into "families" by how many different notes they have, usually either three or four. The family of three-note chords is called **Triads**, and there are four basic types: Major, Minor, Diminished, and Augmented. The five basic chord forms are all major triads. The family of four-note chords is known as the **Sevenths** because of the addition of the seventh degree, and there are six primary types: Major Seventh, Minor Seventh, Diminished Seventh, Augmented Seventh, Dominant Seventh, and Minor Seventh Flat Five.

Beyond the seventh chords are ninths, elevenths, and thirteenth which tend to become more and more esoteric as you venture farther and farther from a recognizable reference tone. As you travel away from the tonic, the subject eventually changes from the discussion of chords per se, to the study of chord substitutions, for the purpose of achieving a particular harmonic effect. This becomes a matter of style and taste at some point, and no longer a purely objective discourse on chords. Just as a rock player often uses different sound effects such as distortion, chorus or delay, to give his or her music a certain type of feel, a jazz player will substitute unusual tonal material to create harmonic interest. You may have noticed that these two components of music tend to cancel each other out. In other words if the guitar has a great deal of sonic activity, then more harmonic activity just creates sonic confusion - commonly called noise. In fact, it is hard to distinguish between even a major and a minor chord if there is just distortion in the guitar sound, but, I digress.

If you learn the Triads and Sevenths, you will already have a fairly extensive chord vocabulary plus you'll know the procedure for constructing anything else you might need in the future. The first section is devoted to the building process so that you will always have them available without having to memorize a couple of hundred pages of "bits and pieces" out of an ordinary chord book. In retrospect, I'm pretty sure that some of the guys who put those books together got the idea that since we have four fretting fingers, chords should be learned as four-stringed entities - and a lot of guitar players have been baffled ever since.

After the chords, the scales and then the arpeggios will become progressively easier to understand, but harder to play.

“

Inside every fat book is a thin book trying to get out.

Anon.

”

In order to understand the nature of the different chord types it is helpful to take a moment and examine where they come from: keys. In western music, keys are groups of seven notes in which each is identified by a letter of the alphabet from A to G. There are basically fifteen keys and each has one or more notes that are different from the others and which are specified by a sharp (#) or a flat (b). The key of G for example, is comprised of the notes G A B C D E and F#. The difference between the key of G and the key of C is the F note. There is no F in the key of G. F# is a completely different tone although it borrows part of its name from F to confuse you.

The important thing to recognize now is that each key is equivalent to the next, as far as chord types are concerned. In order to correlate them, a number value is placed on each note or degree of the key. In the key of C, first degree is C, the second is D, the third is E, the fourth is F, the fifth is G, the sixth is A, and the seventh degree in the key of C is B. In the key of G, G=1, A=2, B=3, C=4, D=5, E=6, and F#=7. Every key is the same with respect to each note's degree. This is where chords get their musical identity. Musically, chords are made up of the odd numbered degrees in a key. Different types of chords are made by altering various degrees using sharps or flats. Any major chord, for example, is simply the first, third, and fifth degrees of a key (1 3 5). Any minor chord is the first, flatted third, and fifth degrees of a key (1 b3 5). The degrees of a chord can be "spelled" out numerically. (Hey, if you can add with letters in algebra, you can spell with numbers in music.)

These odd-numbered note groups with the various alterations that identify each chord type are called chord **formulas**. Combined with the notes in a key, they give the correct spelling for any chord. So a C major chord is spelled C E G, and a G minor chord is spelled G bB D (spoken G, B flat, D). If, from the preceding, you can spell C minor and G major yourself, you've got the basic idea. *Formulas* are the musical (tonal) side of the story, just as the CAGED System is the guitar side. In order to know the musical aspect to chords, you need to know what notes are in the key, and the chord's formula. Combine them and you understand each chord's musical nature.

To build chords on the guitar using the Fretboard Logic method, the minimum you need to know is its formula, and the order of the degrees in each of the five basic chord forms. Put these together and you can build any chord. One chord type played through each different form will sound both similar because they are the same notes, and different because of the arrangement of the tones. When chords are combined into musical statements or sequences, they become what is termed a **progression**. A more general term for how chords work is harmony. Harmony can be considered the overall vertical relationships of the notes in music. The formulas for the basic triads are as follows:

Major - 1 3 5
Minor - 1 b3 5

Augmented - 1 3 #5
Diminished - 1 b3 b5

Triads - Major; Degrees

The five basic chord forms are all Major Triads, and the formula for Major Triads is 1 3 5.

In the left hand column, the forms are illustrated as open chords with only the 1 3 5 part, or **Nucleus**, of each form shown as degrees below. There isn't a nucleus within the D form chord. These diagrams show the relationship between forms and degrees on the fretboard. It's important to recognize on which three strings each form's 1 3 5 nucleus is, as soon as possible.

The right hand column shows all the degrees below each string of the barred forms. Learn these and practice locating the equivalent tones so you can determine where the degrees are for each form by ear.

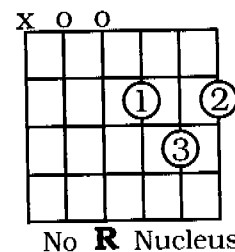
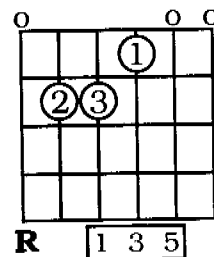
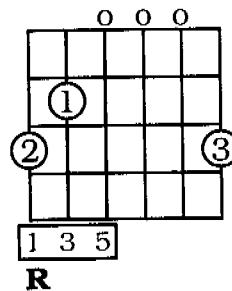
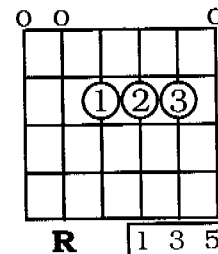
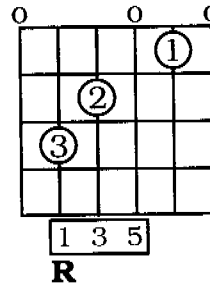
The **root**, or (lowest) first degree of the chord, is marked with an **R**. The root for the G and E forms is on the sixth string, the root for the C and A is on the fifth, the the root for the D form is on the fourth string.



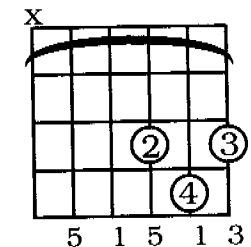
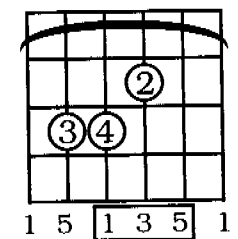
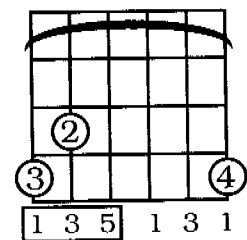
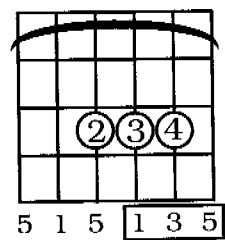
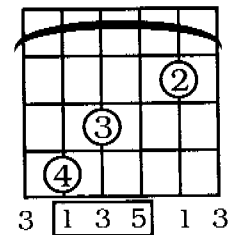
In music theory, the term **Inversion** is used to refer to changing the order of the notes in a chord so that a degree other than the root is the lowest note. The first inversion has the third in the bass. The second inversion has the fifth in the bass and so on. The term for an "uninverted" chord is "root position," since, on a piano, changing position and inverting the chord are inseparable. However the term *position* has a completely different meaning for the guitar so a different descriptive term is called for. The term we will adopt for an adjacent string 1 3 5 tone group is **nucleus**.



Nucleus Shown



Full Forms



Triads - Alterations

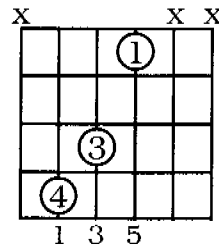
The left side graphs show the nuclear forms, so that the rest of the notes of the form are omitted. It might be hard to recognize them at first, but they are taken directly from the forms on the preceding page *but not necessarily the same positions*. Again, some forms can't be played open. When the chord forms are stripped down like this, it's easier to observe the process of alteration which produces the different chord types. This is the heart of the Fretboard Logic method of combining a music formula with a fretboard form to build the different types of chords.

The term **alteration** pertains to changing a degree other than the root, in half step increments. By raising or lowering (sharpening or flattening) the chord tones, you change the type of the chord. Each chord type's formula specifies the alterations. For example, the formula for a minor is 1 b3 5. That requires that you alter the 3rd by lowering it, meaning play the string one fret lower in pitch (toward the headstock). When you sharp a note, you move one fret closer to the guitar body.

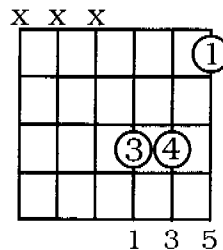
The graphs on the right are examples of alterations that produce the minor nuclear forms. When alterations are made, the fingering is adjusted in each case to allow for the most comfortable grip. The G Form Nucleus is on strings 6, 5, & 4; the C Form Nucleus is on 5, 4, & 3; the E Form Nucleus is on strings 4, 3, & 2; and the A Form Nucleus is on 3, 2, & 1. Again, there is no D form Nucleus.

By now you should be able to appreciate that attempts to grasp these relationships by assimilation from playing by ear, reading music or by rote memorization from ordinary chord books can lead to wasted time and bad craziness.

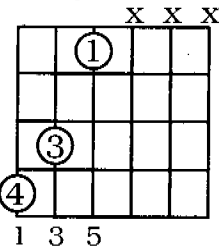
Nuclear Forms



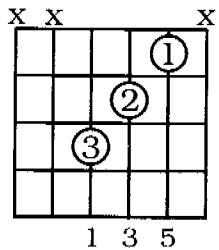
C Form Nucleus
Strings 5 4 & 3



A Form Nucleus
Strings 3 2 & 1

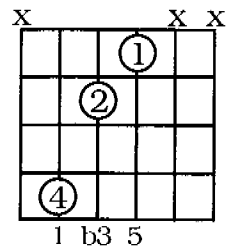


G Form Nucleus
Strings 6 5 & 4

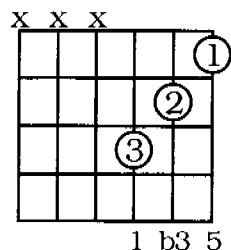


E Form Nucleus
Strings 4 3 & 2

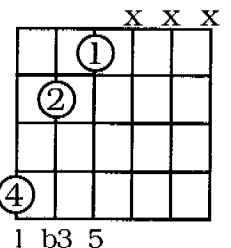
Alterations



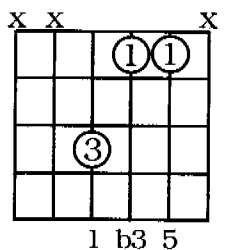
C Minor Form
Altered 3rd



A Minor Form
Altered 3rd



G Minor Form
Altered 3rd



E Minor Form
Altered 3rd

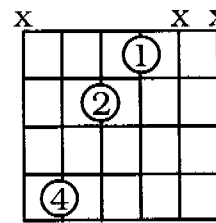
Triads - Minor

So far, in order to demonstrate the alterations that produce the various chord types, the forms were reduced to the bare minimum. In common practice, the basic chord forms are altered in their entirety to make the different chord types. For learning purposes, both ways are used throughout this section - the left column more for instruction, the right more for common usage. The formula for Minor chords is 1 b3 5. The common abbreviations are min. or m, as in A min. or Cm.

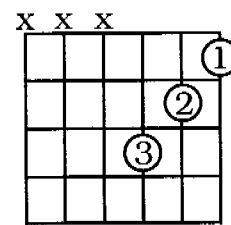
The left hand column illustrates the Minor Triads as nuclear forms with the basic degree relationship shown below. The right hand column shows full forms using a bar with the complete degree relationship given. If you want to play, say, an open A minor, you can use the barred form (without the bar) in the open position. The same goes for the G E and D forms.

In practical application, we must decide which of the available forms is appropriate. Some forms are going to be easy and some will seem like they are more trouble than they're worth. Having a grasp of the mechanics of chord building and a larger chord vocabulary means you are going to have more choices. You can always play through the five forms and then choose which sounds or works the best. Sooner or later you will see that there are other possible variations for the different chord types, especially if you don't mind stretching across the "borders" and borrowing tones from two adjacent forms, or using portions of basic forms. It doesn't make any sense to try to illustrate or explain every possible combination (unless of course, you're trying to sell a thick book). Instead, you should experiment with the basic ideas and come up with variations and usages on your own.

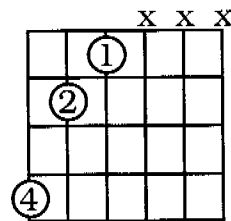
Nuclear Forms



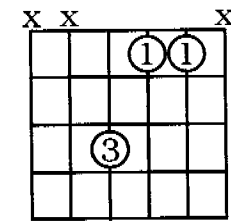
1 b3 5
C Minor Form
Nucleus



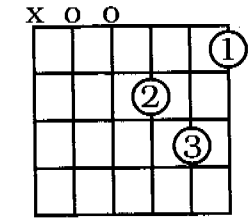
1 b3 5
A Minor Form
Nucleus



1 b3 5
G Minor Form
Nucleus

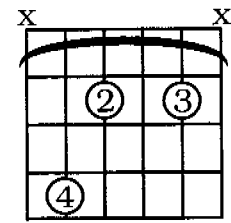


1 b3 5
E Minor Form
Nucleus

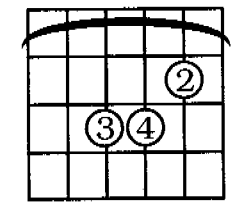


5 1 5 1 b3
D Minor Form
Open

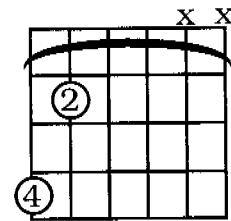
Full Forms



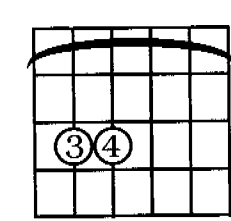
1 b3 5 1
C Minor Form
Barred



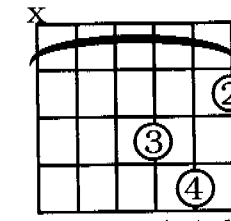
5 1 5 1 b3 5
A Minor Form
Barred



1 b3 5 1
G Minor Form
Barred



1 5 1 b3 5 1
E Minor Form
Barred



5 1 5 1 b3
D Minor Form
Barred

Triads - Augmented

The formula for Augmented Triads is 1 3 #5. The common abbreviations for augmented are aug., and +, as in G aug. or F+.

The Augmented chords are one of what are termed the **symmetrical** chords since the distance from each tone to the next is the same in half steps or frets. This is not easy to visualize on a fretboard, by the way. Each note is four frets (five frets inclusive), or a major third interval from the other. An **interval** is two notes specified by the distance between them in terms of half steps.

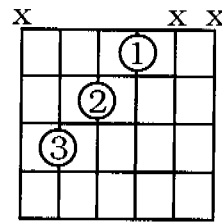
On most instruments, especially the piano, intervals are considered the primary sub-components of chords, but on the guitar, there is a good reason to think of the different types of chords in terms of how they relate to the pattern organization instead. Intervals per se will be explored in Volume III.

An Augmented chord's symmetry creates a similarity in the forms. Usually the forms are distinct from each other in terms of their shape, but symmetrical chords often look exactly alike, although they are derived from different basic forms on the guitar. An interesting result of their symmetry is that they can be identified by any note in the chord. For example the C aug. chord contains the notes C, E, and G#. It can also be correctly called E aug., G# aug. or even Ab aug. Another result of this is that there are actually only four (musically) different Augmented chords.

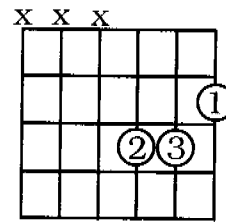
The left hand column shows the nuclear forms which were made by raising the fifth degree. Only the root, third, and sharped fifth degrees are given.

The right hand column shows the forms as either barred or extended forms with each degree given below.

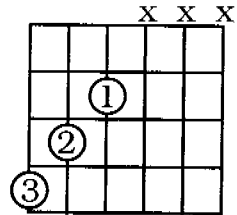
Nuclear Forms



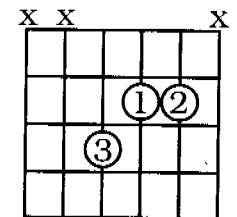
1 3 #5
C Aug. Form
Nucleus



1 3 #5
A Aug. Form
Nucleus

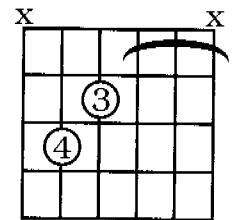


1 3 #5
G Aug. Form
Nucleus

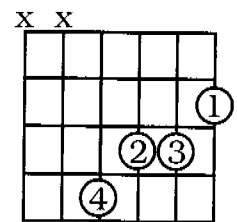


1 3 #5
E Aug. Form
Nucleus

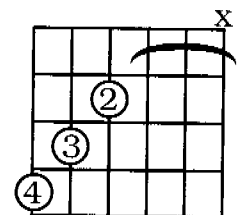
Full Forms



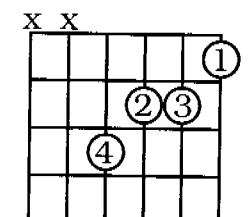
1 3 #5 1
C Aug. Form
Barred



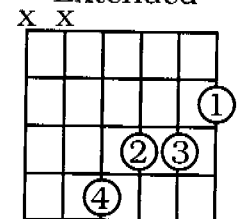
#5 1 3 #5
A Aug. Form
Extended



1 3 #5 1 3
G Aug. Form
Barred



1 3 #5 1
E Aug. Form
Extended



3 #5 1 3
D Aug. Form
Extended

Triads - Diminished

The formula for the Diminished Triads is 1 b3 b5. The abbreviations are dim. and °, as in C dim. or F°. Like the augmented chords, Diminished chords are symmetrical in that the distance from one note to the next is the same in terms of half steps. Each note is three frets (four inclusive), or a minor third interval from the other. Any note in the chord can correctly identify or name the chord, and this allows for only three completely different Diminished chords.

The left column illustrates the nuclear forms with root, flatted third, and flatted fifth shown.

The right side column shows the Diminished chords as barred forms. As before, the degrees are given for each string that has a chord tone.

With the Diminished chords, there is little practical difference between the triads and sevenths.

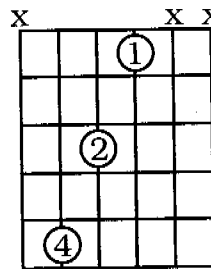


The main thing the public demands of a composer is that he be dead.

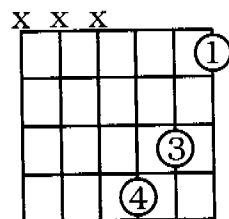
Arthur Hoenegger



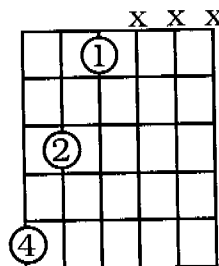
Nuclear Forms



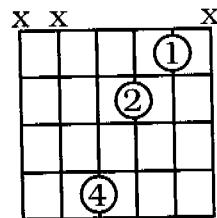
1 b3 b5
C Dim. Form
Nucleus



1 b3 b5
A Dim. Form
Nucleus

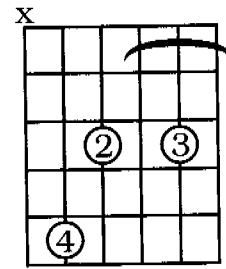


1 b3 b5
G Dim. Form
Nucleus

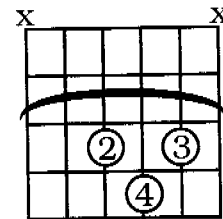


1 b3 b5
E Dim. Form
Nucleus

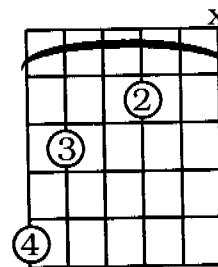
Full Forms



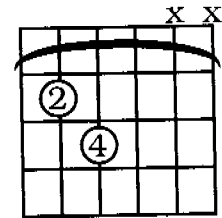
1 b3 b5 1 b3
C Dim. Form
Barred



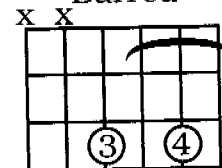
1 b5 1 b3
A Dim. Form
Barred



1 b3 b5 1 b3
G Dim. Form
Barred



1 b5 1 b3
E Dim. Form
Barred



b3 b5 1 b3
D Aug. Form

Major Seventh

Seventh Chords

The Seventh chords are four-note chords comprised of the 1st, 3rd, 5th, and 7th degrees of a key. As with the triads, alterations produce the different chord types. The Sevenths and their formulas are:

Major Seventh: 1 3 5 7

Minor Seventh: 1 b3 5 b7

Augmented Seventh: 1 3 #5 b7

Diminished Seventh: 1 b3 b5 bb7

Dominant Seventh: 1 3 5 b7

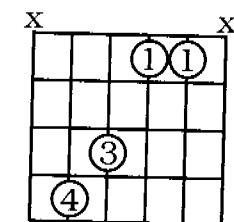
Minor Seventh Flat Five: 1 b3 b5 b7

The common abbreviations for Major Seventh are Maj. 7 and M7, as in E Maj. 7 and Eb M7. Here again, for the sake of clarity and consistency, the chord types will be described using the three letter abbreviations adding degrees and alterations when necessary.

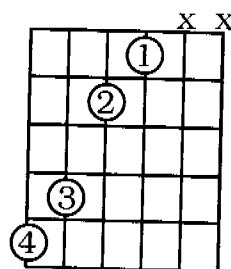
The diagrams to the right are the Major Sevenths. The left side column shows them uninverted. Only three Major Sevenths are able to be played as nuclear forms: C, G, and E. The C form nucleus is actually played with a three-string, or half bar.

The right column illustrates the barred forms with each degree shown. The G Maj. 7 form is not able to be played with a bar and so was omitted. As we progress into building the different Seventh chords, you'll realize that there will be fewer patterns that are easy to recognize as derived from a basic form. By now you should be familiar enough with the method of combining the music formula with the guitar form to be able to construct them yourself anyway. By learning to build them on your own, you won't have to stop what you're doing and reach for a book, chart, or gizmo, every time you are searching for just the right sound. This makes creative experimentation more accessible.

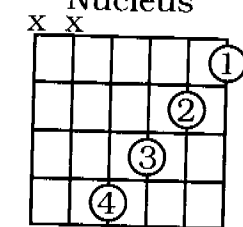
Nuclear Forms



1 3 5 7
C Maj. 7 Form
Nucleus

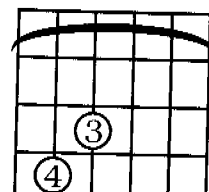


1 3 5 7
G Maj. 7 Form
Nucleus

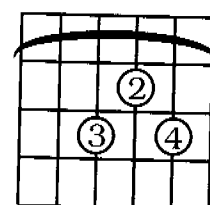


1 3 5 7
E Maj. 7 Form
Nucleus

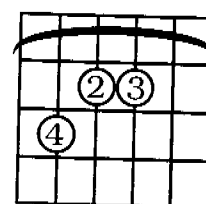
Full Forms



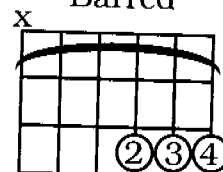
3 1 3 5 7 3
C Maj. 7 Form
Barred



5 1 5 7 3 5
A Maj. 7 Form
Barred



1 5 7 3 5 1
E Maj. 7 Form
Barred



5 1 5 7 3
D Maj. 7 Form
Barred

Sevenths - Minor Seventh

The formula for Minor Seventh chords is 1 b3 5 b7. The common abbreviations are min. 7 and m7.

The left side column shows the nuclear forms of all but the A min. 7 and the D min. 7 forms. As you can tell, some of these are a long stretch. The G min. 7 form seems almost unplayable but was included anyway for completeness.

The right side column illustrates the barred forms of the Minor Sevenths with each degree shown.

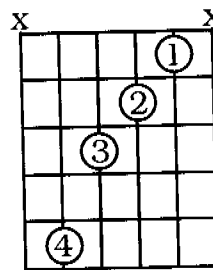
In order to acquire the b7 in the barred forms, a root is lowered two frets. Lowering it one fret makes a seventh degree, lowering two is then a flat seven.



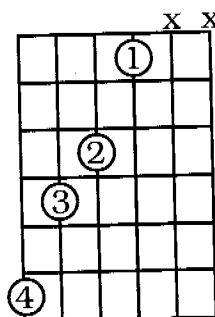
Triads are so named for having three separate tones. Seventh chords, on the other hand, are named by the addition of the seventh degree. This semantic distinction has prompted some music educators to refer to the sevenths as *quatrads* or *tetrads* to better follow the designation for three note chords (as opposed to, say, calling triads "fifths.") You mayhaps will encounter such terminological obfuscation and/or disparity in the field of music which you must henceforth eschew. The term for this is, uh, embarrassment. Just don't ask me what a tritone is.

?

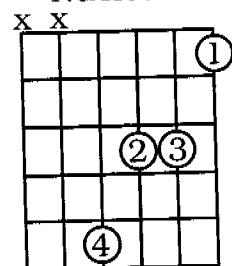
Nuclear Forms



1 b3 5 b7
C Min. 7 Form
Nucleus

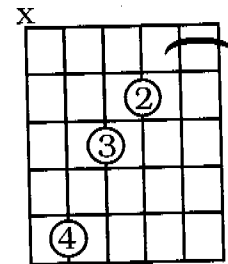


1 b3 5 b7
G Min. 7 Form
Nucleus

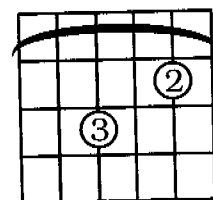


1 b3 5 b7
E Min. 7 Form
Nucleus

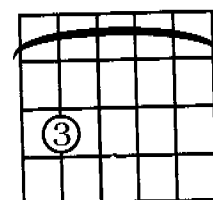
Full Forms



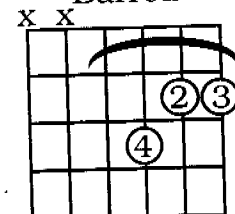
1 b3 5 b7 b3
C Min. 7 Form
Barred



5 1 5 b7 b3 5
A Min. 7 Form
Barred



1 5 b7 b3 5 1
E Min. 7 Form
Barred



1 5 b7 b3
D Min. 7 Form
Barred

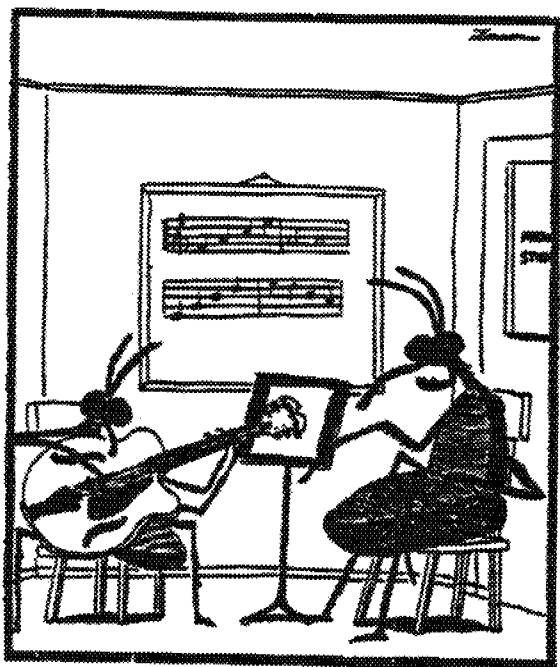
Sevenths - Augmented Seventh

The formula for the Augmented Seventh is 1 3 #5 b7. This is the same as adding a flattened seventh degree to an augmented triad. The common abbreviations are aug. 7 and +7, as in G# aug. 7 and Eb +7.

The column on the left illustrates the nucleus forms and again, only the C G and E forms are available. This is due to the greater number of strings required by the nucleus itself.

The column on the right shows the barred forms, and here only the A and D forms are possible.

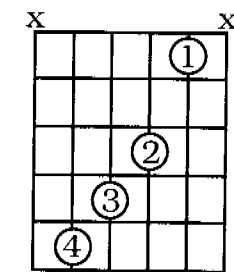
You've probably noticed by now that some things that are easy to understand are hard to play, and vice versa. For example, it is easy to see how to derive the G aug. 7th form, but it is a ridiculous reach, and won't get used much for that reason.



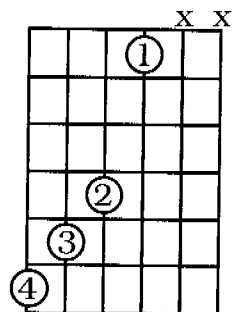
"No, no, no! What are you doing?...
Fifth leg! Fifth leg!"

Copyright 1987 The Far Side, Universal Press Syndicate.
Used with permission. All rights reserved.

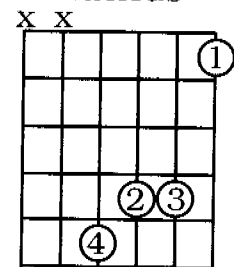
Nuclear Forms



1 3 #5 b7
C Aug. 7 Form
Nucleus

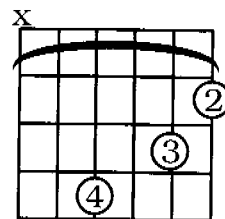


1 3 #5 b7
G Aug. 7 Form
Nucleus

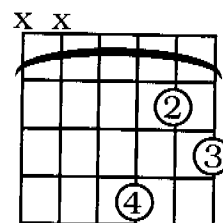


1 3 #5 b7
E Aug. 7 Form
Nucleus

Full Forms



1 #5 b7 3 #5
A Aug. 7 Form
Barred



1 #5 b7 3
D Min. 7 Form
Barred

Sevenths - Diminished Seventh

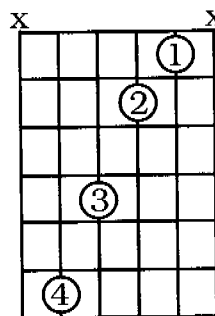
The formula for the Diminished Seventh chords is 1 b3 b5 bb7 (spoken double flat 7). The abbreviations are dim. 7 and °7. The double flat seventh degree might seem unusual at first but it is nothing more complicated than lowering a b7 degree one more fret. You will probably notice that it changes to the next note in the music alphabet. For example, an Abb is the same note as G **enharmonically**, (its tonal equivalent) but it is incorrect to call it G in this context.

The left side diagrams are some world class reaches that were included for the sake of completeness. It's no loss if you can't make these forms. Most people can only reach them above the 12th fret if at all.

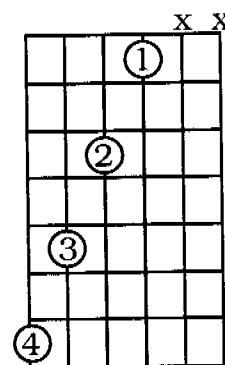
The full forms are easier to manage and will be no trouble to play. The Diminished Sevenths, like the Diminished Triads, are symmetrical. In fact, these Triads and Sevenths can be considered interchangeable since there is no functional difference between them in any musical context.

At this stage, you might be feeling like the study of chords on the guitar is getting, um, out of hand. Many of the nuclear forms are too long to reach plus the barred and extended chords don't necessarily follow the basic forms. Not only that, there's hardly any consistency changing from a nucleus to a barred form. Don't worry about it. Remember these are symmetrical chords. This method of learning chords from the basic forms combined with each chord's formula is designed to provide you with options and overall coherence. You get to decide what is right for each situation. As you go back over everything, the approach becomes more sensible. Besides, after the Diminished 7ths, the hardest part is over, so quit complaining. Geez.

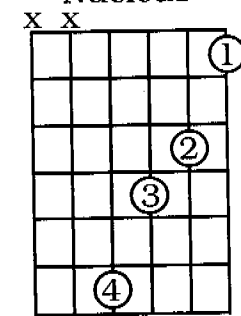
Nuclear Forms



1 b3 b5 bb7
C Dim. 7 Form
Nucleus

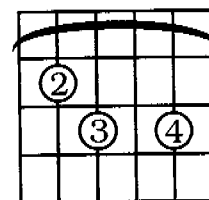


1 b3 b5 bb7
G Dim. 7 Form
Nucleus

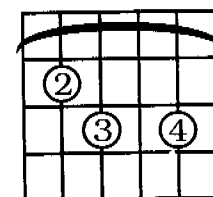


1 b3 b5 bb7
E Dim. 7 Form
Nucleus

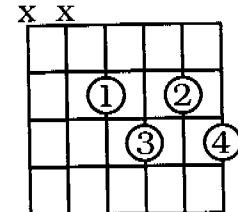
Full Forms



b5 1 b5 bb7 b3 b5
A Dim. 7 Form
Barred



1 b5 1 b3 bb7 1
E Dim. 7 Form
Barred



1 b5 bb7 b3
D Dim. 7 Form

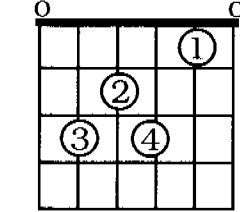
Sevenths - Dominant Seventh

The formula for Dominant Sevenths, which are also referred to as just Sevenths, is 1 3 5 b7. The abbreviations are dom. 7 and 7, as in A dom. 7 and C7.

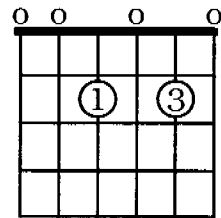
The Dominant Sevenths are easier to deal with than the Augmented or Diminished Sevenths, and one reason is that they follow the basic forms more closely. However, with the Dominant Seventh chords, the chord tones become completely scrambled, and nuclear forms are impossible. You may have noticed that it became more and more difficult to make the nuclear forms as we progressed.

The open and barred forms, are presented in the left and right columns. In two of the forms, the open C dom. 7 and the barred G dom. 7, a less important chord tone has been omitted. Eliminating unnecessary chord tones is an important concept in chord building, and applies later to what are commonly known as *altered* and *extended* chords. In the left hand column, the first form is the open C dom. 7. There is no 5th degree in the chord at all. It can be left out because it is the least important to the overall character of the chord. Leaving it out also allows the C form to be played comfortably. In the right column are either the barred or moveable versions of the same chords. You'll notice that the C dom. 7 form is not able to be barred and is played with the end strings muted or unplayed. The G dom. 7 form is different from the open form in that the flat seventh degree is played on the fourth string instead of the first. In many of these forms, the order of the notes or the chord's voicing can be changed. For example, in the A dom. 7th form, the b7 can also be played on the first string, third fret. Knowing where the degrees of each form are makes other things possible later.

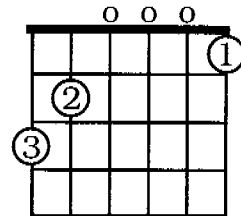
Open Pos. Forms



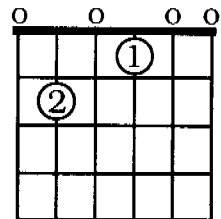
3 1 3 b7 1 3
C Dom. 7 Form
Open



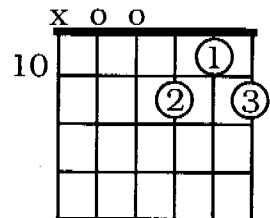
5 1 5 b7 3 5
A Dom. 7 Form
Open



1 3 5 1 3 b7
G Dom. 7 Form
Open

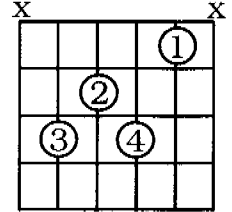


1 5 b7 3 5 1
E Dom. 7 Form
Open

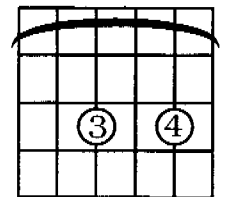


5 1 5 b7 3
D Dom. 7 Open

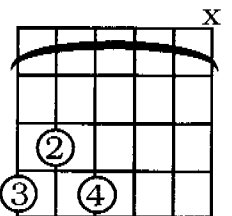
Full Forms



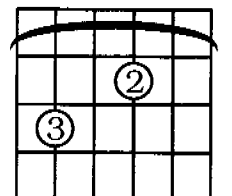
1 3 b7 1
C Dom. 7 Form
Moveable



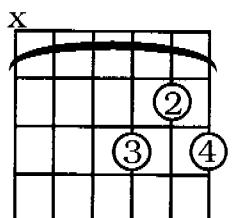
5 1 5 b7 3 5
A Dom. 7 Form
Barred



1 3 b7 1 3
G Dom. 7 Form
Barred



1 5 b7 3 5 1
E Dom. 7 Form
Barred



5 1 5 b7 3
D Dom. 7 Barred

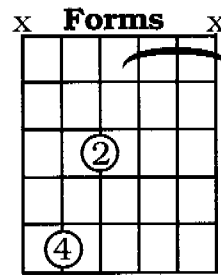
Sevenths - Minor Seventh Flat Five

The formula for the Minor Seventh Flat Five is 1 b3 b5 b7. The more common abbreviations are min.7 b5, or m7 b5. This chord was once called Half-Diminished but that term is seldom used anymore since it behaves in the context of a progression more like an altered Minor than a Diminished chord. The term for this "behavior" of chords is *function*, and is explored in detail in Vol. III in the section on Progressions. One of the goals of this approach is to free you from the tyranny of memorization so you can progress to understanding how things work together. That's when it starts to get a lot more interesting and productive. The left column shows the min.7 b5 chords as either nuclear or open forms. The C min.7 b5 and the E min.7 b5 forms are the only two that have a nucleus. The right hand side illustrates the full barred versions for the C, A and D forms. The D form employs a double bar using the index and third fingers.

Recap

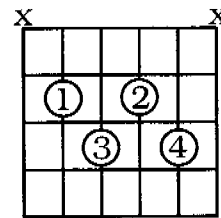
Chords can be grouped generally by the number of different notes they have, and specifically by their formulas. Triads have three notes and seventh chords have four. A formula is each chord type's unique fingerprint of altered degrees. There are four Triads and six Sevenths, and together, they comprise a large portion of what actually gets used in most kinds of music. In order to build the different types of chords on guitar, we apply the music formula to the fretboard form. On the fretboard, the C A G E or D form is altered by moving a fretting finger up or down to correspond to the chord's formula. When learning, the nuclear forms are easiest to grasp, but in actual usage, the full or barred forms tend to get used the most.

Open & Nuclear

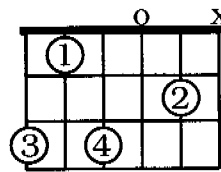


1 b3 b5 b7
C Min. 7 b5 Form

Nucleus

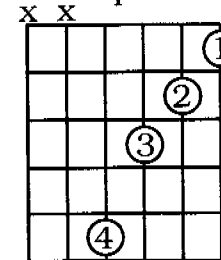


1 b5 b7 b3
A Min. 7 b5 Form
(Moveable)



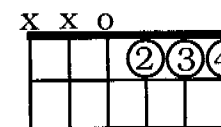
1 b3 b7 1 b5
G Min. 7 b5 Form

Open



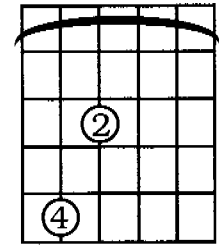
1 b3 b5 b7
E Min. 7 b5 Form

Nucleus



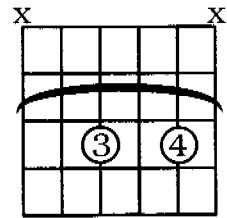
1 b5 b7 b3
D Min. 7 b5 Form
Open

Barred Forms



b3 1 b3 b5 b7 b3
C Min. 7 b5 Form

Barred



1 b5 b7 b3
A Min. 7 b5 Form
Barred



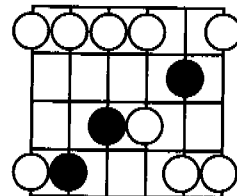
1 b5 b7 b3
D Min. 7 b5 Form
Barred

In Volume I, the smallest Scale type, the Pentatonic, was introduced and illustrated as a pattern extension or continuation of the basic chord forms, as opposed to a completely independent grouping. The Diatonic Scales are seven note groups which can also be viewed as extensions or continuations of both the Pentatonic scales and the basic chord forms. Contrast the difference in the meaning of the terms "pattern extension" and "finger extension." They're not the same.

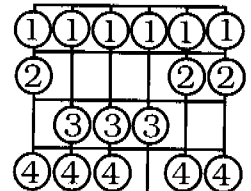
The left hand column is a review of the five basic scale forms, showing the integral chord forms darkened. All the Pentatonic scale forms except the D form are able to be played within the standard four finger - four fret position. The D form requires a finger extension in that a finger is extended beyond that four fret area.

The right hand column illustrates the five Diatonic scale forms. Now the A, G and D forms span more than four frets. In some cases, the fingerings given for the Diatonic scale forms differ completely from pentatonics, and sometimes the patterns just seem to have notes added. Learn the diatonic patterns by playing them in different positions on the neck and count the frets to name the Scale. It is important to also play them in CAGED Sequence as you did with the pentatonics. The Diatonics are somewhat more difficult than the Pentatonics, and may take a little longer to learn.

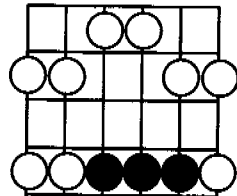
Again, please don't confuse these fretboard patterns with *modes*. This is a common error even among teachers and guitar method authors. The mode is a musical (tonal) orientation, and the fretboard form is a guitar (pattern) orientation. A mode cannot be determined until certain constraints are imposed. This is discussed further starting on page 24.



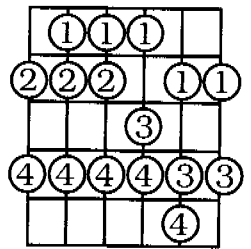
C Scale Form Pentatonic



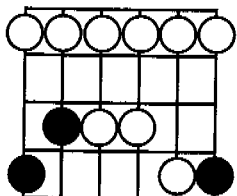
C Scale Form Diatonic



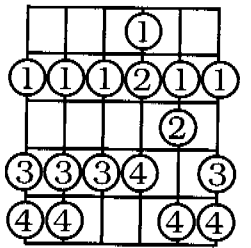
A Scale Form Pentatonic



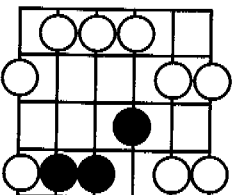
A Scale Form Diatonic



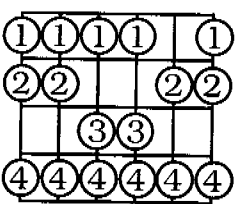
G Scale Form Pentatonic



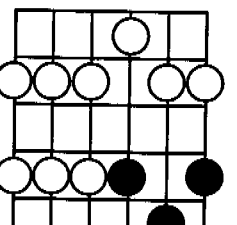
G Scale Form Diatonic



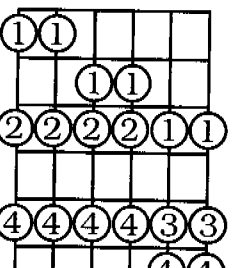
E Scale Form Pentatonic



E Scale Form Diatonic



D Scale Form Pentatonic



D Scale Form Diatonic

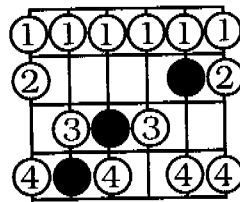
Scales - Diatonic

In the right hand column, the pentatonic scale forms have been darkened to expose the additional notes that make the diatonics, usually one per string. As presented, each Diatonic Scale Form will give access to a little over two **octaves**, or spans of eight notes, across the width of the neck. As with the pentatonics, these scale forms will later be connected together into more symmetrical groupings known as lead patterns to allow continuous access along the length of the neck as well as across it. This will enable the guitarist to span three or even four octaves on guitars with enough access.

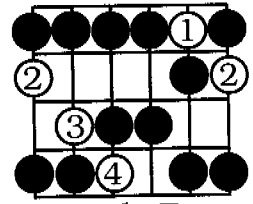
The ability to visualize the available notes in any part of the fretboard is a primary part of being able to function in the various playing situations you will encounter. Knowing the forms is one part. Learning how they are used in combination with other elements of music is what will get you really stoked.



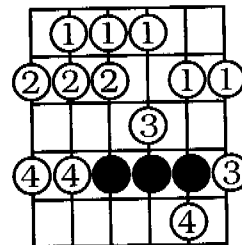
More embarrassment. The term Diatonic means "two-toned" as in dialogue. This pertains to the two types of motion - half step and whole step - from one scale degree to the next. It has also been defined "dia" as in diameter - meaning *through* the tones. These derivations should be contrasted with the meaning of pentatonic as five-toned. This particular inconsistency has caused some people to refer to the Diatonic scales as **Heptatonic** or seven-toned, to better follow the more straight forward term Pentatonic.



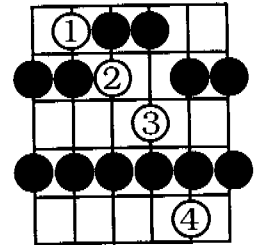
C Scale Form
Diatonic



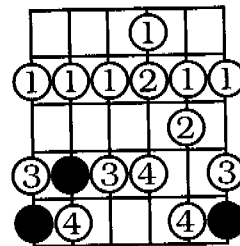
C Scale Form
Diatonic



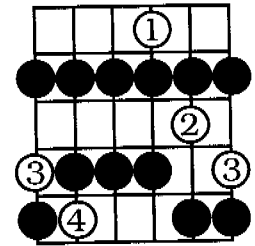
A Scale Form
Diatonic



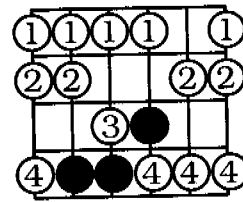
A Scale Form
Diatonic



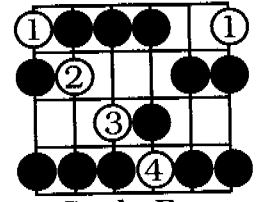
G Scale Form
Diatonic



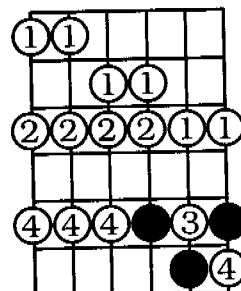
G Scale Form
Diatonic



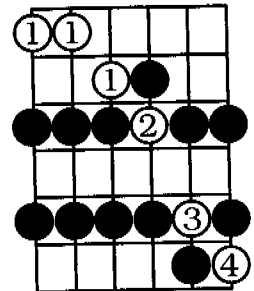
E Scale Form
Diatonic



E Scale Form
Diatonic



D Scale Form
Diatonic

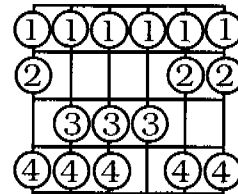


D Scale Form
Diatonic

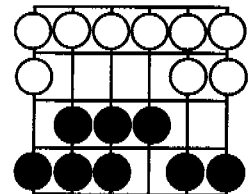
Scales - Diatonic

In a number of cases, there were various alternatives to choose from when deciding which notes should belong to which string in the scale forms. For example, the G form diatonic has a note on the third string that might just as easily be played on the fourth string with a pinky extension. There is also the question of which notes to include at the beginning and end of the scale form itself. The choices illustrated were made so as to best follow the same organization as the pentatonics, where the end of one scale form is the beginning of the next. This method helps the guitarist in the direction of visualizing the continuity of the forms along the length of the fretboard.

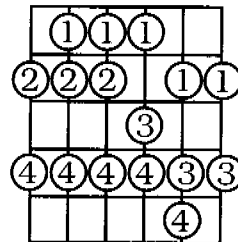
Learning the forms *across* the neck enables us to get to where we can also see the patterns *along* the neck. One benefit of this approach is that it can help the player avoid the habit of always playing the same scale form from the same degree on the same string resulting in a "scaley" and predictable type of sound when improvising. Guitarists, for some reason, tend to get hooked on the patterns themselves, and may have a harder time seeing the differences between practicing scales and true improvisation than other instrumentalists. The differences are taken up in an introductory fashion in the section on lead playing and in greater detail in Video I and Volume III. The illustrations in the right hand column show that the end of one form is the same as the beginning of the next. In other words, each two adjacent forms have a row of notes in common. The left side graphs were included for the purpose of visual comparison. Practice every form until you can play each one by description in any position. For example, E form Diatonic, 3rd position, or D form Diatonic, 9th position, and so on.



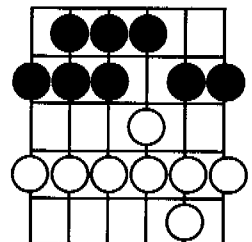
C Scale Form
Diatonic



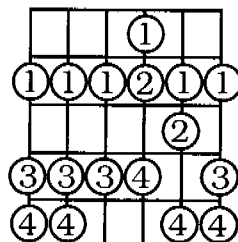
C Scale Form
Diatonic



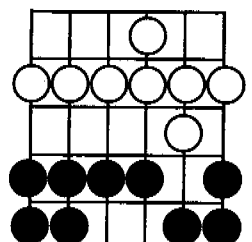
A Scale Form
Diatonic



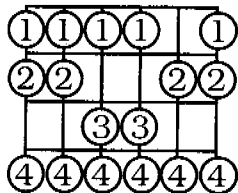
A Scale Form
Diatonic



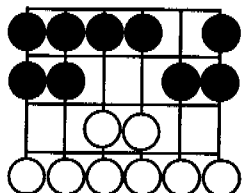
G Scale Form
Diatonic



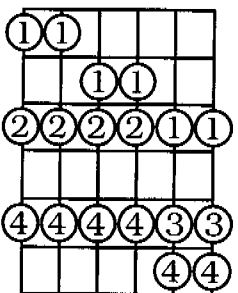
G Scale Form
Diatonic



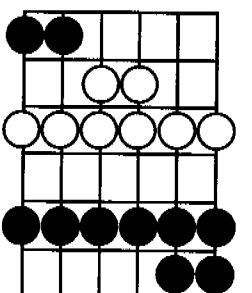
E Scale Form
Diatonic



E Scale Form
Diatonic

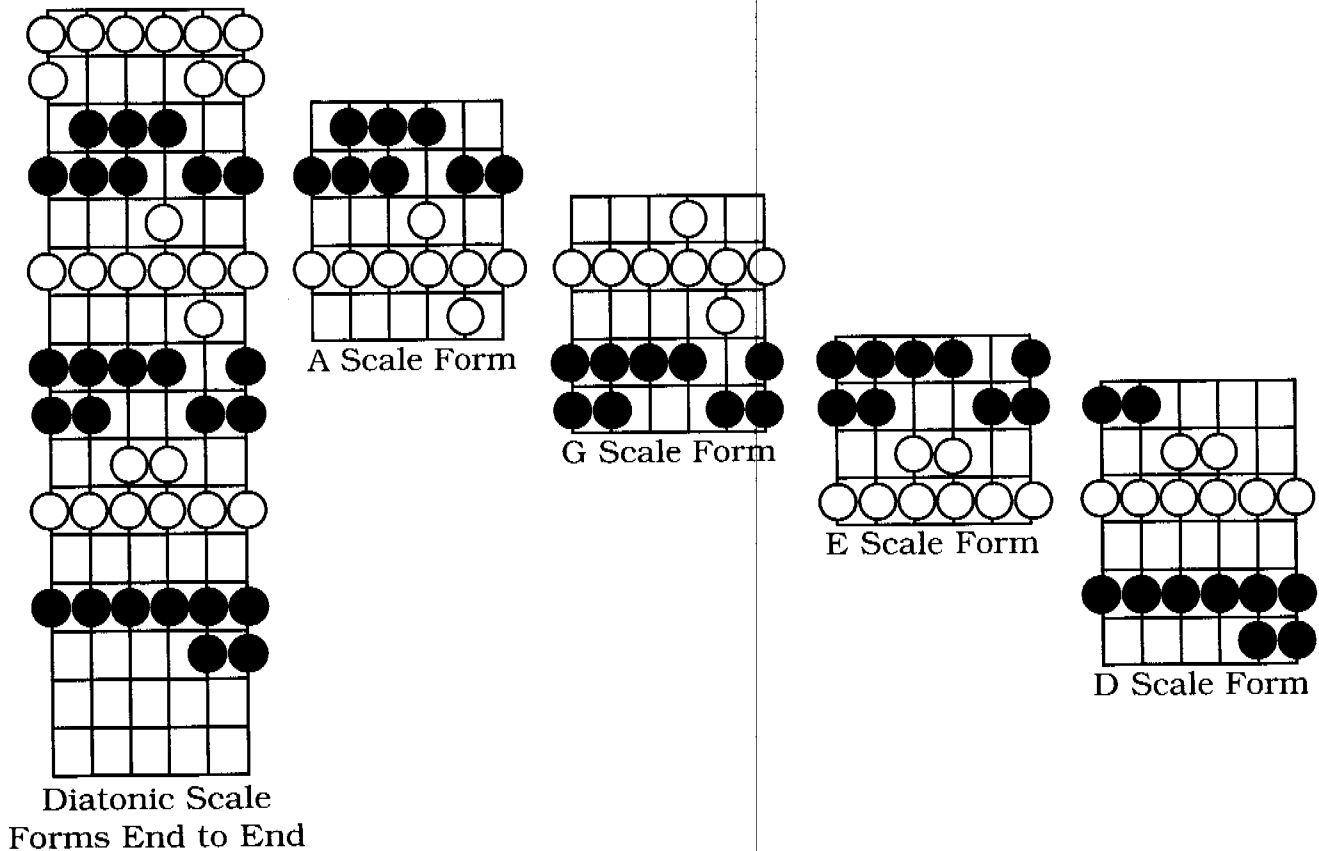


D Scale Form
Diatonic



D Scale Form
Diatonic

The CAGED Sequence - Diatonics



When joined end to end, the Diatonic Scale Forms create a contiguous pattern of notes along the fretboard as depicted in the leftmost graph. As with the pentatonics, this view is intended as a bridge to enable you to visualize the scale forms and lead patterns as parts of the same whole.

In order for the player to make use of the entire range of these notes, they must again be reorganized to permit fluid motion from one position to another. This enables us to use a variety of techniques and combinations that would not otherwise be possible and also allows for greater access to the fretboard.

The next step is to divide the notes into more playable groupings based on the most regular or symmetrical groupings.

Since more notes are available with the diatonic scales than with the pentatonics, there are also more combinations possible.

There's some good news in the technical department, also. The diatonics provide a physical advantage to the guitarist in the way of notes per string. With respect to velocity and picking technique, what was relatively difficult to negotiate because of changing strings after only two notes with the pentatonic scale forms, will now be somewhat easier since the diatonics generally have three notes per string.



Diatonic Lead Patterns

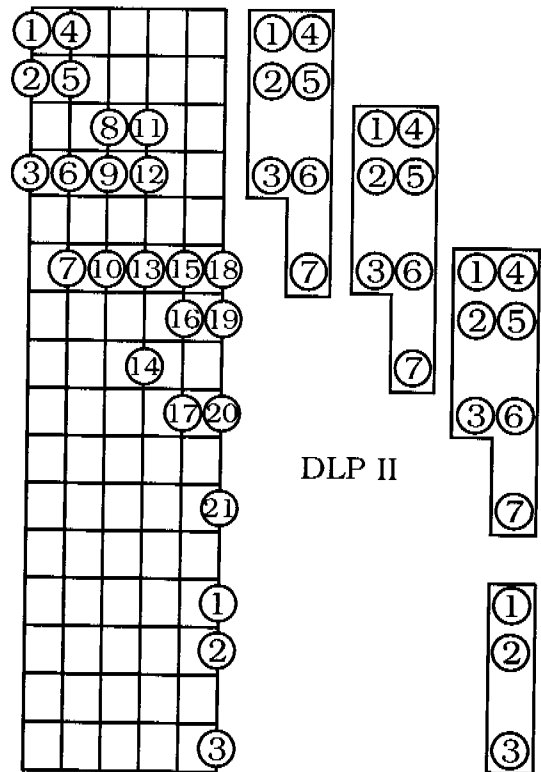
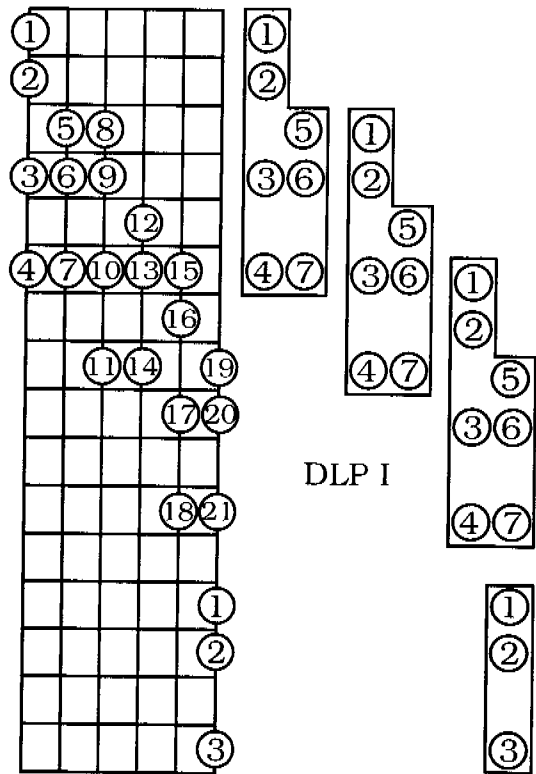
The two basic Diatonic Lead Patterns are shown in the left hand column. On the right side, each has been divided into smaller sub-groupings. The sub-groups illustrate the three repeating seven note patterns of which each lead pattern is comprised. To extend the series to three complete octaves, three more notes have been added to each showing where the pattern repeats again, provided your fretboard has the real estate.

With the DLPs, and in order to access the third octave, a new technique will also be introduced to enable the move from one position to another on the same string. We will designate it a *crossover* since the fretting hand completely crosses over its previous position. This is detailed further on the next page along with the fingering recommendations.

In developing each Diatonic Lead Pattern and its variations, we are looking for the maximum symmetry in our choice of note groupings. The ones that are easiest to play and remember will get the most use. Diatonic Lead Patterns I and II correspond with the Pentatonic Lead Patterns, naturally. Where the pentatonics have five notes in each sub-group, the Diatonics have seven. When DLP I and II are combined, as with the pentatonics, they account for every note in the five basic Diatonic Scale Forms.

The numbers in the left hand graphs are the notes in order ascending, and the numbers in the right column show the seven notes of each sub-group.

 The scale forms are *irregular* string patterns in a single position. The lead patterns are *regular* string patterns in many positions. 



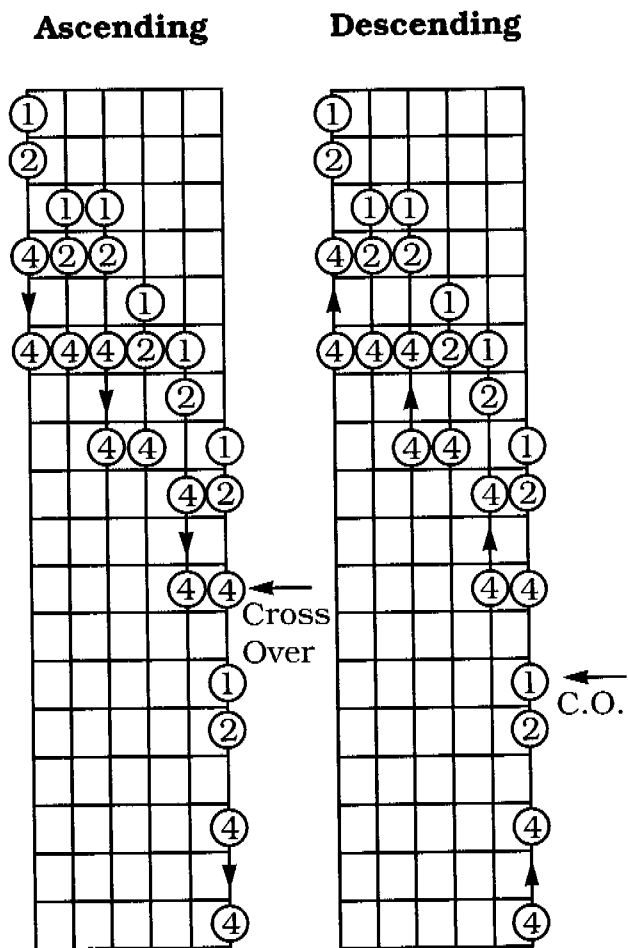
Lead Patterns - DLP I

These graphs illustrate Diatonic Lead Pattern I with appropriate fingerings and position changes as indicated by the numbers and arrows. Since only the index, middle, and pinky fingers of the fretting hand are used, certain combinations are more logical than others. The graph on the left side is DLP I ascending, and the one on the right is the descending combinations.

As with the pentatonics, when changing positions, you slide your finger (without fretting) along the string to the next position, play the note, and then continue on the next string. Lead patterns rely upon smooth position changes to work, without which, you become limited to the range of notes within one position, i.e., scale forms.

Now might be a good time to remember that the way the notes are grouped on the fretboard as patterns is not necessarily going to be conducive to good musicianship. In fact, sometimes they can get in the way of our musical sensibilities. The ways phrases are constructed in a rhythmic and melodic sense are separate issues from these fundamental fretboard patterns. The patterns provide us with a structured way to get around the fretboard - that's all.

To access the guitar's three octave range, at some point we will have to change positions on the same string. This **crossover** technique means you take your hand completely off the fretboard and continue on to the next note on the same string. It takes practice, but this is another technique which is essential to gaining access to the entire fretboard as a whole. The alternative is to face countless possible combinations of finger patterns and position changes. The nature of the lead patterns suggests that the crossovers take place on the first string.



Lead Patterns - DLP II

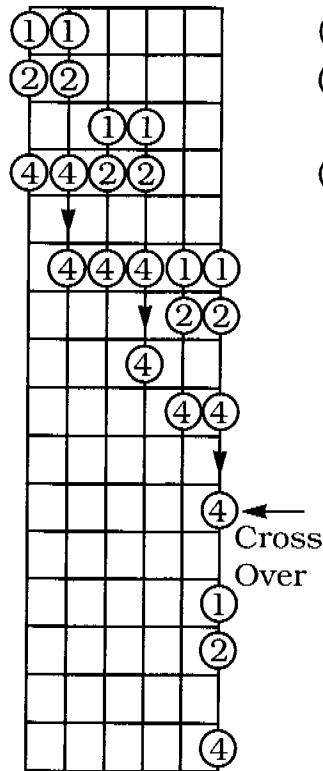
The fingerings and position changes for Diatonic Lead Pattern II are illustrated in the graphs on the right.

For learning purposes and overall coherence, the important thing is that the sub-groupings be symmetrical and repeatable.

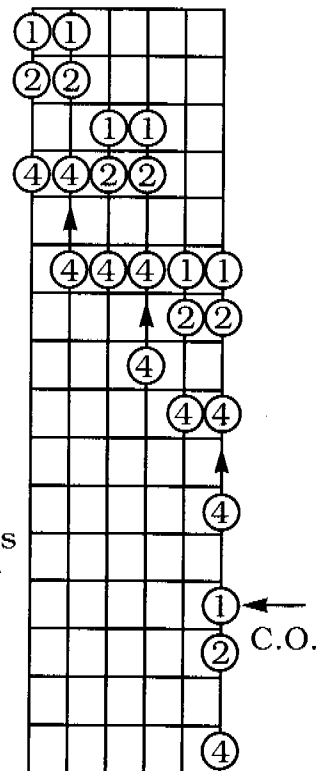
The elegance of the tuning system can here again be realized by seeing that the basic string to position relationship of the sub-groups for DLP I ascending, is the opposite for DLP II ascending, and vice versa. In each sub-group of DLP I ascending, you play three notes, then change positions, then change strings and play three more notes. In DLP II ascending, the order is reversed. This time, you play three notes, change strings, play three more notes, then change positions. In other words, given a pattern and direction, you'll change strings first, then positions, or the other way around. It will be easier to appreciate this if you already saw it with the smaller PLPs in Volume I.

As with Diatonic Lead Pattern I, a crossover on the first string is necessary to access a full three octaves worth of notes. Try to practice the DLPs slowly enough at first so the crossover notes are blended in with the rest of the scale tones and don't stand out.

Ascending



Descending



Only sick music makes
money today.

Nietzche - in 1888



Lead Patterns - DLP I Variation

If you have an experimental nature, you will soon find that there are a variety of ways to get from one end of the fretboard to the other diatonically. But without some kind of strategy you are likely to encounter some frustration along the way.

There are a couple of obstacles both the fretboard and these types of patterns pose to the process of trial and error. The irregular placement of the marker dots and the smaller interval on the second and third string pair, make traversing the fretboard consistently inconsistent.

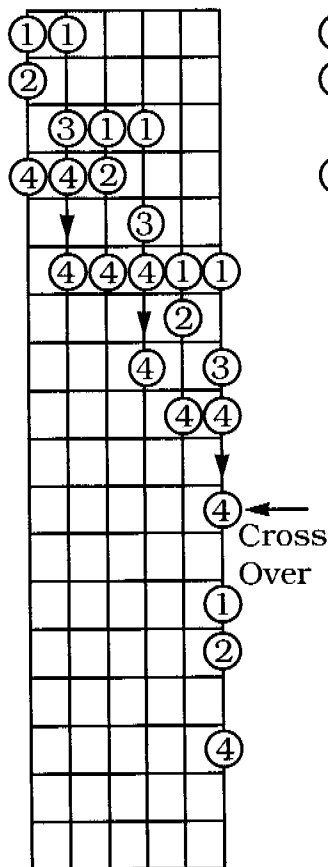
In addition, a significant difference between the lead patterns and the scale forms is that with the scale forms, you are only moving across the fretboard in one position and must only deal with usually one or two markers at a time. With the lead patterns, you are moving across the fretboard both widthwise and lengthwise. The number of these "helpful" dots becomes multiplied posing something of a visual challenge. Plus, every time you move across the G-B string pair, you have to compensate for the smaller interval with a position shift of one fret. For these reasons, the variations presented are limited and have been selected for their overall coherence and regularity.

Of the numerous possibilities, only two variations are being presented based upon their relative symmetry and easiness to learn. One for DLP I and one for DLP II.

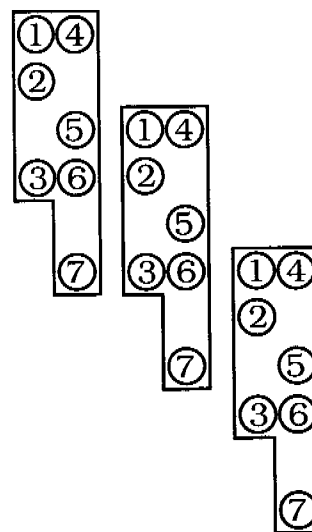
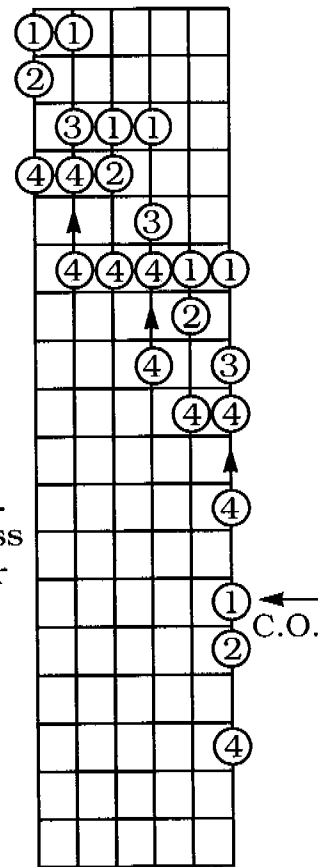
The variation of DLP I on the right makes use of the third fretting finger. Beyond that, the position changes, fingering, and crossovers are the same as the preceding ones.

If you want to experiment, try position shifts and changing the fingerings. Sometimes it is easier to make the position shift on the first finger when descending.

Ascending



Descending

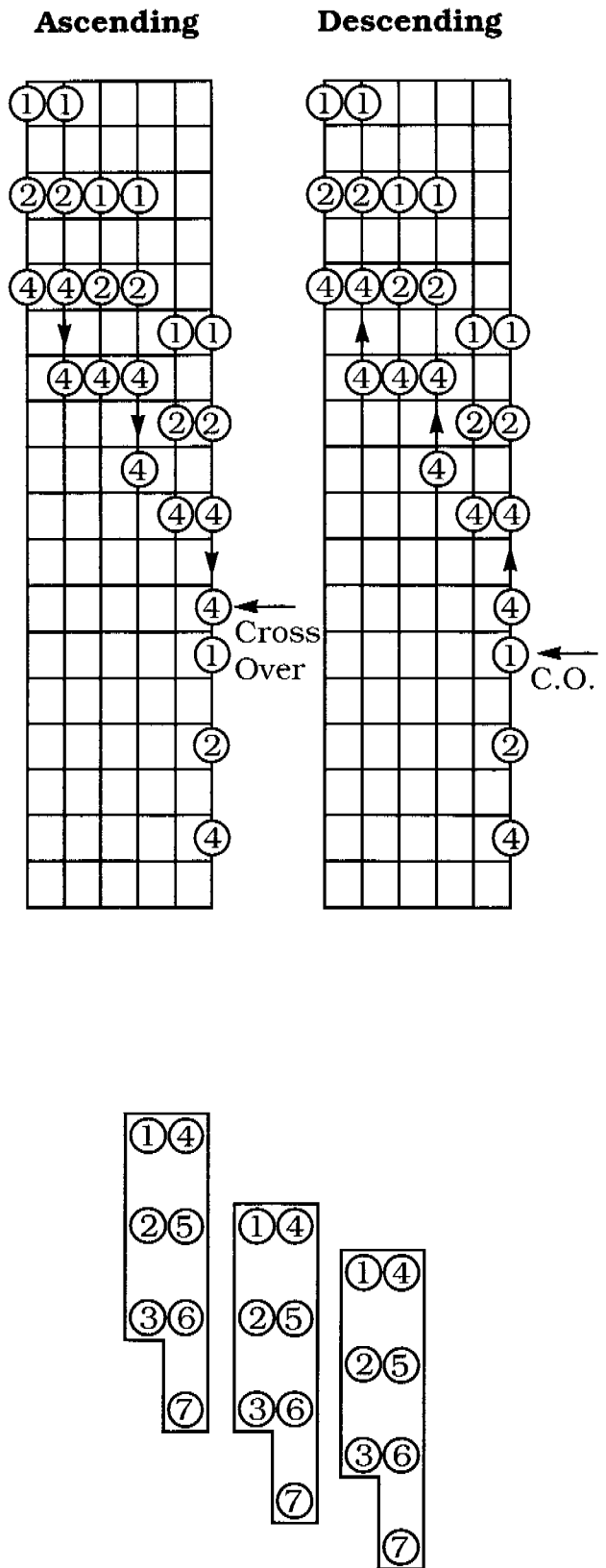


Lead Patterns - DLP II Variation

A nice variation of DLP II is illustrated on the right. An interesting aspect of this variation is that its sub-groups consist entirely of whole-steps. It is one of the most symmetrical forms possible on the guitar.

The top left graph shows the variation ascending, again using the fourth finger as the guide for the position changes. The right side is the same descending. It is also possible to substitute the third finger for the second in this pattern. As with the scale forms, the tonality or modality of the lead patterns is dependent on factors other than the fretboard form. A scale's tonal orientation, major, minor, etc., is normally going to be determined by the beginning and ending notes and the intervals in between them. What is presented so far has been the guitaristic orientation. **The notes you choose to begin and end on are independent of the pattern.** In other words, if you start the DLP II variation on the right, and play in eight note groupings, it will come out musically as a major scale or tonal orientation. If you opt to play the same pattern from the second degree, then the tonal orientation becomes Dorian, while the pattern remains the same. The same applies for the more musically coherent series of notes termed a phrase or melody. A melody is more complex and interesting than a simple scale, and its tonality or modality is equally independent of the fretboard pattern. You can play the same melody using a variety of scale forms or lead patterns.

The conflict between what is meant by mode on the guitar stems at least in part to the fact that most patterns played ascending and descending begin and end on the sixth string. I guess that alone, in the minds of a some folks, is enough to determine the tonal orientation.



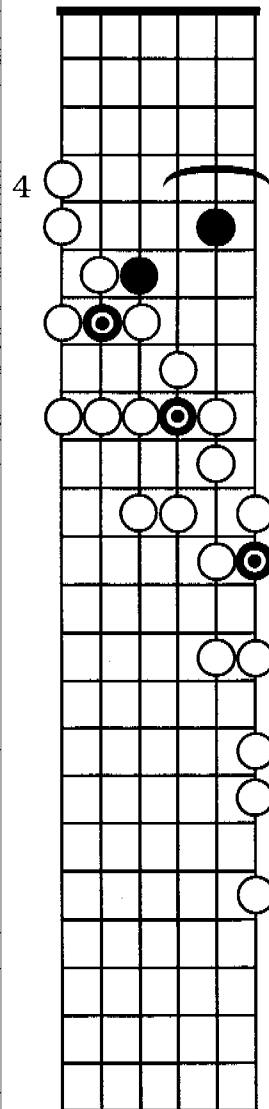
Naming the Diatonic Lead Patterns

The method of naming the Diatonic Lead Patterns is slightly different from the one used for the pentatonics. The Diatonics are still referenced by specific chord forms, but DLP I is more directly located with respect to the reference form. This makes naming the scale one step easier than with the pentatonics.

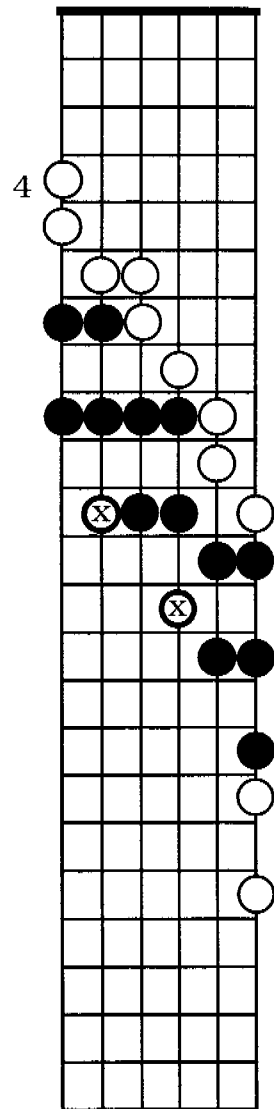
As before, DLP I is referenced with respect to the C chord form as shaded in the left side graph. A partial bar symbol has been included as a visual aid. If you count up the C form to the fourth position properly, you will get the E Chord. Therefore Diatonic Lead Pattern 1 from the same position is also in the key of E when phrased appropriately. For this purpose, tone centers, have been provided. The targets represent the tone centers (or roots) for the Major tonal orientation.

In the right side graph, Pentatonic Lead Pattern I has been darkened to illustrate where it is in relation to the Diatonic Lead Pattern.

The notes with an "X" belong to the Pentatonic Lead Pattern, but they are not shared with the Diatonic due to pattern inconsistencies. Since DLP I is referenced by the C form chord, again it will be designated as the C Diatonic Group.



The C Diatonic Group



The C Group Diatonic

Reference Form Darkened

PLP I Darkened



I don't know anything about music.
In my line, you don't have to.

Elvis Presley

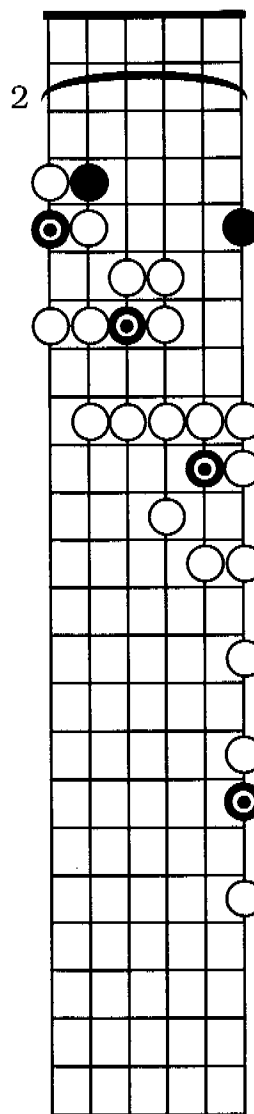


Naming the Diatonic Lead Patterns

Diatonic Lead Pattern II is referenced by the G chord form as shaded in the left side graph. However, as with the pentatonics, the reference form is offset from the bar position. In contrast with DLP I, the pattern does not actually start at the bar where the chord form derives its position for naming purposes. If you count up a G chord form to the second position, you will arrive at the A chord. Therefore DLP II from the same reference area, which is the 4th position, is also in the key of A. The targets provide the **tonics**, or tone centers, for the Major mode.

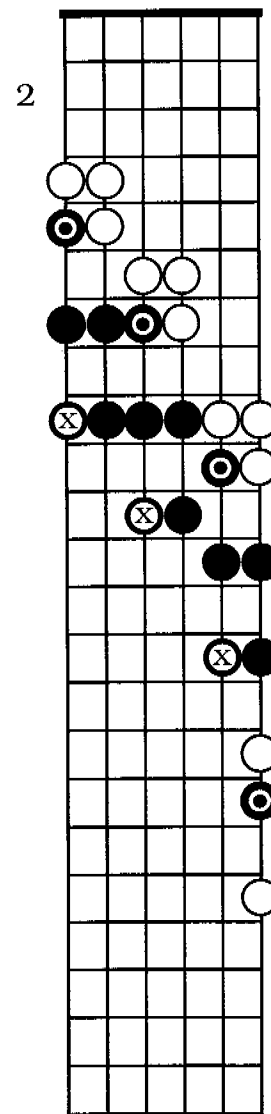
Remember that when playing scales, it is customary to start and end on a tonic. When phrasing or producing melodies, you don't have to start or end on the tonic necessarily, but a phrase or melody must be constructed in a way such that it has tonal orientation. Sometimes this means starting it on one tone center, and ending on another to better follow the progression of chords. What this implies is a kind of tonal "target," better known as a **target note**. In actual usage, the fretboard patterns become little more than a vehicle for reliably finding your way around the guitar neck while you develop combinations of rhythmic, melodic, articulative, iterative and other more musical elements. Or, perhaps just search for target notes to arrive at on time. This process of constructing different types of phrases from various *components* is taken up in detail in Vol. III.

In the right side graph, PLP II has been darkened to illustrate where it is in relation to the Diatonic Lead Pattern. Again, the "x" notes belong to the pentatonic form, but they are not used in the same position in the Diatonic because of inconsistencies in the patterns. Since DLP 2 is referenced by the G chord form, it will, of course, be designated as the G (Diatonic) Group.



The G Diatonic Group

Reference Form Darkened



The G Group Diatonic

PLP II Darkened

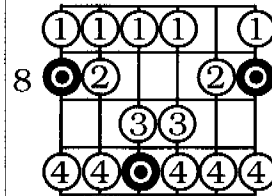
With the introduction of Modes, we move further away from thinking in terms of fretboard forms, and toward specific tonal orientations. The shape and symmetry of the pattern is now subordinate to the formula and target notes. Given the seven notes of the Diatonic Scale, there are seven Modes. The two most common are Major (Ionian) and Minor (Aeolian). As with chords, the Major Mode is considered a reference, and the other modes' formulas are discussed in terms of how they relate to it. The formula is more theoretical, and the targets are more practical. The formula for the Major Mode is 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7, or no alterations, of a key.

The guitar's tuning provides two fundamentally different approaches to playing in the different Modes: scale forms and lead patterns. In order to play in a Mode, one or the other must be oriented (targeted) toward a particular degree. That tone center combined with the form and position produces an identifiable Mode *relative to the patterns*.

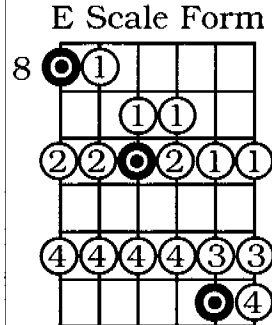
The following are examples of Modes *relative to a key*. In C Major, C is the tonic and the key signature has no accidentals. The notes in C Major are C D E F G A & B. In A (relative) Minor, the tonic is A, and the key signature is also no sharps or flats. The notes in A Minor are A B C D E F & G. In D Dorian, the tone center is D, and the key signature is the same. The notes in D Dorian are D E F G A B & C. In each case, the notes are all the same but the tone center, and the intervals between each note changes, therefore, the Mode changes. At the right are examples of the Major Mode in the key of C played through both the scale forms and lead patterns. The idea at this point is to play from and toward the target notes, which are illustrated appropriately.

Scale Forms

Lead Patterns

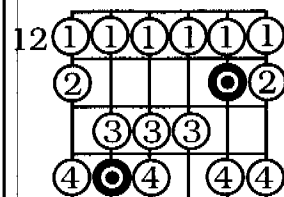


C Major



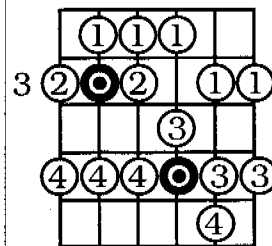
C Major

D Scale Form



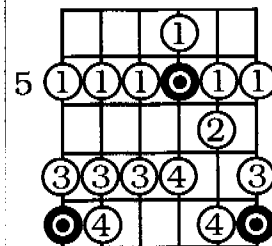
C Major

C Scale Form



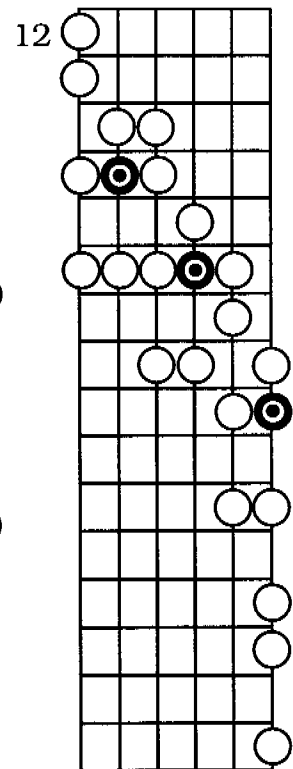
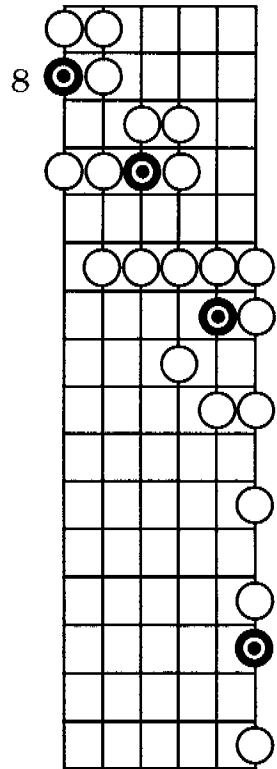
C Major

A Scale Form



C Major

G Scale Form



Natural Minor

The next most common mode is the Natural Minor with its variations Harmonic and Melodic Minor.

Relative to Major, the formula for Natural Minor is 1, 2, b3, 4, 5, b6, & b7 (or just b3 b6 & b7). With Major as the reference point, Minor can be considered the sixth of seven Modes. As with the Majors, you can play a Minor Scale using any of the scale forms or lead patterns if you start and end on the correct target note. In other words, what makes it a Minor, or any other Mode, is less a matter of which guitar pattern you use, than how you use it. This is a fairly important concept, and one that tends to distinguish Fretboard Logic from many (perhaps most) other guitar methods.

The Major and Minor Modes are so closely related in practical application, that the corresponding one is termed **relative**. For G Major, E Minor is termed the Relative Minor and vice versa. Further material on keys and key signatures has been reserved for later and takes up an entire section.

For the examples on the right, we'll use a new key to go along with the new Mode. Starting with G Major as our reference, the tonic is G, and the key signature is F#. The notes in G Major would be G A B C D E and F#. In E (relative) Minor, the tonic is E and the key signature is the same as G Major (F#). That makes the notes in E Minor, E F# G A B C and D as shown in the examples on the right. *Don't forget that the target is degree 1, the next note is degree 2, etc.*

The conventions for ascending and descending the lead patterns vary, but what makes the most sense is to consistently use a whole step for the position change. There are a number of variations for the Natural Minor lead patterns, and a little experimentation will produce them.

Scale Forms	Lead Patterns
<p>12</p> <p>E Minor G Scale Form</p>	
<p>3</p> <p>E Minor E Scale Form</p>	
<p>3</p> <p>E Minor D Scale Form</p>	
<p>7</p> <p>E Minor C Scale Form</p>	
<p>10</p> <p>E Minor A Scale Form</p>	

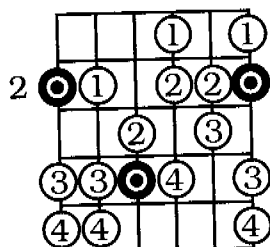
Harmonic Minor

The Harmonic Minor is one of the more exotic sounding variations. It has a character that is interpreted by many as a classical or neo-classical type of sound.

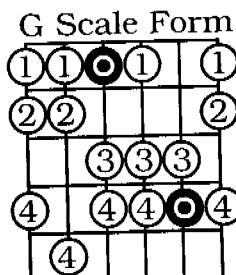
Relative to Major, the formula for Harmonic Minor is 1 2 b3 4 5 b6 & 7 (b3 & b6). However, relative to Natural Minor, we've "raised" the 7th degree. This is not unlike ending a Minor Scale on a Major note, or *interval*, to be more precise. This apparent change in tonality is what gives Harmonic Minor its spice. The raised seventh also produces advantages when building chords upon the scale tones which is also discussed in the last book in a section on chords in progression. The examples on the right are in the key of F# (Harmonic) Minor. The relative key of A Major has a key signature of F# C# and G# with the A as tonic. F# Natural Minor has the same key signature, F# C# and G# with a tone center of F#. From there, the Harmonic Minor additionally raises the seventh degree from E, to E# (not F). So the notes in F# Harmonic Minor are F# G# A B C# D and E#. On the right, each of the scale forms has been altered so that the pattern reflects this #7. In some cases the change is enough so it makes it difficult to tell the scale form from which it was derived. From a technical standpoint, the scale forms are fairly irregular and therefore somewhat more difficult than average. Also, with the D and C forms, there is a certain amount of pattern overlap, which is unavoidable. Both lead patterns have an interesting and elegant symmetry of alternating fours and threes on adjacent string pairs. Again, variations can be derived with a little experimentation. The ones presented have been chosen either for their coherence within the context of the fretboard's pattern organization, or because of their inherent symmetry.

Scale Forms

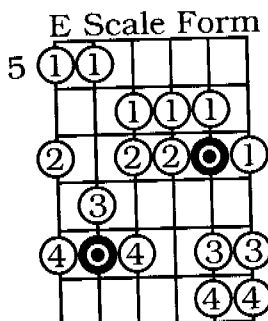
Lead Patterns



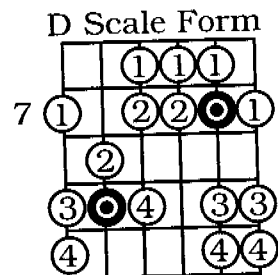
F# Harmonic Min.



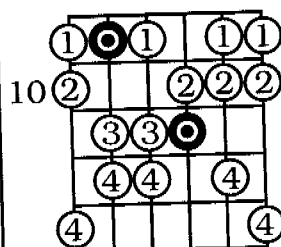
F# Harmonic Min.



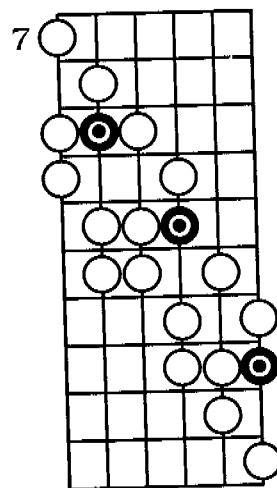
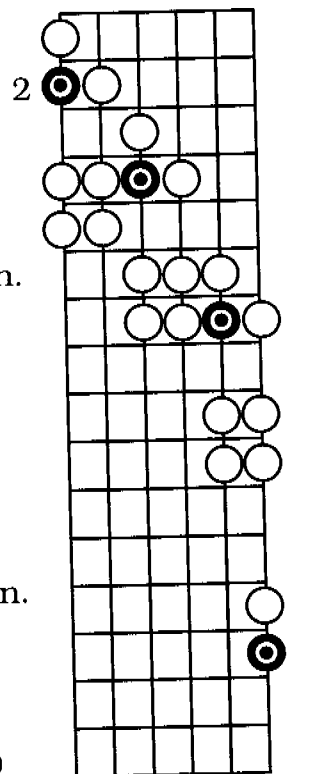
F# Harmonic Min.



C Scale Form



A Scale Form



Melodic Minor

The first thing to know about Melodic Minor is that it is played differently ascending and descending. Relative to the Natural Minor, it is altered during ascent, but unaltered in descent. Relative to Major, its formula ascending is 1 2 b3 4 5 6 & 7 (or b3 only). Relative to Natural Minor, both the sixth and seventh degrees are raised. This makes it even more Major-influenced than the Harmonic Minor, since now the last three notes are part of a Major tonal orientation. It is this dual nature that makes the Melodic Minor so rich and yet versatile. Descending, it is exactly the same as Natural Minor. For that reason, only the ascending part with the altered scale tones is illustrated. The descending Natural Minor forms will be the same as on page 69. In order to make the connection between the ascending and descending forms, the ones on the right have been rendered in the same key as previously, E Minor.

Because of the alterations and the difference in the descending tones, the Melodic Minor might be considered slightly more difficult than the average Scale or Mode. So if you're having trouble with them, you might limit yourself to just a couple of the easier forms at first. The lead patterns are nicely symmetrical as were the Harmonic Minors, and should not present too much in the way of difficulty except for the reaches.

Major and Minor tonal orientations dominate western, or twelve-toned, music. Major is generally interpreted as happy or lighthearted, and Minor is usually interpreted as sad, serious or somber. To the western ear, other Modes may sound exotic, foreign, or even somewhat off center tonally, depending on the listener. The result is that most of us tend to hear other Modes as either (more or less) Major or Minor sounding.

	Scale Forms	Lead Patterns
12	<p>E Mel. Minor G Scale Form</p>	
3	<p>E Mel. Minor E Scale Form</p>	
3	<p>E Mel. Minor D Scale Form</p>	
7	<p>C Scale Form</p>	
9	<p>A Scale Form</p>	

Dorian

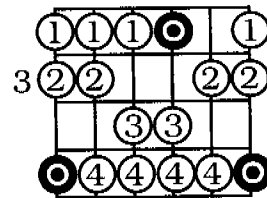
In academic discussions on the subject, the Major and Minor tonal orientations should not be deemed to be precisely *modal* in nature. The terms Modal and Modes have come to refer to tonal orientations other than Major and Minor, which are deemed *tonalities*. In other words, Dorian, Phrygian, Lydian, Mixolydian and Locrian are usually what is meant when someone refers to a Mode or a Modal sound.

The formula for Dorian, again, relative to Major, is 1 2 b3 4 5 6 & b7 (or b3 and b7). Relative to minor, the formula for the Dorian mode is #6.

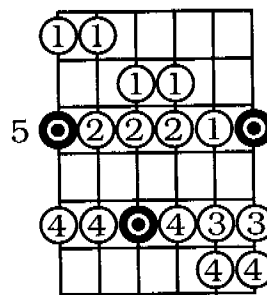
Using Major as a reference, or degree number one, we consider a Mode to be one where the tonal orientation is toward a degree other than the first. That being the case, given a Major key, the tonal orientation of the Dorian mode will be toward degree number two; the tonal orientation of the Phrygian mode will be toward degree number three; Lydian will be targeted toward degree number four; Mixolydian is oriented toward degree number five; Aeolian (natural minor) is oriented degree number six; and the Locrian mode will be targeted toward degree number seven.

As discussed previously, counting up a scale form to a position produces the name of a scale and key with respect to Major. For example, if you count the E Diatonic scale form to the third position (don't forget the second finger reference) you have the key of G - which was assumed to be Major. By playing the same scale form starting from the second degree, or the fourth finger, and back toward the same degree, you have changed the tonal orientation and Mode to A Dorian you still have the same scale form, but now a different Mode and target note. This is what is illustrated on the right.

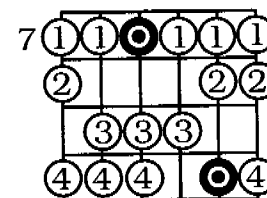
Scale Forms



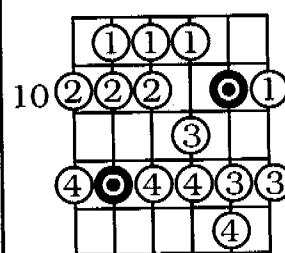
A Dorian
E Scale Form



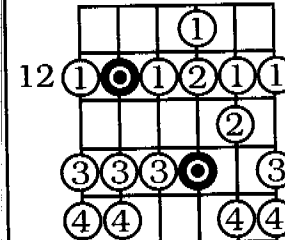
A Dorian
D Scale Form



A Dorian
C Scale Form

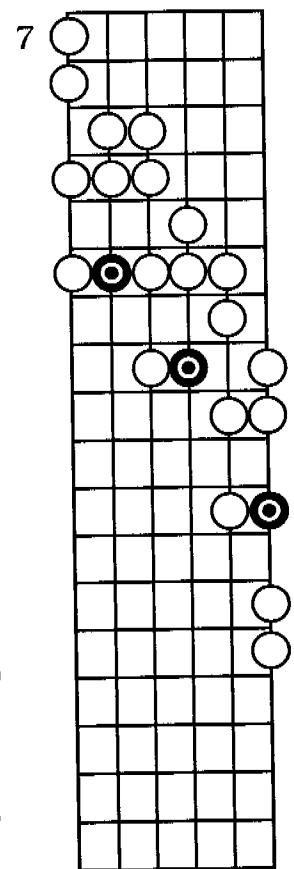
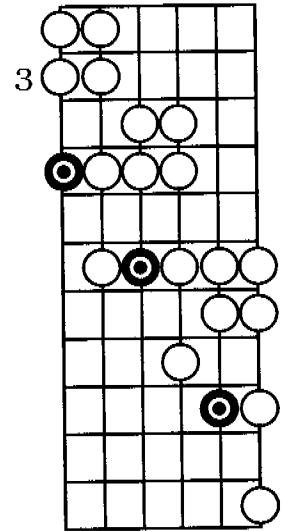


A Dorian
A Scale Form



A Dorian
G Scale Form

Lead Patterns



Phrygian

The formula for Phrygian, relative to Major is 1 b2 b3 4 5 b6 & b7. Keeping the same key signature, F#, and moving the tonic up one more degree produces the B Phrygian mode. As stated before, the modes tend to line up as either more Major or minor sounding. I suspect the last interval, (leading tone to tonic) has most impact on this determination. If the last interval is a whole step, then the mode comes across as minor sounding. If the interval is a half step, then it sounds more Major.

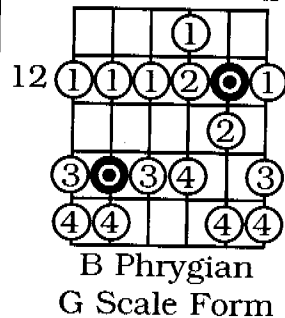
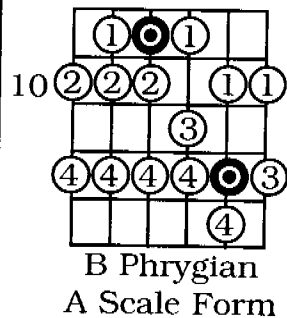
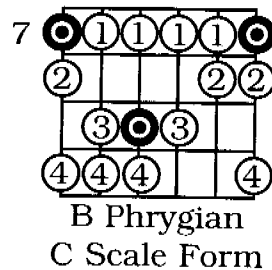
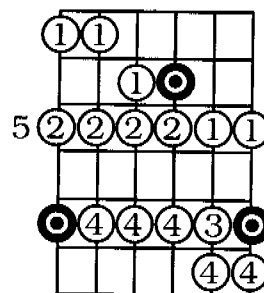
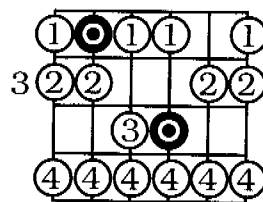
The previous mode, Dorian, is the easiest to classify this way. It has a whole step for the final interval, and a distinctly minor flavor.

The Phrygian mode also sports the whole step interval prior to tonic, and has a minor feel to it. It is interesting to note a melodic/harmonic contrast in practical application. For example, the so-called "Spanish Minor" gets its effect from playing a Phrygian melodic modality against a Major harmonic backing chord. (Yes, that is an oversimplification.) But it is not unlike the so-called "Blues Minor" effect of playing pentatonic minor with a b5 against Major one, four and five chords in a key, but, as usual, we're getting ahead of ourselves.

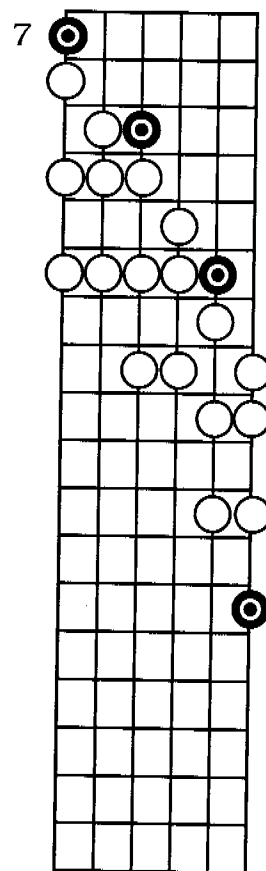
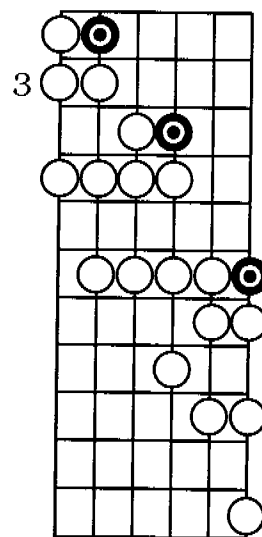
The Lydian mode has the half step interval, and so comes across as Major-sounding. Mixolydian seems like melodic minor in reverse. It starts out with a definite major sound but ends up with the whole step interval, so draw your own conclusions.

Locrian has the whole step interval at the end, and so comes off sounding minor. To demonstrate this effect, play a Major chord and then one of the Major sounding modes. Then try a minor chord, with Dorian. Reverse the order and you'll see they don't fit as well.

Scale Forms




Lead Patterns




Lydian

The formula for Lydian is 1 2 3 #4 5 6 & 7 (or just #4). Again, retaining the same key signature and moving the tonic up one more degree produces the C Lydian mode. This time you may have noticed that the next degree was only a half step from the last, but it is the fourth degree with respect to G Major nevertheless.

Because they are often used interchangeably in other method books, the meanings of the terms Scale and Mode should be contrasted. A Scale is a succession of notes of a Key, as opposed to a Chord which is the simultaneous sounding of the notes of a key. A Mode differs from a Scale in that a tonal orientation is specified instead of assumed. Think of it like this. Someone says "The song's in G." Without further explanation, we would all assume G with a Major tonality. However, if the key was G and the tonal orientation was stipulated as Dorian, then it is considered to be a Mode as opposed to just a Scale (as in series of notes played) or Key (as in group of notes specified by a key signature).

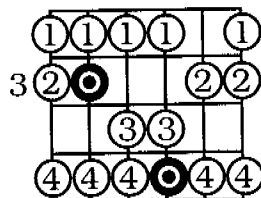


One of the difficult questions we all have to come to grips with as players, is whether we should work first to enhance our strengths, or to remedy our weaknesses.

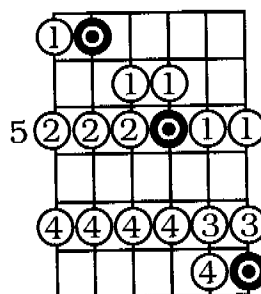


Scale Forms

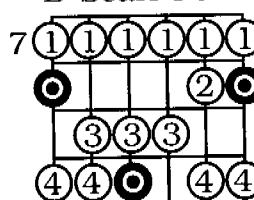
Lead Patterns



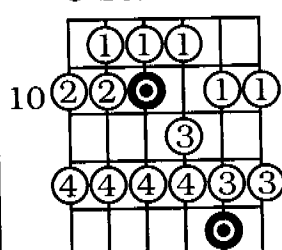
C Lydian
E Scale Form



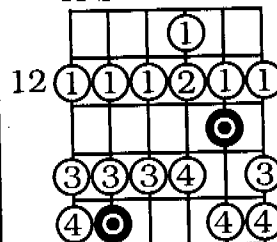
C Lydian
D Scale Form



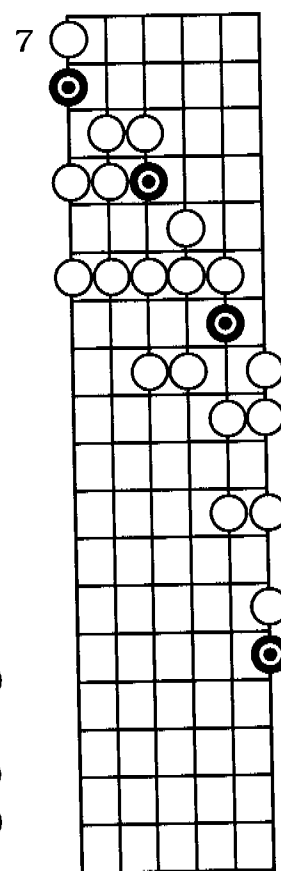
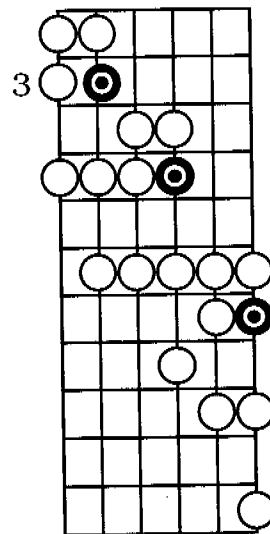
C Lydian
C Scale Form



C Lydian
A Scale Form



C Lydian
G Scale Form



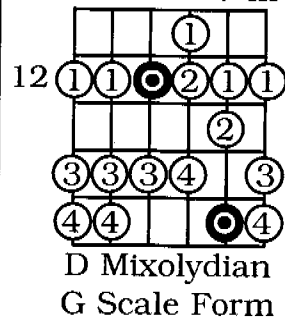
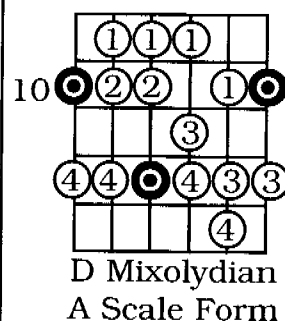
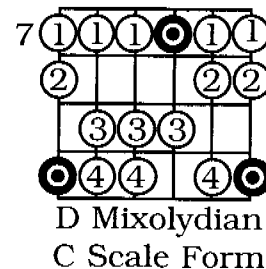
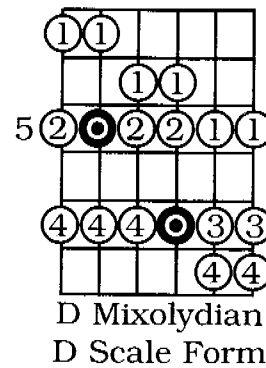
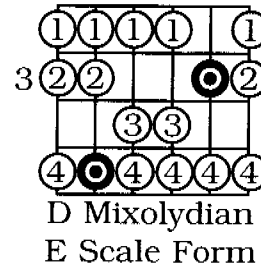
Mixolydian

The formula for Mixolydian is 1 2 3 4 5 6 & b7 (or just b7). Playing with a key signature of F# and a tonal orientation of the fifth degree relative to Major produces the Mixolydian Mode. The ambiguous nature of this Mode makes it useful as a contrast to Major. The ending of the Pachelbel Canon in D has an interesting example of Mixolydian working in a Major environment. It makes you sit up and take notice.

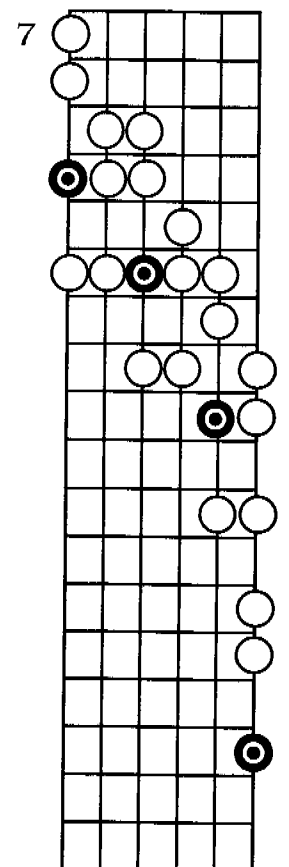
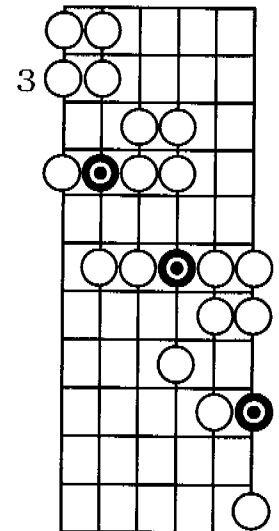
The question asked most when students become able to function with the scale forms and lead patterns is "What scale form goes with what chord form(s)?" This question, although natural to ask, is a gross oversimplification. It is something like asking what colors go well together on a canvas to make a painting. It is truly a matter of style and taste.

An obvious response would be to say "Play Major sounding melodic material in a Major key, and minor against minor. It isn't wrong, it just avoids dealing with more complex and interesting issues. It is brought up right now, because most students, when they get to this point in the proceedings, want to cut to the chase and start tearing up the fretboard as a lead player. And don't let me or anyone else stop you, either. But my job is to keep some kind of coherence and structure to each book, so the subject of lead playing is reserved for Volume III - Applications. At least part of the problem is that the question begs for some conditions, such as a stylistic determination. In this volume it would be premature to start associating with artists or styles and would no doubt lessen the focus. Suffice it to say that if you experiment a little, you will find that many things that work. But to really answer the question without putting too fine a point on it, if it sounds right, then it is right.

Scale Forms



Lead Patterns



Locrian

Aeolian was discussed under the name Minor, so the next and last Mode is Locrian. The formula is 1 b2 b3 4 b5 b6 & b7. As you might imagine, through the centuries and around the world, different Modalities have gone in and out of fashion. The Locrian tonal orientation is one that doesn't seem to get used much nowadays, but that can change. Again, you can access each degree of a mode by simply counting from one note to the next within a form starting with the target note.

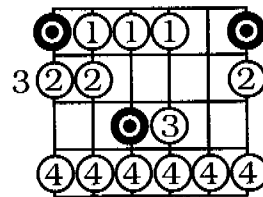
Recap

As patterns, the Diatonic Scale Forms extend the Pentatonics just as they were pattern extensions of the five basic chord forms. The Diatonic Scale Forms can also be combined and divided into symmetric halves to produce Lead Patterns as before. The Diatonic Lead Patterns are referenced for naming by the C and G chord forms, just as with the Pentatonics.

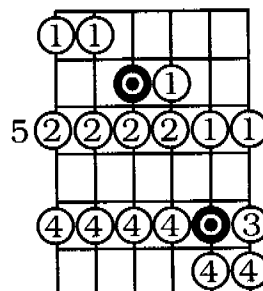
In contrast to this patternistic orientation, the scales can have specific notes targeted so that a tonal orientation overrides the fretboard forms in terms of precedence. This tonal orientation is usually termed *tonality* when referring to Major or Minor or *modality* when referring to Dorian, Phrygian, Lydian, Mixolydian or Locrian. Natural minor has two common variations called Harmonic and Melodic Minor. Although the formulas for the modes are relative to Major as a rule, the formulas for Harmonic and Melodic minor are often referenced relative to natural minor.

As with the different styles of music, the way Modes are perceived by the listener varies with each person. Depending on the ear of the beholder, each Mode will have a more or less Major or Minor sound.

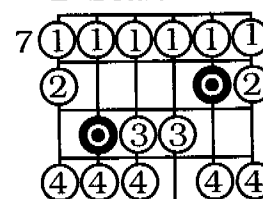
Scale Forms



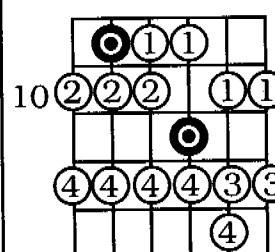
F# Locrian
E Scale Form



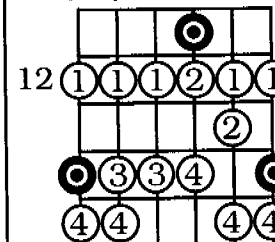
F# Locrian
D Scale Form



F# Locrian
C Scale Form

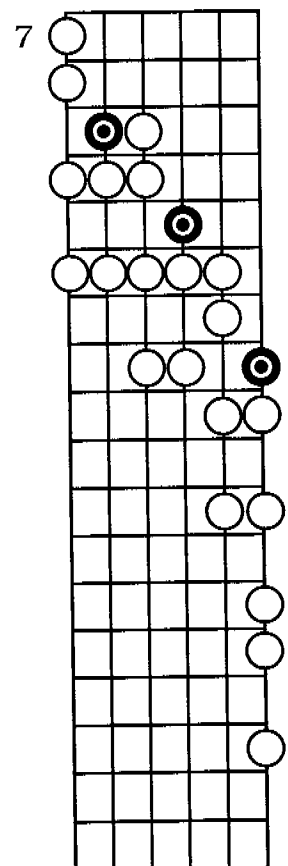
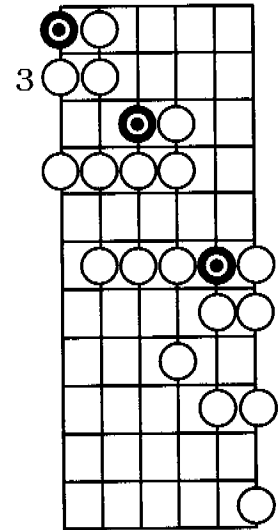


F# Locrian
A Scale Form



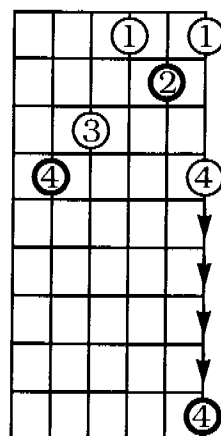
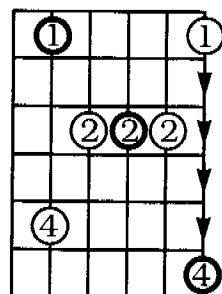
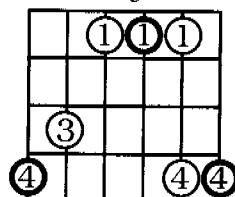
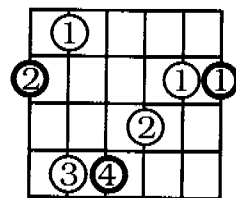
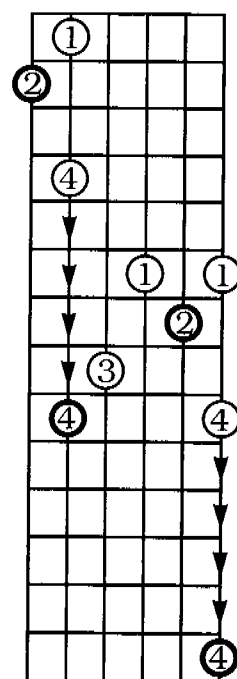
F# Locrian
G Scale Form

Lead Patterns



Arpeggios are hybrid tone groupings. They can be thought of as chords that are played like scales, one note after another. Their formulas do not differ from chords, and so are not iterated in this section. On the guitar they are derived both from individual chord forms, often with finger extensions, and from connecting adjacent forms. The term many pick-style guitarists now use for them is *sweeps*, based on the action of the pick "sweeping" across the strings, but the method of right hand execution is up to the individual player. The Arpeggios presented in this section are illustrated only once for both ascending and descending order. Whenever two notes occur on the same string, the execution strategy is to hammer-on or pull-off the following note depending on the direction. This enables the right hand to pick or pluck each string only one time each way. The arrow groupings indicate the distance in frets for position changes.

Virtually any chord form can be an Arpeggio, so some constraints have been applied. Rather than duplicate every chord form previously illustrated, we will use only the triads and sevenths that naturally lend themselves to arpeggiation. The best ones are those that provide more than one complete octave and are reasonably easy to execute. The D major form, in contrast, starts on the fourth string and spans only one octave even with a position change. So it is not included here as an example of a form that is ideally arpeggiated per se. The forms that best lend themselves to arpeggiation are C, A, G, and E. Barred forms have been drawn as individual notes. The tonics are represented by the darker circles. In the right hand column, several forms are combined in a manner similar to the lead patterns to provide a range of three octaves.

C Form
MajorA Form
MajorG Form
MajorE Form
MajorThree Octave
Pattern

Arpeggios - Minors

The two-octave Minor Arpeggios are illustrated in the graphs on the left and are based on the C A G and E Minor chord forms.

With the C and A Minor forms, the arpeggiation begins on the 5th string and concludes with a four fret position change on the first string.

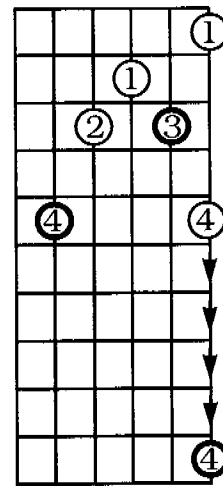
You may have noticed by now that many Arpeggio forms are heavily reliant on the pinky finger. The index and especially the pinky are in key locations since they are on each end of the fretting hand. As a result they are often called upon to make reaches and jumps that the middle ones aren't in a position to.

The G minor form uses both a four-string index bar and a three-string pinky bar. Don't forget that when two or more adjacent notes are shown with the same finger it implies a bar covering the included notes. They are drawn individually to better convey how they're played.

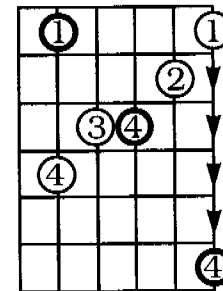
Again, it usually helps to increase overall playability to hammer-on and pull-off notes that are on the same string when playing arpeggios. For example, with the G minor form, a hammer-on would occur on the third string ascending, and a pull-off when descending.

The E minor form can be barred with the index finger across all six strings, and you will probably find this form to be the easiest to play and use at first.

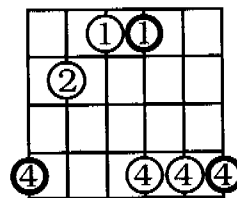
The graph on the top right is a three-octave minor arpeggio pattern. It should be emphasized again that almost any chord form can be expressed as a one-octave arpeggio. There are numerous single octave arpeggio forms that can be derived from parts of the ones presented, which are not illustrated. Think first three strings.



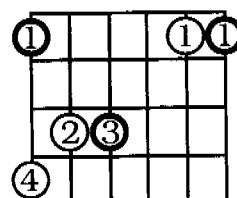
C Form
Minor



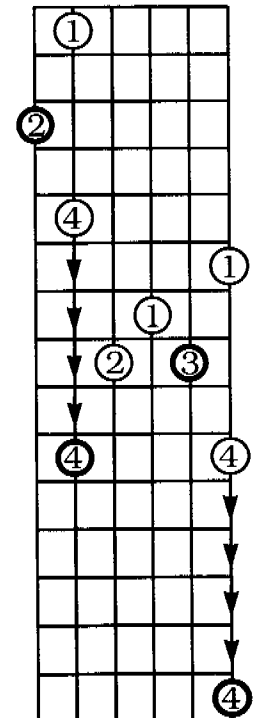
A Form
Minor



G Form
Minor



E Form
Minor



Three Octave
Pattern

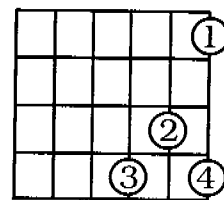
Arpeggios - Diminished

You should recall that the Diminished chords were termed symmetrical since the distance from each note to the other is the same. This symmetry causes limitations in the note groupings for the purposes of arpeggiation. In other words there are not very many practical forms for the Diminished Arpeggios, and like the Diminished chord forms, they don't relate well as variations to the CAGED forms.

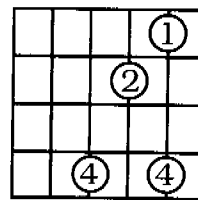
In the graphs on the left, four forms of Diminished Arpeggios are illustrated. These don't even span the distance of an octave, but you will hear them used often, and they are pretty easy to play.

On the right side is an extended form, and the one you will probably use most. The extended form illustrates well the symmetry of the diminished intervals and also the lack of symmetry of the guitar's tuning with respect to the second and third string pair. A note has been added to the first string to allow this extended pattern to span three complete octaves.

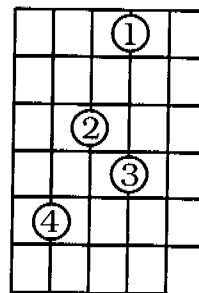
If the fingering shown for the extended Diminished Arpeggio is uncomfortable or difficult, try substituting the third finger for the pinky.



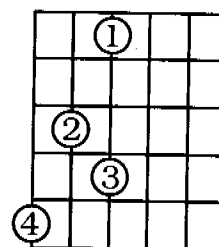
Strings 3 2 1
Diminished



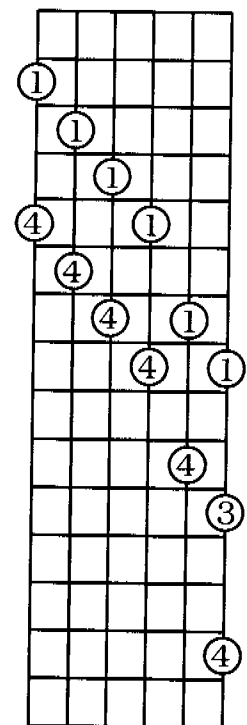
Strings 4 3 2
Diminished



Strings 5 4 3
Diminished



Strings 6 5 4
Diminished



Extended
Pattern

Arpeggios - Augmented

As with the Diminished, the symmetrical nature of the Augmented intervals provides only a few possibilities for arpeggiation. You probably won't hear the Augmented Arpeggios used too often anyway.

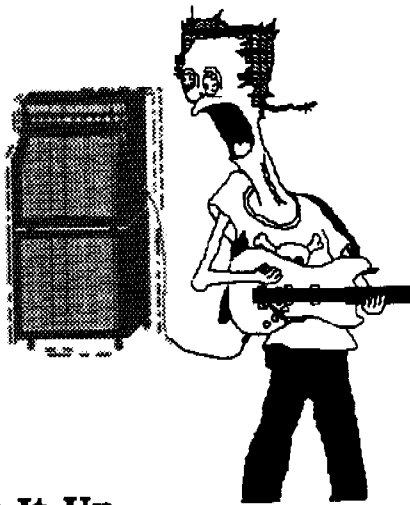
With respect to tonics and the Augmented and Diminished Arpeggios, you can think of it two ways: either there is no real target note, or every note is a target note. For that reason there isn't a darker circle in these forms to show a starting or ending suggestion.

Major, minor, diminished and augmented arpeggios are triadic. When learning these three-note Arpeggios for the first time, *accent* the first of each three-note group when playing. In two-octave Arpeggios, up and back, this will translate to:

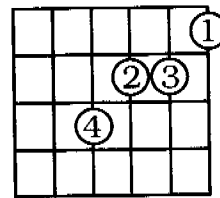
Up - **Strong** weak weak
 Strong weak weak
 Back - **Strong** weak weak
 Strong weak weak
 Strong.

Virgil's Philosophy of Life

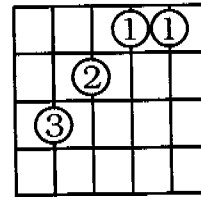
Life is like playing electric guitar through a 100 watt stack in public... and learning the instrument as you go.



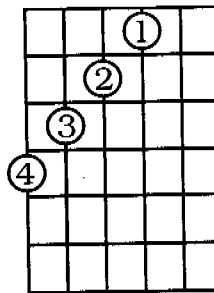
So Crank It Up.



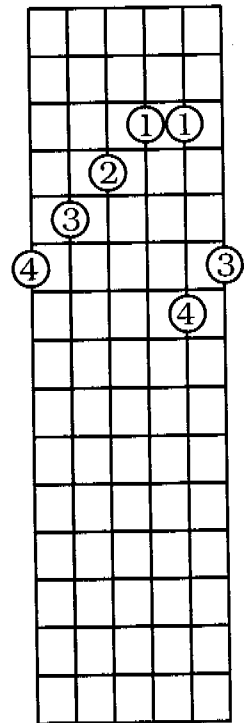
Strings 4 3 2 1
Augmented



Strings 5 4 3 2
Augmented



Strings 6 5 4 3
Augmented



Two Octaves
Augmented

Arpeggios - Major Seventh

The first four-note Arpeggio taken up is the Major Seventh. When learning these for the first time, accent the first note of each four-note group. In two-octave Arpeggios, up and back, this will translate to:

Up - **Strong** weak weak weak
 Strong weak weak weak
 Back - **Strong** weak weak weak
 Strong weak weak weak
 Strong.

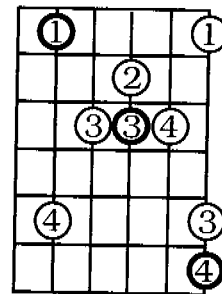
In the left hand column, the two-octave Major Seventh Arpeggios are drawn based upon the A, G, and E chord forms.

In the right column, two three-octave Major Seventh Arpeggio patterns are shown.

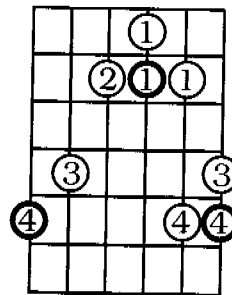
As more notes are added to the forms, the fingering combinations become more difficult and will require more patience and practice. In fact, this can be said of almost all the Arpeggios. Compared to the even the more difficult chords and scales, the Arpeggios will be harder to master as a rule. They require more from both hands in terms of fretting accuracy and synchronization. In light of that, these most difficult patterns were saved for last.

On the other hand, arpeggios are among the most effective and easily applied musical resources you can have at your disposal. They work well in a lot of improvisational situations.

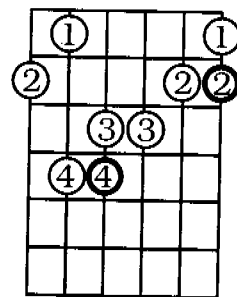
With the Major Seventh Arpeggios, you should be able to appreciate from the character of the patterns, how each form draws from both the chord forms and the scale forms. To visualize this you might consider practicing each form of the chord, scale and arpeggio, one after another from memory once you have learned them.



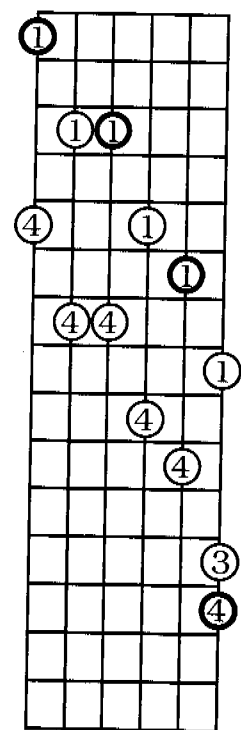
A Form
Major Seventh



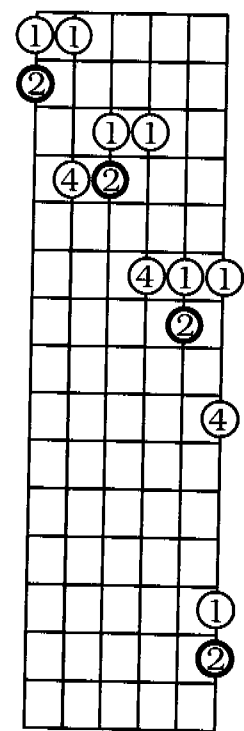
G Form
Major Seventh



E Form
Major Seventh



Three Octaves
Major Seventh



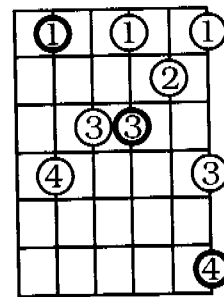
Three Octaves
Major Seventh

Arpeggios - Minor Seventh

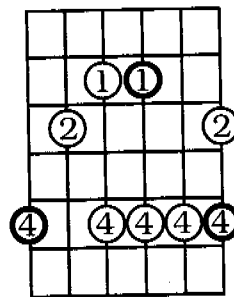
The two-octave Minor Seventh Arpeggios are shown in the left side column and are based upon the A, G, and E chord and scale forms.

In the right column, a three octave pattern is illustrated.

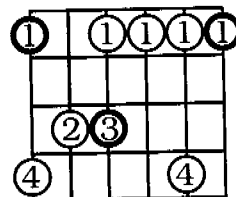
Don't forget to experiment with alternate fingering strategies. Those illustrated throughout the book(s) represent only what seem to be the most workable solutions, and are by no means suggested as the only appropriate ones. The same goes for the patterns themselves. There are ways other than the ones illustrated to accomplish the same thing, and it is recommended that you look for viable alternatives as a matter of course.



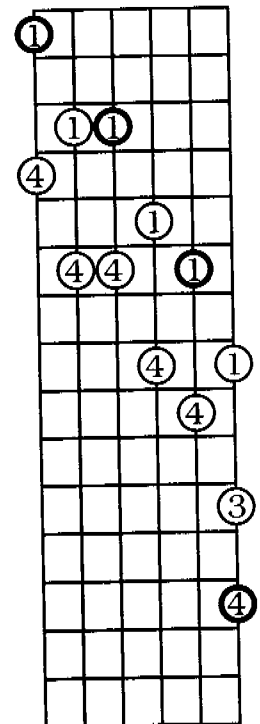
A Form
Minor Seventh



G Form
Minor Seventh



E Form
Minor Seventh



Three Octaves
Minor Seventh

?

Q: How many guitarists does it take to change a light bulb?

A: A lot. One to climb the ladder and the rest to sit in the audience telling each other they could have done it better.

?

Arpeggios - Dominant Seventh

The last chord type to be patterned for arpeggiation is the Dominant Seventh. In the left column, it is illustrated based upon the A, G, and E chord forms, with a three octave version at the bottom.

In the right column are two more three-octave arpeggiations.

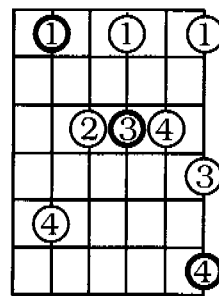
If you plan to skip any of the Arpeggios, don't make the Dominant Sevenths one of them. It is among the more important elements in music of all types, and will get used a great deal when the time comes for the practical application of these basic components.

Recap

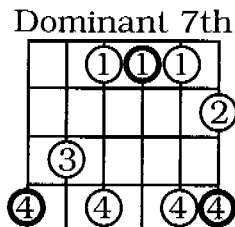
Arpeggios are the most technically challenging of the basic tone groupings and often require the strength and reach of the hardest chords combined with the accuracy and agility of the most difficult scales.

Arpeggios rely heavily upon position changes and draw from both chord and scale forms as patterns. The fluid execution of the Arpeggios often necessitates articulation techniques such as hammer-ons, pull-offs, and slides while, for pick-style players, the right hand travels in one direction in what is known as sweeping the strings.

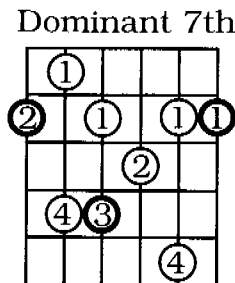
In general, Arpeggios place heavier demands upon both the right and left hand than either the chord forms, scale forms or lead patterns, however their overall musical value should not be underestimated.



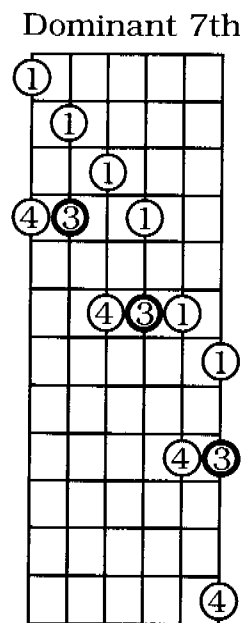
A Form



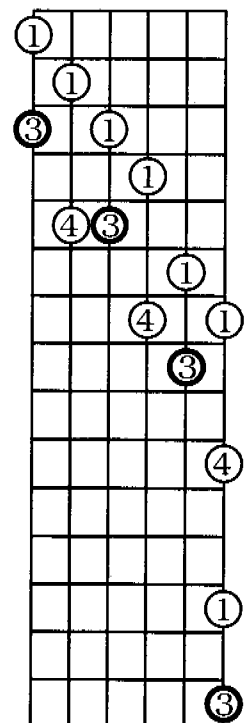
G Form



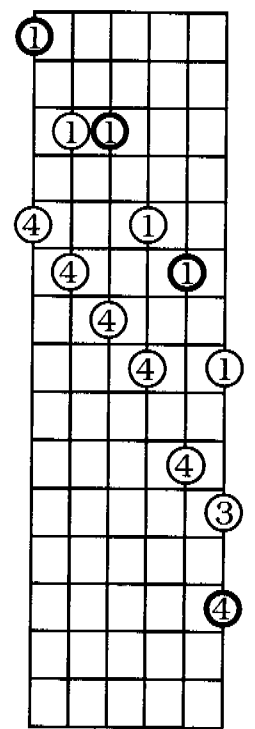
E Form



Three Octaves
Dominant 7th



Three Octaves
Dominant 7th

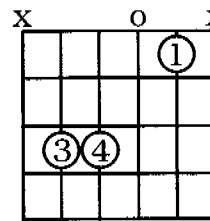


Three Octaves
Dominant 7th

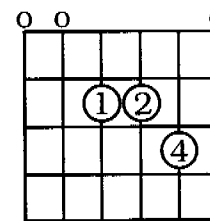
The goal of Fretboard Logic has been to teach the way things work in a structured context, and not just to spew information with no foundation or framework. One benefit of learning from a method book as opposed to, say, copying stuff from friends and recordings, is that you are (presumably) getting a structured environment. The arrangement of ideas into an ordered format with certain constraints makes learning easier, faster, and more permanent. Plus you can go back and review as your frame of reference expands and things take hold. But sometimes, because of those constraints, certain things get omitted in order to keep from getting off track.

This section is about things that did not fit within the basic organization of the book, but shouldn't be left out, either. First, there are a few chord types that need to be illustrated simply because they are so common and so useful. They are the Suspensions, Suspended 7ths and Ninth chords. They are presented as open forms only, because by now, you should know how to make and use open forms in other positions. There are two primary types of **Suspension**, or ways to *suspend resolution* of a Major chord. (The "pull" to the Major is one of the strongest in harmony.) One is commonly known as a "Suspended Second," and the other a "Suspended Fourth." I hope you recall the reasoning behind my objection to this contradiction in terms, but right or wrong, the use of *even* degrees in typing chords is common practice. (No doubt the result of a monophonist's influence.) The formula for "Suspended 2nd" is 1 (2 or 9) 5, and the formula for a "Sus. 4th" is 1 (4 or 11) 5. The interior chord tones are commonly misinterpreted as "2nds" and (Continues next page)

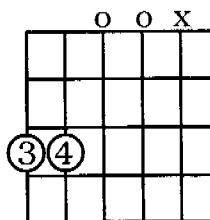
Suspended 4th



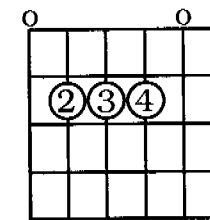
1 4 5 1
Suspended 4th
C Form



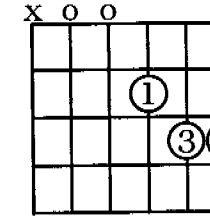
5 1 5 1 4 5
Suspended 4th
A Form



1 4 5 1
Suspended 4th
G Form

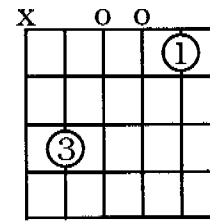


1 5 1 4 5 1
Suspended 4th
E Form

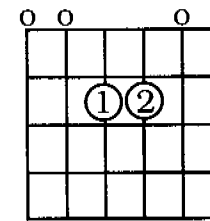


5 1 5 1 4
Suspended 4th
D Form

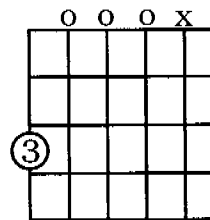
Suspended 2nd



1 2 5 1
Suspended 2nd
C Form



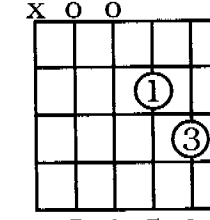
5 1 5 1 2 5
Suspended 2nd
A Form



1 2 5 1
Suspended 2nd
G Form



5 1 5 1 2
Suspended 2nd
D Form



5 1 5 1 2
Suspended 2nd
D Form

Loose Ends - Chords

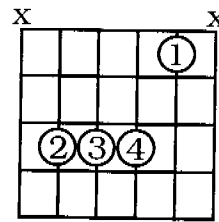
"4ths" - hence the conflict. Again, all chord tones are derived from an odd-numbered sequence (1 3 5 7 9 11 13). Only key degrees and scale tones are designated with both odd and even numbers. But somewhere along the line, someone mixed things up and the names unfortunately stuck. Both suspensions beg to be resolved to the major triad, and you will recognize this type of harmonic motion in many songs and pieces.

Another common suspension is the Suspended 7th or the Dominant 7th Sus.4. Its formula is 1 (4 or 11) 5 b7. Again what logically is the wrong name is the one commonly used. (You are not "suspending the 7th"). Suspended 7ths are used in much the same way as the other suspensions but are even stronger because of the b7, adding yet another degree of tension to be resolved.

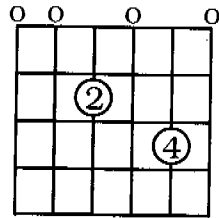
In the right hand column, the next chord type covered is the Ninth chord - essential to blues and many rock songs. The **Ninth** Chord is a Dominant Seventh chord with the ninth degree added. (Notice that no one calls it a "2nd chord"). The formula for Ninth chords is 1 3 5 b7 9.

A familiar usage of this chord is to combine the E7 form in the fifth position with the C form of the 9th chord in the fourth and sixth (index) positions for the three chords of what is known the world over as "12 Bar Blues in A" - the aspiring lead player's playground. (Do you get the feeling the author wants to move on to the Applications part of the method?) The easy way to get the equivalent degree for chord tones such as 9ths 11ths and 13ths, from the scale tone, is to always add 7 to the lower degree. For example, a scale tone that is the 2nd degree is a chord tone of a 9th (2 + 7 = 9). A 4th degree scale tone is an 11th chord tone (4 + 7 = 11), and so on.

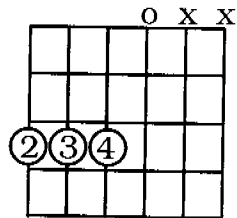
Suspended 7th



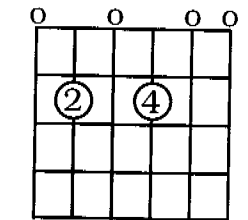
1 4 b7 1
Suspended 7th
C Form



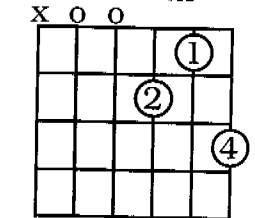
5 1 5 b7 4 5
Suspended 7th
A Form



1 4 b7 1
Suspended 7th
G Form

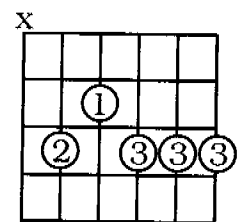


1 5 b7 4 5 1
Suspended 7th
E Form

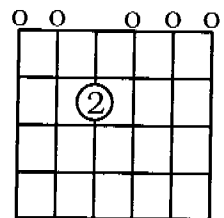


5 1 5 b7 4
Suspended 7th
D Form

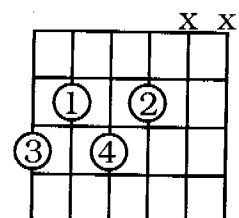
Ninth



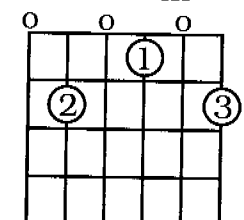
1 3 b7 9 5
Ninth
C Form



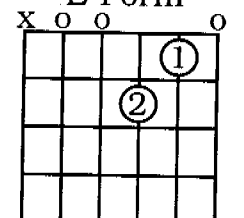
5 1 5 b7 9 5
Ninth
A Form



1 3 b7 9
Ninth
G Form



1 5 b7 3 5 9
Ninth
E Form



5 1 5 b7 9
Ninth
D Form

Loose Ends - Scales

The next add-ons are some fairly significant scales. They are the "Blues," Chromatic, Whole Tone, and Diminished scales.

The first scales presented are among the most widely used in popular music. For lack of a better name, they are generally referred to as Blues Scales. The problem with the term "Blues" is that they are used in a variety of styles other than just Blues. They come in two basic flavors: Major and minor. The term Blues Minor is relatively common although you don't hear Blues Major used very often.

Adding the same tone from different starting points creates different scale degrees. The major version adds a flatted third degree (b3) to the pentatonic and the minor version adds a flatted fifth (b5). The illustrations on this page are oriented toward the fingering conventions. Target notes for tonality are on the following page.

The right column shows the three octave lead patterns for these scale types. The G Group includes an early crossover.

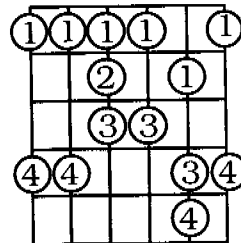


When I wrote that I was conscious of being inspired by God Almighty. Do you think I can consider your puny little fiddle when He speaks to me?

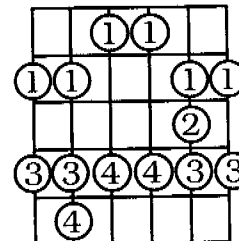
Ludwig Van Beethoven
- said when a violinist complained that a passage was unplayable.



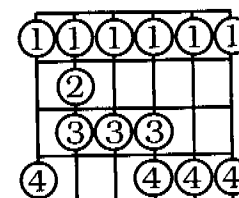
Scale Forms



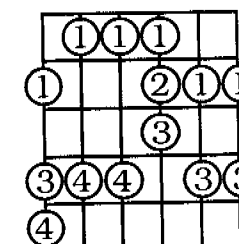
Blues Scale
C Form



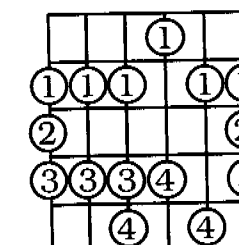
Blues Scale
A Form



Blues Scale
G Form

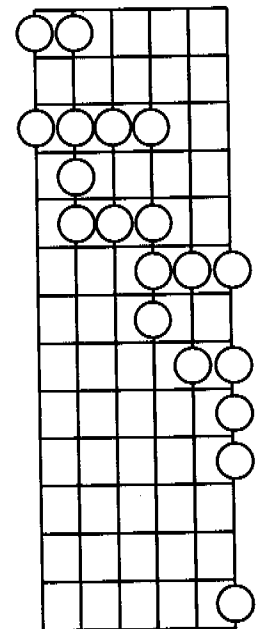


Blues Scale
E Form

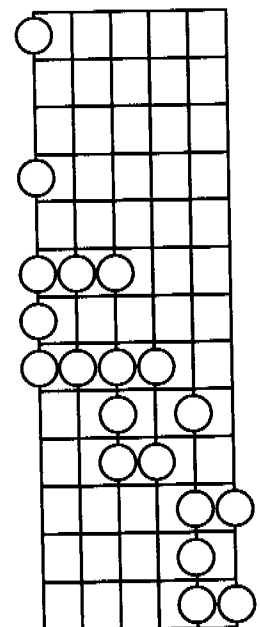


Blues Scale
D Form

Lead Patterns



Three Octaves
C Group



Three Octaves
G Group

Loose Ends - Scales

The **Chromatic** scale is a half-step scale, and as you know, each fret on the guitar is a half step musically. There are many ways for traversing the fretboard in half-steps. In the interest of brevity, only a few are provided here. The ones shown represent economy of motion and consistency of form which, on the fretboard, usually translates to accessibility and ease of use.

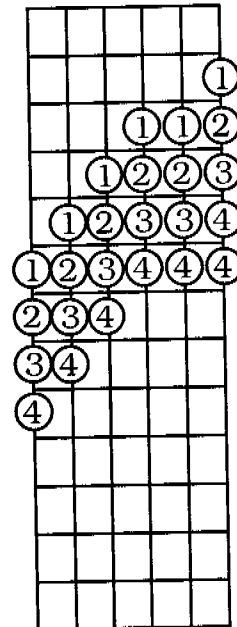
The Chromatic scale is illustrated for two octaves on the left side. In the first graph, if the last note is played with the pinky finger, then you can start right there and play the descending pattern illustrated in the second graph, from that fret on. As usual, there are a variety of a fingering schemes that are available given the arrangement of notes in the pattern, and you can choose whatever suits you best.

The graph on the right is an extended Chromatic lead pattern that spans four octaves if your guitar has enough frets.

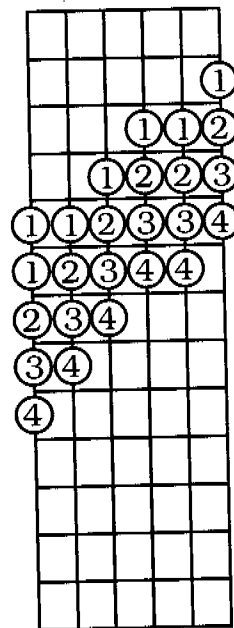
In the presentations where the Chromatic scale spans more than two octaves, the use of the cross-over technique is necessary on practically every string. This causes the longer lead patterns to be somewhat more difficult to pull off smoothly than the shorter ones.

If you are interested in some simple dexterity exercises for promoting technical facility, the Chromatics, Diminished and Whole Tone scales provide excellent material to focus on just right and left hand coordination. The issue of left and right hand synchronization and overall technical dexterity is not to be taken lightly, and comprises an entire section in Vol. III.

Scale Forms

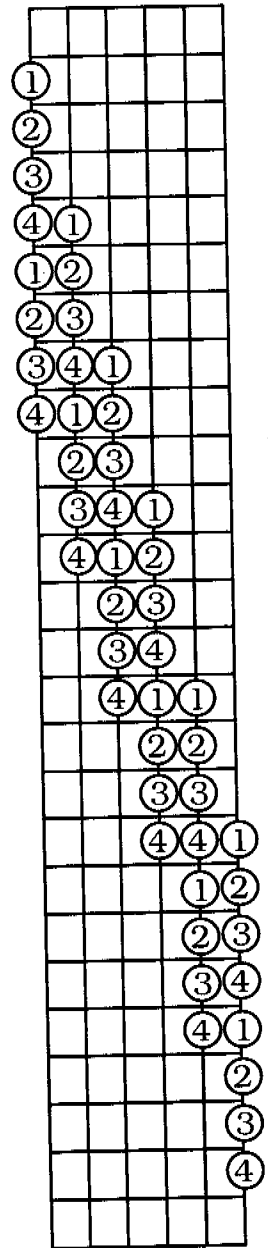


Chromatic Scale
Two Octaves
Ascending



Chromatic Scale
Two Octaves
Descending

Lead Pattern



Chromatic
Lead Pattern
Four Octaves

Loose Ends - Scales

This time there are two different types of scales presented on one page: The Whole Tone scale, and the Diminished scale.

The Whole Tone scale is exactly what its name implies and is another very regular pattern on the fretboard. Like the Chromatic, it lacks a specific tone center until you start and/or end it.

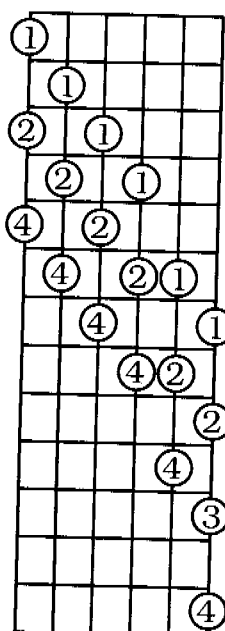
The stretching required near the lower fretboard positions makes this scale form a challenge for people with smaller hands.

The Diminished Scales (not to be confused with Diminished Arpeggios) are a hybrid of the Chromatic and Whole Tone scales. A Diminished scale has alternating intervals of - you guessed it - whole and half steps. The two forms presented start and end with the different intervals. The above right graph starts and ends with a whole step, and the lower right hand pattern starts and ends with a half step.

One more digression on usage. As audiences, we have been conditioned to expect either a Major or a Minor tonescape. The Chromatic, Whole Tone, and Diminished scales are not tonally oriented toward either of these, and can spice up an otherwise monotonous (mono-toned) situation.

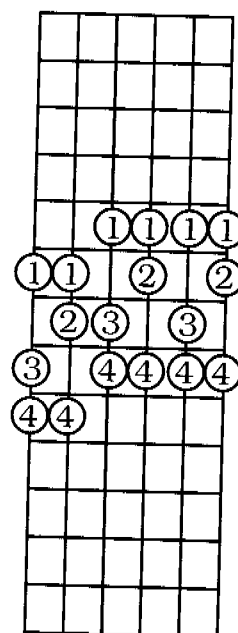
Without actually changing key areas, you can throw in some weird tonal material and make the listener do an auditory double take. As always, parental discretion is advised.

Whole Tone

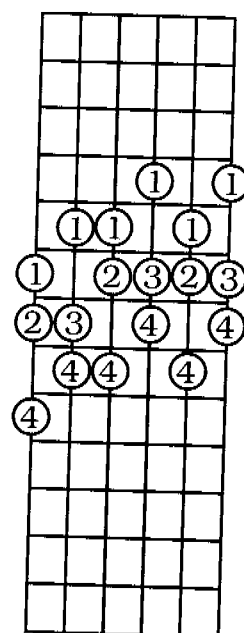


Whole Tone Scale

Diminished



Diminished Scale



Diminished Scale

Loose Ends - Scales

Next we'll tackle some diatonic scale forms which are designed to provide the right hand with consistent three-note per string action. Granted, this may seem like the tail wagging the dog, but the one thing we can all agree on is that not every guitarist thinks the same. So keep an open mind about them.

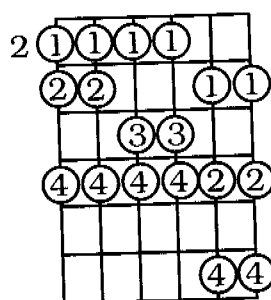
These forms appear to be a cross between the Lead Patterns and the Scale Forms. They combine position changes with irregularity. For that reason they may seem to be the worst of both worlds, but a lot of very strong players use them so give them a try. They will probably require the dreaded rote memorization to learn.

On the practical side, I admit that sometimes if I'm trying to figure out a part by ear and nothing else seems to fall into place, I'll find that these are the best patterns for the job.

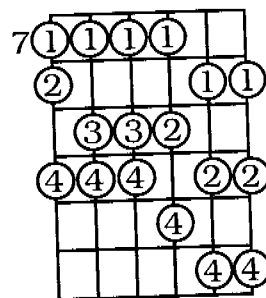
As always the fingering shown is the one that makes the most sense to me, but may not work best for everyone.

They are continued on the next page.

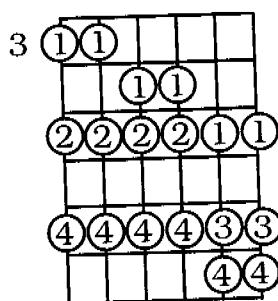
Three-Note Diatonic Forms



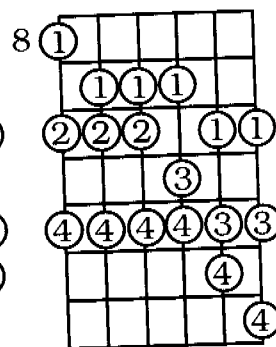
Modified
E Form



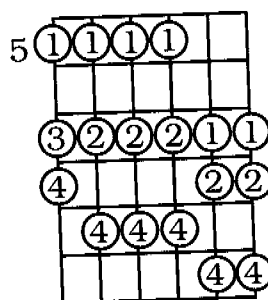
Modified
C Form



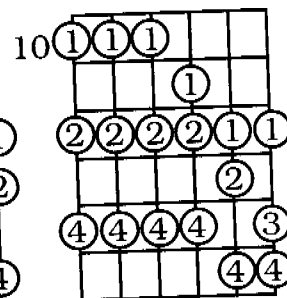
Modified
D Form



Modified
G/C Form



Modified
D/C Form



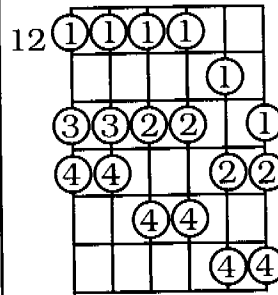
Modified
G Form

Loose Ends - Scales

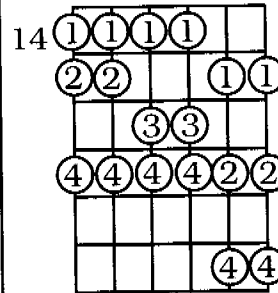
This page completes the three-note per string diatonic scale forms. Since they are diatonic, there are, of course, seven different forms. The last form illustrated is the same as the first, and was included as a tonal reference for those of us who have the neck access. Because they are so irregular, you'll probably hit a number of wrong notes trying to learn these so it may help to end up where you started.

It is important to play these in several different keys as soon as you learn them.

Three-Note Diatonic Forms



Modified
G/E Form



Modified
E Form



One pound of learning requires ten pounds of common sense to apply it.

Benjamin Franklin



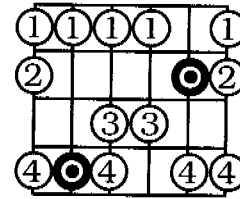
Loose Ends - Scales

The last scale type is a **Hexatonic** or six-toned scale. It can be viewed as either a Pentatonic with the addition of a 4th degree or a Diatonic without the 7th - take your pick.

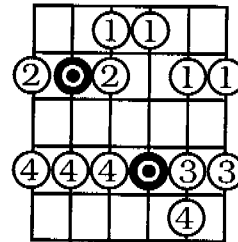
This scale type is a half way house between the tonal security (or boredom) of "Pentatonia" and the somewhat riskier "Diatonia" with its 4th and 7th "avoid" notes.

The Major orientation is given since that is the only way I've heard it used, but you might want to experiment with that.

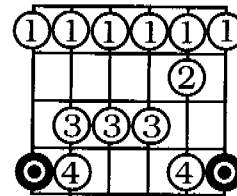
Scale Forms



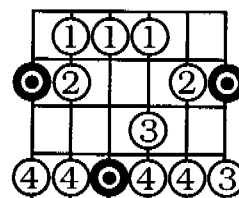
C Form
Hexatonic



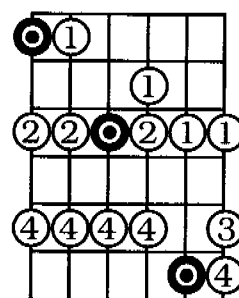
A Form
Hexatonic



G Form
Hexatonic

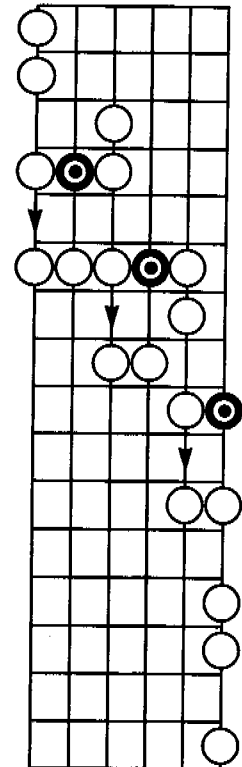


E Form
Hexatonic

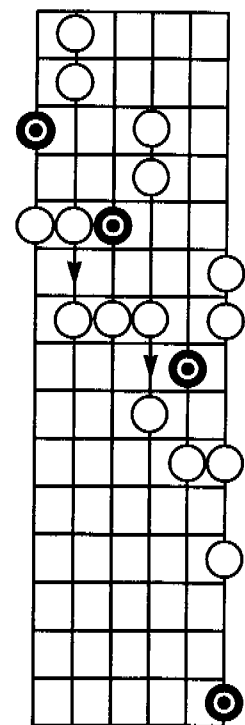


D Form
Hexatonic

Lead Patterns



HLP 1 Asc.



HLP 1 Asc.

Loose Ends - Arpeggios

The next loose end is the Suspended Fourth arpeggio. It is a very melodious and not yet overused musical figure.

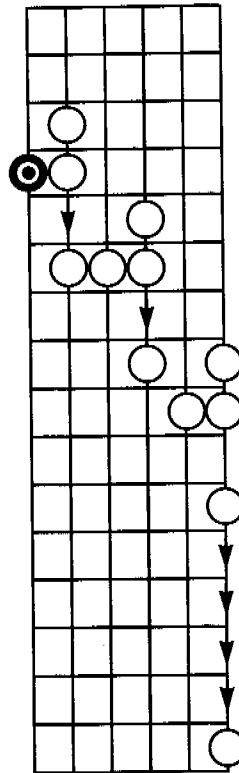
In the left side column it is shown in a three octave ascending pattern. On the right are a couple of two octave descending forms.

The last loose end is the subject of song form. Most guitar players in groups are playing music that comes in the form of a song, but I've noticed that few stop to think what elements make up a song, or what separates a song from other forms of music. A **Song** is comprised of three basic elements: lyrics, melody and harmony. The **lyrics** are the words that are sung. The **melody** is the tune or the musical way the words are sung. The **harmony** in this case is the accompaniment or the instrumental support for the lyrics and melody. Think of melody as the horizontal relationship of the notes in time whereas harmony can be considered the vertical relationship of the notes in time. Songs come in many forms, but if you are involved in writing songs of your own, keep in mind the three basic elements that make it what it is.

Recap

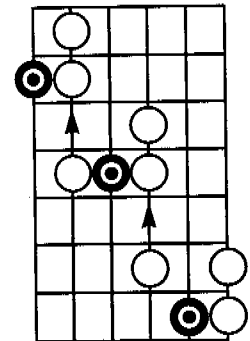
The benefit of approaching any subject in a methodical manner is that the learning process is more efficient. But sometimes the very structure of a method requires that certain issues be side-stepped at least temporarily. In the first three sections we approached the basic tonal materials of music in such a way that most of the guesswork and memorization could be avoided. The last section was devoted to including a few interesting and useful tone groupings which didn't fall into the core categories of the first three sections.

Suspended

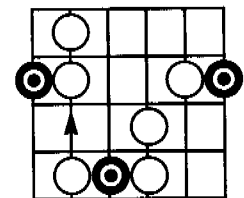


Three Octave
Ascending
Suspension

Suspended



Two Octave
Descending
Suspension



Two Octave
Descending
Suspension

The Components of Music

The next section is devoted to exploring related areas of music study which are not guitar specific. Almost everything presented up to this point has been discussed in terms of how it directly pertains to the fretboard and its unique properties, as a foundation of the guitar player's learning experience.

The subjects chosen were determined by the consistently high level of interest shown by my own students over a period of more than 15 years. They are: Theory, Technique, Lead and Rhythm Playing, and Styles of music.

The purpose of these introductory is to acquaint those of you having different goals and aptitudes, with a variety of useful information which will help to decide what path might be most appropriate to take next. My mental image of this learning process paints the components that make up guitar music as a kind of wagon wheel with the tuning system at the hub, the different kinds of success on the outside rim, and the various components as the spokes that hold it all together.

Unfortunately, since each area is large enough to merit a book or more of it's own, the effort has been in the direction of only attempting to approach each one in the most general terms. The information given is only meant to be a brief exposure to the requirements each will make on you as a student, and the abilities they will confer as a player. I wouldn't presume to decide which of the areas is more important for you as a person. I would hope that your curiosity is piqued in each of these areas and many others, of course. Because I still teach, I get to meet a lot of people who are not sure which direction will get them where they want to go musically. Whenever students ask me which direction should take priority, I will usually try to find out where they would like to see themselves within the next six months, the next year, and the next five years.

Eventually a serious guitarist has to decide whether he intends to earn a living with his instrument, and just exactly how, or would rather keep it as a hobby. This is a traumatic decision for many outstanding players, and one that is likely to be put off for as long as possible. The hard choices are the important ones, though, and this one has a lot to do with which direction to proceed in. I'm personally of a belief that we each invent our own success, and that begins with visualizing our ideas about what we consider success. As we approach it, the image becomes clearer, and vice versa.

Theory and technique are the two areas that every musician on every instrument eventually has to come to grips with. The first is useless without the second for a performer, and the second is useless without the first for a composer, and most professional musical endeavors will fall more into one category than the other. Everyone who plays guitar in a group plays both rhythm and lead at some point, and you will probably find that it is impossible to be involved with the guitar without also being associated with a particular style or styles of music.

I believe that you will eventually come around to finding something useful in each area covered and many more to come.

Introduction to Music Theory

I believe the term *theory*, in the field of music is often misinterpreted. Like many people, I started out equating notational reading and writing skills with theory. Instead, I now perceive **standard notation**, the standard method of notating music, primarily as a way to preserve a composer's music in detail for other musicians and audiences to enjoy. It could accurately be considered the earliest form of *recorded* music. One of the benefits behind this method of recording music was, that by developing a specialized form of notation that was not particularly language-sensitive, people in different parts of the world would be able to share one another's musical creations. Perhaps at least partly because of this, music has become known as the "universal language." Now when we think of *recorded* music, we usually visualize a digitally mastered CD, a computerized multi-track studio, or some other twentieth century technological marvel. In contrast, the best explanation of **music theory** I have come across is viewing it as the study of pitch and time relationships. But in order to look at these relationships in a meaningful way, we need certain tools, and among them is an understanding of the language and symbols used to specify pitches and time, ie., reading and writing skills.

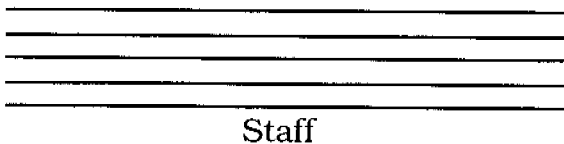
A distinction might be in order at this point. It is one thing to master the skills necessary to perform all the mental and physical requirements to actually learn to play written music. It is another to fully understand the thinking that went into the music you are playing or to actually compose an original work - and there is definitely some overlap here. In order to perform a piece of music correctly, it is useful to understand the thinking behind it. Likewise, to compose a worthwhile piece of music, it obviously helps to be able to work out ideas on an instrument. Even so, there are thousands of musicians and songwriters who haven't the slightest idea whether their creations conform to "proper" theoretical principles or not, and many actually believe they originate their own "theory." This is not unlike reinventing the wheel or rediscovering fire. If what they are composing actually sounds pretty good, then they are no doubt following some established musical guidelines. It is a humbling experience to realize that musically, most "new" ideas can be found to have originated in some very old compositions. Just one prolific genius can be a hard act for others to follow, and there have been many in the history of music. Fortunately, most audiences don't spend their time searching for musical derivations, and newness is relative (or else you wouldn't see so many cover hits). Think of **music** as organized sound, because there are countless ways to organize sound. The bottom line is that if it sounds ok, it is ok, theoretically. Besides, throughout history, the laws of science and rules of conduct have changed to accommodate great minds. So it is no small irony that knowing a lot of theory may not help you as much as you might think. What is also important is to know how to apply what you have learned. Many successful artists can neither read nor write standard notation but it doesn't stop them from making great music. Hard work, creativity and persistence are the stock in trade here as elsewhere. Now when music is *recorded*, it is committed to a tape or disc in a studio.

Introduction to Theory

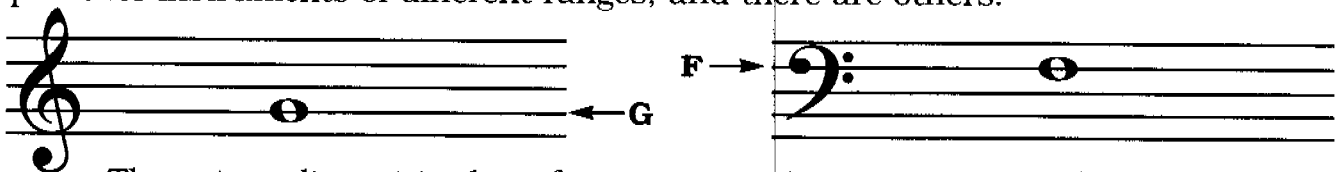
Many aspiring guitarists reading this want to belong to groups that record and tour. They presume learning theory is going to help them get famous. As a practical matter, I don't necessarily agree. Surprised? Don't be. If your goal is to be a "Big Star," your attitude, acumen and looks will probably have a more direct impact on your success than your knowledge of, say, the use of dissonance in Stravinsky's "Rites of Spring." On the other hand, if you want to do a job, you've got to have the tools to do it with, and one well worn path to failure is to stop striving to learn because you think you already know everything you need to know. I'm pretty sure the majority of guitarists interested in theory don't necessarily have visions of groupies dancing in their heads (ok - I'm an exception). Their primary goal is to expand their capabilities. They want to know how music works. If this is true for you then what follows will be useful. The first thing to deal with is how pitches are written and how time is specified. It is not difficult if you take it one step at a time.

The Basic Elements of Notation

Music is notated against a background of five parallel lines called a staff (pl. staves). Between the lines are spaces that also specify pitches.



Notes are positioned on either a line or a space, and as they are placed higher on the staff, they are played higher in pitch. The order is alphabetical, ascending. The letters A through G comprise the music alphabet, and beyond G, the letters repeat starting with (a higher) A again. At the very beginning of a piece of written music, you will find what is known as a *clef* sign. There are several clef signs but two are used the most: G clef (or treble clef), and F clef (or bass clef). The terms treble and bass roughly mean higher and lower. The G clef derives its name from the fancy letter "G" that circles the second line from the bottom of the staff (which always looked more like an "S" to me). Likewise, the F clef derives its name from the old fashioned script "F" and smaller dots that indicate the second line from the top of its staff. Again, these are just markers that give you a reference point for instruments of different ranges, and there are others.



The notes adjacent to the reference "G" and "F" are in alphabetical order in the direction of the top of the page. We aren't normally used to saying the alphabet backwards, so it takes practice to be able to name the notes at random.

Introduction to Technique

I feel the area of technique, or the physical aspects of playing, should be approached with some degree of caution. As both a student and fan of guitar music, I recall numerous instances when one teacher or another would pronounce certain techniques incorrect only to later find some other guitarist using the very same "incorrect" approach with astonishing success. Eventually I got the idea that since there were so many different types of hand physiques, music styles, and thinking patterns, that everyone's approach to technique would be somewhat different. So I'll only try to make recommendations or suggestions for certain circumstances instead of broad generalizations about right and wrong technique. With that said, I will go so far as to make one generalization based upon my experience as a private instructor. I can safely say that I can't remember having any students who *would not* attempt to play too fast when they were learning a new piece. I found myself saying over and over, "You're trying to play it too fast and that is what's causing the mistakes. Slow down and let your fingers learn their sequences." Muscles have a kind of memory and you have to give them a chance to learn their parts. But once a student would make a mistake in a part one or two times, they would continue to repeat it over and over in context. It was always easier if he or she played it dead slow and just right the very first time. I have come to believe that when our fingers are being taught routines, the first impressions are the strongest ones. In other words, it is just as easy to learn a part wrong as it is to learn it right as far as your fingers are concerned. What is hard is unlearning it and forcing yourself to relearn it over again once they get used to a certain feel. This boils down to disciplining ourselves to play very slowly during the learning phase.

As a performer, almost everyone strives for virtuosity. In the absence of this, we'll settle for speed. *Control* over speed (not speed per se) will be a lifelong issue for many of us so try to keep it in the front of your mind as you practice and play. Distinguish between when you are learning a piece and when you are rehearsing or performing what you already know. These are different states of mind and require different approaches. When learning a piece, only play it as fast as you can play it with absolutely no errors. When rehearsing or performing, only play it as fast as you can play it with absolutely no errors (sic). They seem the same but the difference in focus is enormous. In the first case you must resist the urge to let your adrenaline take over and satisfy your desire to hear the part in order to give your muscles, etc. a chance to learn new moves. In a rehearsal or performance, you should be concentrating on the sound of the music and letting the feeling it gives you guide everything. You might say this is more of a mental thing than a physical thing. But which comes first? It seems obvious but I'm not always so sure. Edison, I think, was once quoted as saying that his ideas seemed to grow out of his muscles. Most guitarists are not satisfied with their technique, and face it, this usually means they can't play fast enough to suit themselves. If you can't play fast enough and are looking for ways to increase your speed, maybe it's time to

The Need for Speed vs. The Virtue of Virtuosity

rethink your methods. We generally associate speed with bursts of great physical exertion. In the fingers, hands and arms, as you probably already know, this can quickly lead to muscle meltdown - cramping. If you want to play fast, learn to practice a task for longer periods of time without stopping instead of for short bursts of speed. It works. Think about it. Playing something over and over again hundreds and even thousands of times makes your fingers strong and efficient. They'll learn to move with a minimum of wasted motion. After enough repetition, speed comes naturally without even trying. Like magic. Playing for duration, or longer uninterrupted periods, is the key. Get a metronome and see for yourself. If there is a common denominator to the subject of good overall technique it has to be relaxation. In order to play effectively you must learn to play without tension. Because of the demands on each hand system (fingers, hands, wrists, arms, shoulders, back, etc.) this is more easily said than done. Physically, the guitar is a lot more difficult to play than it looks, and acquiring the stamina to play for longer periods requires that you play efficiently, relaxing whenever you can. If you are a beginner don't try to overexert your hands. It makes no sense to attempt to play physically difficult chords like the F (E form first position) before your hand is ready for it. I've met people who actually dropped the guitar altogether because they couldn't make that chord when all they needed to do was move the form up the neck further away from the nut, adjust the guitar or else just leave it till later on. Make it easy on yourself. Do what can be done without unnecessary frustration or overexertion. If you are an advanced player, one of the problems you are going to face from time to time is that sense of having reached a plateau or a leveling off in your (perceived) technical ability. You are no longer doubling your abilities every day or week as you did when you were a beginner, and you'll go for longer periods feeling like you're getting nowhere. One of the best ways to rekindle the interest is to try some different techniques or styles. When guitar technique is examined, it is usually divided into left hand (fretting hand) and right hand demands. The left hand requirements are fairly similar for electric, classic, and acoustic guitars, but the right hand approaches vary greatly. A big split occurs between the people who play with a pick, and those who use just their fingers and/or nails, and most methods will only teach one way or the other. Finger style and pick style techniques are equally beautiful and I can't see any reason why both cannot be learned as equals. Although the right hand is primarily responsible for making the strings vibrate, the left hand is capable of a wide variety of plucking alternatives, termed **articulation techniques**. Slides, bends, vibratos, hammer-ons and pull-offs, and harmonics are but a few of the ways that you can create interest in a non-standard way. By directly accessing the strings themselves, the guitar player can draw from a huge stockpile of technical resources. A piano, by contrast, has only one access to the strings, so the player is limited to playing each key softer or louder (hence the name piano-forte). Guitar players can evoke technical expression that a keyboard player can only long for.

Introduction to Rhythm Playing

Although many people consider rhythm guitar playing a subordinate role to lead, this is a common misconception that requires a slight attitude adjustment. For starters, just remember how much time in a song is spent playing lead and how much is devoted to rhythm. Or take the rhythm guitar part out of the song and have the rest of the band play without it. Many songs would hold up without the lead, but would it survive without the rhythm? I doubt it. The songwriters - the guys who get the royalties - are not composing the song around the lead part either. Besides, the first time we usually hear ourselves sound good as players is when we get the hang of a rhythm part. Rhythm and lead guitar parts are a cake and icing relationship and you should consider both important. Rhythm parts tend to put fewer demands on the left hand than lead, as a rule. The left's biggest problem is making the changes from one chord to another. The first step in making chord changes, is knowing the chord well enough so you can go for it without hesitating. If you are working on learning chord changes, here is a way to get your hands familiar with the forms quickly and minimize the hesitation that breaks down the flow. First, make a new chord, say an open E form. Next, instead of taking your fingers completely off the fretboard, and losing the form, keep them in place and just barely lift them off the strings, and then make the chord again. Repeat this procedure again moving your fingers just a little farther from the fretboard but retaining the chord form. Then repeat again, moving the held form a little farther from the fretboard each time. The idea behind this approach is to train your muscles to begin to make the chord shape before your fingers reach the strings. This will help you to avoid the one-finger-at-a-time approach that drastically slows down chord making. If you are using a pick, the right hand will be learning to keep time without hesitation and without sounding sing-song. Since the right hand is doing considerably less precision work than the left at first, it will sometimes attempt to bully the left into making rash moves by strumming a chord before the form has been made. The coordination between the two hands is best arrived at by mutual consent, and each one has to be allowed to do his job in precise order. Below is the easiest strumming pattern I know, that doesn't sound sing-song. It is based on a four-beat measure. The right hand rhythm is as follows:

1	2	3	4
Down	Down Up	Up Down Up	

The hard part at first is to get the pattern to flow from one beat to the next and then one measure to the next. Counting out loud or tapping your foot will help, but a metronome is the best guide. A good exercise to combine basic right and left hand rhythm techniques, is to play this rhythm pattern changing the chord at the end of each four beat measure. Start with basic forms and then add different chord types. Rhythm playing is generally a matter of combining right hand rhythms with left hand chord changes. This beginner's exercise will help you to focus on some of the demands that playing rhythm will place on you.

Introduction to Lead Playing

When we communicate, we are using a highly developed system of symbols, sounds and nuances that have been agreed upon as having common meanings. In the sciences, these symbols, etc. are rigorously defined and adhered to, in order to promote among other things, specificity. For example, $2 + 2$ has to equal exactly 4 for everyone or else things wouldn't work. When people communicate with music, however, not everyone who listens to it "gets it" the same way they understand two plus two. Music is not as specific and it doesn't have to be. Moreover, as musicians, we shouldn't strive to make two plus two equal four all the time. As a lead player, you should try to make two plus two equal more than four. Just playing scales against chords is not really playing lead. In a sense, just playing the right notes in the right key is similar to getting four out of two plus two. So what distinguishes lead playing from scale playing? In a word: *phrasing*. Phrasing is the best all around term to describe the difference between someone who communicates with his guitar, and someone who just rambles up and down the fretboard hoping he or she doesn't hit a wrong note. When we talk to one another, we collect our ideas into packages and utter them in units known as sentences. These groupings help to make what we say more easily understood. They also allow us to draw breaths and to formulate our next thoughts into sentences. If you want to play lead, learn to phrase your musical ideas into statements and "breathe" between phrases. Another level of lead playing is the ability to improvise. Take a simple melody and change it around a little. Not so much that you can't recognize it, but enough so that it comes out a little differently each time you repeat it. When improvising, you are free to alter both pitch and time, separately or together. By experimenting with playing and improvising simple melodies, you can do a great deal for your personal understanding of what goes into phrasing groups of notes into musical statements. One of the most common stumbling blocks to the process of improvisation is when a player doesn't know the scale forms and lead patterns that make up the layout of the fretboard. By now you should also be familiar with several different types of scales and arpeggios, and be able to work them into your lead playing. Each element's form and type will bring forth new possibilities. Another common problem is just a basic lack of technical facility. Acquiring strength and coordination in the hands and fingers is an ongoing struggle that never abates. This very struggle causes many players to focus their energy on technique to the exclusion of almost everything else. They become digital over-achievers - absorbed with maintaining their chops often to the detriment of their understanding of music itself. In a sense, they speak eloquently but say nothing memorable. By far the most widely used method of learning how to play lead has been simply playing a recording repeatedly and copying the riffs one by one. This may seem like the hard way of doing things, but it works. Granted, it can lead to artistic inbreeding, but we all learn from one another. Copying is just a first step. Understanding what made it a lead you wanted to copy is the next step. The last step is creating something that others will want to copy.

Introduction to Styles

At the outset I want to make a distinction between music styles, such as rock, country etc., and guitar styles, such as finger-picking, flat-picking, etc. because the term styles is used correctly in both contexts. The guitar styles seem to fall somewhere in between the music styles and technique per se because they sometimes convey a music style in a technical way, but not always. Lines get blurred. Take finger-picking style, aka Travis picking, for example. Elizabeth Cotton and Merle Travis were early proponents of this type of guitar approach, and their musical style was considered mainly folk or country. But when Paul Simon incorporated it into many of his hits, the musical style was considered pop. Same with Kansas with their hit song "Dust In The Wind." But most people still associate the fingerpicking style with folk or country music. So the guitar style and how it is used can contribute to determining the music style but it doesn't necessarily define it.

As you probably know, Fretboard Logic has made efforts to avoid promoting a specific style of music and for two reasons. First, it gets in the way of some primary guitar and music relationships that are independent of the different styles of music. Second, nothing will scatter your students faster than talking about a kind of music they aren't (currently) interested in. But it is pretty hard to fully understand what you're playing without analyzing what makes it the style that it is. What's more, if we are ever to have a meaningful discussion about what makes a style that style, then we'll have to draw comparisons. To keep the focus of Vol. II specific, the study and comparison of different styles of music has deferred until later. Then the idea is to take songs of different styles apart and look at what makes them work, and what makes them so distinctly stylistic. The point is that it is not enough to just copy something from a tape or sheet in order to really understand it. You need to be able to grasp it in the context of the guitar, in the context of music and, if you're a professional, in the context of the market. You might think of the difference in terms of learning the music as opposed to learning from the music.

The Rolling Stone "History of Rock and Roll" is a collection of articles on a wide variety of music subjects from the early blues and gospel singers to pop and rock stars of the late seventies. (Highly recommended.) When the progress of the evolution of popular music is covered in chronological order, you are able to see how the styles of music overlap from artist to artist, and from period to period. One of Fretboard Logic III's intentions is to take a look at some of those obvious stylistic departures and focus on the aspects of the guitar and the music that made them separate and unique.

Ask yourself what the difference between country and blues and rock is, when they all use the same raw materials. There are many artists who broke new ground in popular music, and many songs that, by working so well, created a model for other songwriters and guitarists for years to come. These groundbreaking artists and their music will become the focus in the study of style.

Finale

Okay. That's about it for Fretboard Logic Volume II. As your attorney I advise you to take the test. Another way to tell if you have learned the material is to do a self-test by going through the book and playing the material from memory. Whoa. Does that mean...rote memorization?? No Bevis. Just build the chords, scales and arpeggios yourself. You have a program now. If you can remember the process, you won't have to memorize each and every one. Furthermore, if you build them often enough, you'll recall them with no trouble anyway. In fact, the goal here is that you be able to build any chord, scale or arpeggio possible by simply combining music formulas and fretboard forms.

Where do we go from here? My accountants, Fleecem and Finagle, highly recommend Volume III Applications - Creative and Analytical. But those weasels are only in it for the money. Do they care that five years went into trying to develop a logical conclusion for the series? I think not. They're greedheads, hosers and philistines. Besides, Vol. III's a lot harder than the first two, and who needs that? And anyway, sooner or later you're going to have to cut the cord and just get out there in front of an audience. When you do, you aren't gonna be thinking about what you learned in some book - I'll guarantee you that. On the other hand, Fretboard Logic is a three-part guitar method. In order to "see the whole elephant" you need it the same as the others. One good thing about it is that it's divided up into a lot of different sections so you can study things that are of interest to you, in whatever order you like.

All right, that's all for now. Oh, one last thing. There is an old saying that goes something to the effect that you should be careful about what you wish for, because you might very well get your wish. I would like to paraphrase that a little. Think carefully about what you spend your valuable time doing. Whatever it is, even if it is something as difficult as playing the guitar, you will probably get good at it.

Twenty Questions

1. What is the difference between scale forms and lead patterns?
2. Which two chord forms are used to identify the lead patterns?
3. Name a primary distinction between playing lead and just playing scales.
4. Which of the basic chord forms has no uninvolved or nucleus form?
5. In order to build chords on guitar, what two basic tools do you need?
6. What is an arpeggio?
7. What is a chord formula?
8. What is the difference between a scale and a mode?
9. Write the formulas for the triads and sevenths from memory.
10. What is a reliable method for obtaining greater velocity?
11. What three components define the song form?
12. Which two types of chords are considered symmetrical?
13. What's the difference between the electric, acoustic and classical guitars?
14. What is the term for a musical sequence of chords?
15. What are the tonalities? What is a mode?
16. What are the three common types of minor scales?
17. The guitar's tuning provides two fundamentally different approaches to playing in the different modes. What are they?
18. What does the term "quatrads" refer to?
19. What is the term for two notes played together specified by the distance between them?
20. Name the three types of forms or patterns that occur naturally on the guitar fretboard as a direct result of its tuning.

Twenty Answers

- 1) The scale forms are irregular finger patterns that stay in one position and the lead patterns are regular finger patterns that move from position to position. P. 17
- 2) The C form and the G form. P. 23, 24
- 3) Phrasing. P. 44
- 4) The D form. P. 2
- 5) The chord's formula and the order of the degrees of the CAGED chords. P. 1
- 6) A chord that is played like a scale - one note after another. P. 31
- 7) Odd number note groups with the various alterations that identify each chord type. P. 1
- 8) A scale is a succession of notes of a Key, as opposed to a Chord which is the simultaneous sounding of the notes. A Mode differs from a Scale in that a tonal orientation is specified instead of assumed. P. 30
- 9)

Major:	1 3 5	
Minor:	1 b3 5	
Augmented:	1 3 #5	
Diminished:	1 b3 b5	P. 1
Major seventh:	1 3 5 7	
Minor seventh:	1 b3 5 b7	
Augmented seventh:	1 3 #5 b7	
Diminished seventh:	1 b3 b5 bb7	
Dominant seventh:	1 3 5 b7	
Minor seventh b5:	1 b3 b5 b7	P. 7
- 10) Play for longer uninterrupted periods of time instead of short quick bursts. P. 42
11. Lyrics, melody and harmony. P. 50
12. Augmented and diminished. P. 5,6
13. The electric burns longer. (Whoeee... I'm on a roll.)
14. Chord progression. P. 1
15. Major and Minor. P. 24. A group of notes with a specific tone orientation. P. 25
16. Natural, harmonic, and melodic. P. 25
17. Scale Forms and Lead Patterns. P. 24
18. Four note chords, usually called sevenths. P. 8
19. Intervals. P. 5
20. Chord forms, scale forms and lead patterns. Vol. 1

About the Author

Somebody said "Life is what happens while your busy making other plans." After seeing Woodstock, Bill Edwards decided there was nothing funnier than blowing away a few hundred thousand people with some rock and roll guitar and then walking off stage with a watermelon.

*"Thank you for all your help in the study and the interpretation of the guitar and how to approach it musically and with heart. It's good to have someone treat you with respect and not go thru so much to bull---- you through their own denial & ignorance. Thank you Jesus for hearing my prayer for Bill who was instrumental in removing all the guff I've payed for in so many other so-called guitar method books." Vaughn Shepherd
Nova Scotia Canada*

"These Volumes are very simple, powerful, incredible & excellent for beginners as well as advanced guitar players of [the] world."

Yogender K. Verma New Delhi India

"I also wanted to let you know that your revealing of the logic in guitar playing is just what I've been looking for, for 21 years. I now know I will learn."

E. Jones Greensboro NC

**"I Love Fretboard Logic!"
Stewart Heatter Los Angeles CA**

"Vol. I was excellent. By the time you receive this letter, my money order for Vol. II should have already crossed your desk. Keep up the great work."

Tim Lipscomb Washington PA

*"This is the best book. Really. Fabulous."
Carole Harrison Austin TX*

**"Thanks for an absolutely wonderful series of books." Dave Tomanovich
Middletown OH**

"You've changed my world and your going to change other's worlds and the way they look at the instrument over the long haul. I don't know how anyone who looks at your system and teaches is ever going to go back to Mel Bay, Alfred's or any of that stuff." John Gilmore Osawatomise KS

"I have read all three of your Fretboard Logic books many times and am amazed at how using that system has increased my musical know how. It is so much clearer working towards the musical ideas from a working knowledge of an instrument rather than the reverse. I supplemented your curriculum with two semesters of guitar lessons, but the lessons would never have shown me anything useful if I didn't know which questions to ask, those questions came from your books. Now I am even impressed at how far I have come."

Brian Owens Kansas City MO

"I have just received the two books (Fretboard Logic 1 & 2), and they are great. Thank you very much. Keep up the good work.
Bernd Ludwig Bangkok Thailand

**"I have thoroughly learned a lot from Fretboard Logic I. Please send Fretboard Logic II. Thank you for making my guitar more user friendly. If I follow all of your books and learn how to play as you direct, I am headed toward guitar greatness."
John Lyle Topeka KS**

"Please send me a copy of the new Fretboard Logic Volume III, Applications - Creative and Analytical. I loved Volumes I & II; they were the most straightforward and practical guitar books that I have ever purchased. Thanks!"
Frank L. Roe Lee's Summit MO

"Well, I would say that "Fretboard Logic", volumes I & II are unlike anything I have read before...I do feel I am on to something. So I would be very glad if you sent me "Fretboard Logic" Vol. III in which I am sure to find some new treasures."
Jose Ballester Toulouse France

"Vol. I was excellent, awesome."
Vince Loglisci Melbourne FL

***"Thanks a million. I love Vol I & II - they are just superb!"
Barry G Hardy Kogarah
Australia***

**"I can't express the excitement I feel as I am getting to understand the guitar fretboard in a very real sense. My musical goals are now within reach and I have a way of getting there. At some point, while working through the second book, I will start putting together chord solos and working on finding a voice and style of my own... I decided to learn everything you offer in your books. Everything in your books has a useful purpose and I thank you for it. The comments from other customers in your books are NOT an exaggeration, they are right on target."
Tony Beltran Columbia Hts. MN**

**"The best and only book of its kind! I've been playing - seems like 27 yrs or so..."
Tom Eaton Irving TX**

**"Even though I am a guitar school graduate, I never could grasp how things were related on the fretboard. Modes, scales etc., didn't make sense to me. Things are much clearer after reading Vol. I! I'd like to get Vol. II."
Dana Miller Minneapolis MN**

Volume II is a tool box for guitar players of all styles.

"Volume II is an excellent presentation.
Congratulations"

A.W. Kruger Naperville IL

"I was sent Vol. II before I by accident, but it is too well written and informative to send back."

George Giovino Sarasota FL

"A friend has loaned me Logic 1 & 2 and man it's great. Good luck to you, it's a great thing you're doing."

Barry Olivier Berkeley CA

"...I am ordering Fretboard Logic Vol. 2... I am more than pleased with Vol. I."

Brad Hawkins Philadelphia PA

*"Your method is definitely the most logical method I have ever heard of (I've been playing for 25 years).
Ray Scioscia Centerville IA*

"Thank you for Vols 1 and 2. They were excellent. Most of the material covered was familiar, things I had learned or tried to learn at one time or another. Your books covered the material in a very logical fashion and provided a clear framework on which to place everything. At first I was very suspicious of the testimonials, however, they proved to be much more than hype. Keep up the good work."

Philip Blocksom Osaka Japan

"I'm finally catching on. With this added confidence I'm able to stick with the instrument (put in the practice time) no matter how busy the schedule. After 2 previous aborted attempts over many years, your insights are pure gold."

Dr. Raymond M. DeCastro Jensen Beach FL

"Fretboard Logic Volume 1 is a learning experience. Please send me Volume 2."

Carl Taylor Littleton NC

"They were the first things that made the guitar easy for me to understand."

Tina Stanise New York NY

"Just Fantastic. I'm a golf pro and I've been looking for a method that teaches the way I do... I've been playing for more than 25 years. It makes me sick that I didn't have it back then. I've taken a quantum leap in the last two weeks."

Stu Raymond, Naples FL

"I learned more in a month with Fretboard Logic than in the last five years of what all these other guys who are supposed to know more have been telling me. I thoroughly enjoyed it." Donnie Vick Lake Wales FL

"The things I understood of Vol. II were very good. It was the information I was looking for. Except I very quickly realized that I had limited myself a great deal by not ordering both volumes from the start. Your approach to get the information across seems unique. Why aren't the music stores carrying your books?"

Roger Simms Fayetteville AR

ISBN 0-9624770-1-X



9 780962 477010

51495>



ISBN 0-9624770-1-X U.S. 14.95
Canada/Intl. 15.95

Fireboard Logic III

Applications - Creative and Analytical



A Guide To Interrelated Guitar and Music Concepts

Bill Edwards

Fretboard Logic

Volume III

Bill Edwards

Edwards Music Publishing
305 St. Augustine Ave
Temple Terrace FL 33617

Dedication

For Annalee with the faraway eyes, and Evelyn who is so far away.

Special thanks to Elizabeth Childon, Eric Statham
and John Hudzietz.

Copyright 1993 by Bill Edwards

All Rights Reserved

Teachers who wish to use this method may purchase it at a special discount by calling or writing to the address below. We now keep a national database for student referrals. To be included as a teacher in this database please contact us at:

Edwards Music Publishing
305 St. Augustine Ave
Temple Terrace, FL 33617-7229
(813) 985-2689
FAX: (813) 985-0554
EMAIL: EMUPUB@AOL.COM

Printed in the United States of America



Education is the process of moving
from cocksure ignorance to
thoughtful uncertainty.

Utvich



Contents

Preface.....	v
Introduction.....	vi
Systems.....	1
Menu.....	3
Analysis.....	4
Creativity.....	6
Learning and Memory.....	8
Theory.....	16
Notation Formats.....	17
Rhythm.....	23
Keys.....	29
Intervals.....	33
Technique.....	44
Technical Development Exercises.....	46
Articulation Techniques.....	51
Rhythm Playing.....	55
Forms and Progression.....	56
Chord Progression.....	62
Rhythm Playing.....	77
Lead Playing.....	83
Rhythmic Phrasing.....	85
Iterative Phrasing.....	90
Melodic Phrasing.....	98
Music Styles.....	102
Classical Baroque and Romantic.....	105
Blues.....	107
Folk and Bluegrass.....	109
Rock and Roll.....	110
Hard Rock and Metal.....	112
Guitar Arrangement.....	114
Chord Melody.....	115
Fingerpicking.....	116
Sonics.....	120
Guitar Tuning.....	124
Coda.....	133
Recommended Reading/Bibliography.....	134
Glossary.....	135
By the Author.....	143

Preface

In the film "The Karate Kid," an old master has been persuaded to take on a young boy as a student. But first he must prove his desire to learn and his ability to take instructions. Before they can begin the lessons, the inscrutable one asks for help with a few things around the house, and is very particular about the way these tasks are performed. This goes on for some time and the kid's faith is tested along with his endurance. After what seemed an eternity of painting fences, sanding floors and polishing cars, he figures that the old geezer has suckered him for free labor and gotten his house and cars renovated in the deal. The kid finally decides he's not getting any useful information in the ass-kicking department and starts to walk. At this point the old man reveals how he had been mastering the fundamentals all along. I loved that part.

Volume I of the Fretboard Logic series was an explanation of how the guitar works and it was pretty easy. Volume II was a guitar-oriented approach to the tonal elements of music, and it wasn't very easy. Now you'll be exposed to a wide range of interrelated guitar and music concepts and it'll have nothing to do with easy. But, like the kid, maybe after your faith and endurance are tested, you will have a greater impact on people.

Our destination is never a place but rather
a new way of looking at things.

Henry Miller

Introduction

The Fretboard Logic series originated because of a discovery that there was a specific pattern organization to the playing area of the guitar that was only partially understood by most players. The first book revealed these patterns and relationships as a result of the pitch selection of the open strings, and independent of any musical considerations such as theory, technique or style. This pattern organization is unique in the field of musical instrument design. It can be considered the instrument's interface, and the one aspect of guitar playing that all the others have in common, and so should be learned first. Because of the guitar's unusual tuning, EADGBE, and its intervalic result (4th, 4th, 4th, 3rd, 4th), three fundamental and integral form or pattern types occur: chord forms, scale forms, and lead patterns. There are five basic chord forms, five basic scale forms and two basic lead patterns. The chordal facet of this pattern organization has long been referred to as the "CAGED System." Volume I presented all three aspects as a *unified operating system* for guitar players regardless of style or level.

In Volume II the tonal aspects of music were reduced to their most basic elements in a guitar orientation. When considering pitch alone, groups of notes can only be played two ways: either simultaneously or consecutively, and are expressed as vertical or horizontal groupings when notated. When played together they are known collectively as chords, and there are two main families which have either three or four different notes. When the notes are played separately, they are known as scales (or modes) and there are two primary (major and minor) and several secondary (modes and variations) types. A third element, arpeggios, is derived when chord tones are played separately like scales. These basic tonal elements were presented in the context of the fretboard pattern organization of the guitar as outlined in Volume I, so that they could be *constructed* by combining the music formula with a fretboard form or pattern. Learning them in the context of the fretboard organization of Vol. I eliminated the overwhelming task of having to memorize vast numbers of seemingly unrelated patterns (as is the case with most guitar books) in order to have a complete tonal vocabulary. The different types of chords, scales, and arpeggios make up what can be considered the essential working tools of the musician.

At the moment we decided to become guitar players, we entered a universe in which various systems were already in place by the time we arrived. We can choose to ignore them and continually reinvent the wheel, and rediscover fire, or come to grips with them and pursue higher objectives. As varied and numerous as they are, these systems fall into two main categories: those that are man-made and those that occur in nature. An example of a man-made system is the twelve tone system whereby each octave is divided into twelve equal parts. A related system that occurs naturally is the overtone series whereby each different tone is comprised of numerous parts (partials) which give each sound a unique kind of acoustical "fingerprint."

The overall strategy for maintaining cohesion in Vol. III amongst the myriad fields of information is to delineate and define them within a hierarchal set of systems. That way, anytime a new area of endeavor is encountered, it will be perceived as an integral part of the whole, instead of just another in a seemingly endless line of disjointed sections and random events. This hierarchy is presented in the form of a guitarist's *menu*, where the interrelated facets of the guitar and music are presented for selection from available choices to be varied and combined with others.

Our tactics for implementing this approach will be the practical application of the material presented in Volumes I and II from two points of view - Creativity and Analysis. Analysis poses the question, "What is?" Creativity poses the question, "What can be?" The tonal elements of Vol. II can be considered the *what* of music, as in what is being played, and the rhythmic, melodic, technical, etc., aspects of Vol. III should be considered the *how*, as in how it is being played. To further the analogy, Vol. I showed *where* it can be played.

As a practical matter, guitarists, like other musicians, usually find themselves in the position of either replicating the works of others or else trying to develop something of their own. These seemingly opposite types of circumstances often require similar capabilities expressed differently. The idea is to enable the guitarist to approach either type of situation equipped with the right tools, skills and materials for the job, whether it is to grasp the workings of someone else's music or to construct his or her own from raw materials.

The guitar and its music will be explored here in a different context than what you may have been used to. Any guitarist who's played for a while has learned how to acquire the music he or she wants to play, usually by reading or by ear. Volume III attempts to present you with the means to understand what you are playing.

In the preceding volumes, the scope of each was relatively narrow and the focus was on areas of comprehension that plagued most players because of its subtlety in the first case, and its seeming enormity in the second. From here on, our aperture of awareness must widen to encompass the many different directions that different individuals may wish to explore. In Vols. I and II, in the interest of cohesion and as the difficulty increased, the structure of the books was *linear*, in that each section built on what preceded it. Vol. III assumes that you have absorbed and are functional with that material so that you can pursue more advanced goals and the structure is non-linear. In other words, going directly from one section to the next isn't necessarily required for comprehension. That will be up to each individual. The use of the term *advanced* in this case means the ability to combine and vary basic elements in the creative context, and to recognize and reproduce them in the analytical context. It is not intended to convey the relative difficulty of the work as a whole or in part. However, as before, there will be both mental and physical challenges.

The overall philosophy of the series is that it is not effective to spend all your time stockpiling billions of bits of information for later usage. It makes more sense to put just a few things to immediate use in a practical application, rather than remain a warehouse for truckloads of unused ideas, techniques, and abilities. To that end, Vol. III provides material which is intended to be a vehicle for the guitarist to better understand the music with which he or she as individuals are involved.

Systems

Whenever a person makes a decision to learn the guitar, they enter innocently, a vast network of interrelated systems that existed long before that decision was made. This section is an attempt to come to terms with a few of those systems, and put them into some kind of perspective with one another. The most fundamental division of those systems already in place is the natural vs. man made systems.

Natural - Physical and Physiological

The natural systems can be divided into the physical, or outer world, and our human physiology, or our inner world. We use the science of physics to understand our outer world and acoustics is the branch that deals with low frequency vibrations or those within the range of human hearing. Acoustics is the science of sound which forms a basis by which we are furnished explanations for many of the properties of music. The physiological aspects we are concerned with are the ways in which we perceive and relate to sound in general; organized sound, or music, in particular. A property of sound as it pertains to the way we perceive music, is the overtone series. Overtones are a naturally occurring series of intervals, which give each sound its timbre, or individual quality by which we distinguish it from others. Every sound has overtones, or harmonics, and sounds produced by musical instruments can be distinguished by a harmonic "fingerprint" in the form of the relative strength of its overtones. The physical properties of a musical instrument determine the quality of its tone or timbre, and therefore to some extent, how we perceive the music to be played on it. The tonal qualities produced by the different types of guitars are interpreted by the listener as a kind of precondition to the music played on them. The cultural and emotive character of music produces physiological responses in us that are both separate to our social milieu and common to us as people. In other words, you and your grandparents may not share the same tastes in popular music, but you probably responded similarly to the "shark approach" theme in the movie "Jaws."

Man Made - Instrumental and Musical

The first division to be made in the man made systems are those systems that pertain to the instrument and those that pertain to music. The physical properties and design of an instrument determine how sounds are produced and controlled. In each (non-electronic) musical instrument, sound is generated when an elastic body is caused to vibrate. The elastic bodies include stretched materials such as hides, metal, plastic, etc., enclosed columns of air such as are found in windblown instruments, elongated tines and tubes, and all manner of materials of varying densities and shapes. These tone generators are generally accompanied by a device or devices which both amplify and control the vibration. In the guitar, the vibrating bodies are in the form of strings usually made of metal, or plastic. The amplification has traditionally been in the form of resonating chambers of wood or other suitable materials, but modern electronics has enabled significant improvements in this area. The control of the frequency of the vibrations has been achieved by means of strips of wood, metal, etc., termed frets, placed at specified intervals along a playing surface of the instrument termed the fretboard. The spacing of these frets are a result of compromises between the optimal tuning given the overtone series, and the optimal functionality given the twelve tone system and the way we use it to produce music in note groupings termed keys.

Systems

The primary man made guitar system, meaning the one most essential to the player, is the pattern organization which results from the way the instrument is tuned string by string. It becomes an interface for the player to more adequately operate the instrument as a polyphonic, given the limitation of four fingers and a thumb on the fretting hand. The primary man made music system is the twelve tone system whereby the tones within a range termed an octave, or a frequency and its double, are separated into twelve relatively even divisions. The guitar's tuning system should be distinguished from the even tempered system of tuning used by all (western) instruments. Even tempering specifies the exact frequencies of those twelve tones relative to one another such that certain resulting intervals are more accurate than others. Overlaying the even tempered tuning system is the music interface called a key. A key is a system of fewer than twelve notes, usually seven, in a specific intervallic sequence such that one is equivalent to another from a given starting note, termed a tonic, target note or keynote. In another sense, it is the intervallic relationship of tones with a common center which we perceive similarly as humans by virtue of a common aesthetic, or physiological interpretation. From this reduction and centering we term a key, are derived the tonal materials we use to produce music. Those tonal materials are the interval, chord, scale, and arpeggio. Each of these tone groupings are derived from a key individually.

Beyond the tonal materials are the second half of the musical equation, the rhythmic materials. The time values, beats, etc., of music are, in effect, its life force. They give music its dynamic qualities and represent a completely separate set of systems from the tone groups.

Intervals, chords, scales, and arpeggios are among the basic tonal units which, when combined with rhythmic materials produce what we perceive as music, which when further combined with other influences, including cultural or social influences, produce music of various styles.

The menu which follows is an attempt to arrange and correlate the various systems and subsystems which are related to the guitar and music.

Guitar Player Menu

Fretboard Forms

Chord Forms
Scale Forms
Lead Patterns

Tonal Materials

Target Notes
Intervals
Chords
Scales
Arpeggios

Rhythmic Materials

Durations
Beats
Measures
Tempo
Accents
Syncopation
Rubato

Tonality/Modality

Major
Minor
Dorian
Phrygian
Lydian
Mixolydian
Locrian
Chromaticism
Variations

Melodic Material

Intervallic Motion
Scale Segments
Arpeggio Segments
Compound Segments

Harmonic Material

Key Areas
Chord Progression
Cadences
Modulation
Secondary Dominants
Diminished Chords
Function Shifting
Tonality Shifting
Chromaticism

Arrangement

Guitar in a Group
Rhythm Comping
Riffing
Lead Playing
Solo Guitar
Trad. Voice Leading
Alternating Bass Style
Counterpoint
Chord Melody Style

Right Hand Styles

Pick Style
Finger/Nail Style
Nashville Style

Articulation Techs.

Pull-Offs
Hammer-Ons
Slides
Mutes
Harmonics
Bends
Tremolos
Vibratos

Iterations

Fours
Threes
Twos
Ones
Multiples
Direction
Ascending
Descending

Sonics and Effects

Amplification
Tone & Equalization
Reverb & Delay
Distortion
Flanging
Chorus
Phase Shifting
Compression
Vibrato
Tremolo
Harmonizers
Wah
Volume
Tremolo Bar

Music Styles

Classical
Baroque
Romantic
Flamenco and Spanish
Popular Music
Folk and Bluegrass
Blues
Rock & Roll
Hard Rock & Metal
Country
Jazz
Fusions

Guitar Type

Nylon String Classical
Steel String Acoustic
Semi-Hollow Body El.
Solid Body Electric
Hybrids

Physiological Responses

Hypnotized/Head-Banging
Inspired/Religious Fervor
Exhilarated/Breathless
Excited/Dancing Shoes
Unmoved/Hesitant
Bored/Disinterested
Embarrassment/Discomfort
Worry/Unease
Somber/Moody
Sad/Shaken/Miserable

Systems

Natural
Physical World
Low Frequency Vib.
Overtone Series
Man-Made
Twelve Tone System
Equal Temperament
Key

Analysis

Analysis is the separation of a whole into its constituent parts. In the field of chemistry, the term also applies to determining the proportions of those parts. The concept of (a reduction to) elements and their proportions provides us with both a qualitative and quantitative means for understanding music. In order to provide an understanding the different types of guitar music, the common elements are listed in a menu fashion. This way, the music styles that you as an individual are interested in can be seen in terms of how each piece is *composed* of these elements, and then consider them in terms of each element's relative significance to the overall result. The process of analysis began with the fretboard geometry of Vol. I, where the guitar's patterns were separated from everything else, and continued into Vol. II where the primary tone groupings were isolated and examined as individual sections of a larger whole. When separating music into component parts, we must always be concerned with the plurality of the systems with which we're involved. At the very least, the musical nature of things must always be balanced with the guitaristic nature. As guitar players, we are always having to think in parallel - the issues of music must always be expressed on the guitar for application's sake, and what is executed on the guitar must always be translated into musical meanings for comprehension's sake.

The method of analysis presented here varies from the conventional approach in a number of ways. First, it is guitar oriented in that there are things here that won't apply to other instruments. Second, it takes into account both traditional and more modern techniques and capabilities. In the past, music analysis has been a process of separating and categorizing primarily the pitch and time values, plus such secondary considerations as tempo, dynamics, and other expressive characteristics. Some might suppose then, that music written in standard notation is reduced to its most basic elements and therefore analyzed. Not so. Standard notation specifies much but explains little. Notating can, however, be a vehicle by which pitch, time, and other values can be interpreted. Our method for analysis will use a macro-micro perspective whereby we'll try to see the larger picture with sharpness and contrast without losing focus in the minutia.

As a matter of fact, there are a great many guitarists who are and will remain satisfied with simply being able to function well enough to perform for audiences. For them it is enough to be appreciated as performers. Nothing wrong with that. But since they usually only have a superficial understanding of the things they play, they run into comprehension problems when they try to grasp what made it worth the effort in the first place. At least part of the reason for this has to be that they don't have the necessary tools, methods, or experience to deal with it adequately. Another reason is the time and effort of the learning process itself. If they have learned by a reading method, they are usually absorbed with the ongoing effort of converting and retaining written symbols into dynamically played tone groups, with little mental energy left over for anything besides committing it to memory and polishing it up through repetition. If they've cast their lot with learning by ear, they have more than a passing familiarity with trial and error, and that can be frustrating, tedious, and exhausting as well. On the other hand, understanding the different facets and levels of what we are playing makes us more than guitarists - it makes us musicians.

Consider our eyes and ears as sensory input devices. Learning by ear and learning by reading symbols are equally valid because it is the brain that finally sorts

Analysis

out the information for further use. As far as validity is concerned, maybe its just the old left brain-right brain argument again. There are advantages and disadvantages to both ways. Learning to analyze music will be beneficial regardless of your preferences with regard to input. The object, perhaps, is to be able to think on the level of the composer who thought enough of his ideas to commit them to some form of media in the first place.

Functioning within the fretboard pattern organization and constructing the tonal elements seemed to be the La Brea tar pits of comprehension for a lot of guitarists. To keep from getting bogged down in the next levels, we're going to separate the other aspects and then recombine them for learning purposes. The metaphor of the Chinese menu is how we'll relate to the different areas of involvement. In essence, we've provided sets and subsets of the guitar player's tools, materials, and methods, and you can select from these possibilities to understand the music you like. In this fashion, you'll be able to analyze other peoples music and later reverse the process and try to develop some ideas of your own as a matter of creative selection and variation from available choices.

It will soon become obvious that Vol. III does not aspire to be merely a collection of pieces to be learned for performance. If you want to learn a particular piece of music, to paraphrase the slogan, just learn it. Our efforts are in the direction of enabling you to make sense out of things, ie., no more "guitarist see - guitarist do." The idea is to offer various things of significance for guitarists ready to cross over to a higher level of understanding in different areas. If what is being demonstrated is obvious to one guitarist, it may be just on the edge of comprehension for another, and completely out of reach of yet another. Although each of us is limited by our own experience (and lack of it) we constantly rely upon our frames of reference to further our abilities and understanding. The ability to reduce a piece of music to its component parts can enable us to understand and appreciate the thinking of other composers.



Imagination is more important than knowledge.

Albert Einstein

Creativity

When it comes to creativity, people usually fall on either side of a line that divides what you might call intellectual optimists and pessimists. The intellectual pessimist is perhaps somewhat over-educated and easily sees the copying done by their less insightful and shorter-memored counterparts. The intellectual optimist views the world as an oyster, and doesn't need a lot of rules and regulations to weigh him down while he scours oceans of opportunities for creative pearls. Somewhere in between the soft-heads who think that every little thing they do is new and special, and those hard-heads who say with complete certainty that there's nothing new under the sun, is a world of learning and imagination that propels us into the future insight by insight.

The question becomes how to determine what constitutes truly creative effort and what falls short. From my own nebulous experiences with the invention business and the PTO (Patent and Trademark Office), I learned a few lessons that may be of use in addressing that question or at least better understanding what's at stake. As you can probably imagine, along with a few truly original ideas, the PTO gets a lot of useless and preposterous stuff sent their way. They also get scams that are simply attempts to corner a particular market for profit since patents can be very profitable things. On the other hand, it costs money to get patents, so you don't see too many people trying to simply reinvent the wheel. However, a lot of folks wouldn't hesitate to retread it and submit it for a 17 year monopoly to manufacture.

So how does the PTO separate the wheat from the chaff? First of all they categorize the different areas of endeavor so that their examiners don't have to be experts in every possible field. Such categories include mechanical designs, chemical compounds, electronics, plant hybrids, etc. The important part of the examination process deals with an invention meeting three simple tests: utility, novelty and non-obviousness; simple criteria, but not easily understood or met.

The utility part means that first of all, it has to function as described, and do something useful. This is a means of preventing people from getting into what could be termed the "patent application business" where they take out a patent on every idea under the sun and wait till something gets produced and try to license it as their intellectual property. The bottom line is that you don't get patents (or copyrights) on ideas per se, but on *the expression of an idea*, and if you don't remember anything else, remember that. The difference between an idea and the form that idea takes is a fundamental creative issue for the PTO.

The novelty part means an invention must exhibit a newness and uniqueness that separates it from what already exists. The novelty aspect of the patent process is somewhat subjective on the part of the examiners, but they work hard to keep from looking like idiots to their bosses and review boards, and yet still issue patents where merited. The novelty aspect of an invention is more than just common sense, but in fact is not too difficult to judge since they can look up whether it or anything similar has been done before. Not only must the examiners use their experience and training to judge whether an invention meets the newness criteria, but the patent applicant must actually disclose all he knows pertaining to the subject, where he learned it, and how his invention improves on everything else in the field.

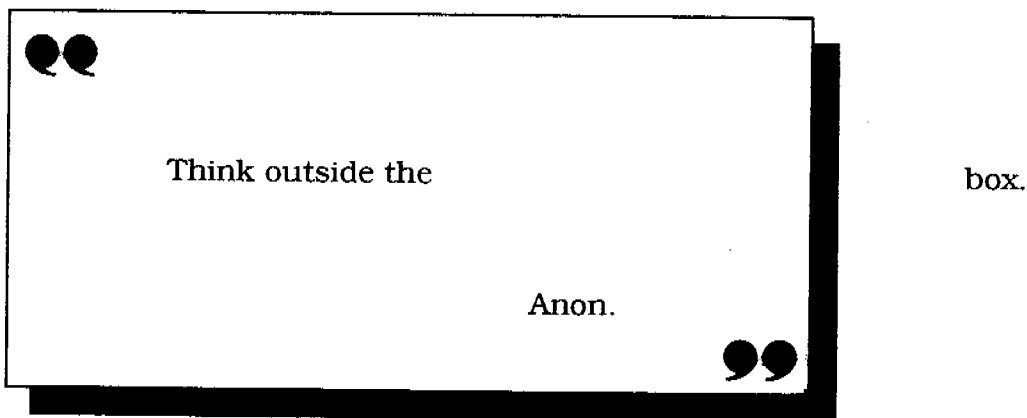
The non-obviousness criteria is by far the most subtle part of a patent

Creativity

application. It can also be the most hotly contested when an examiner disallows claims based upon it. Non-obviousness means that an average person termed "skilled in the art" wouldn't have thought of the invention. This is a kind of creative leap that separates true imagination from ordinary smarts.

The criteria of novelty, utility, and non-obviousness are certainly not necessary to demonstrate originality in music, but it is a pretty good overall strategy. In the music business, our creative output usually conforms to a particular genre such as the song, sonata, concerto, opera, etc. Most guitarists will find themselves writing songs as a vehicle for their self expression. As musicians we'll either be working solo, or with others. In the case of collaborative efforts, the creative process can take on new dimensions. In a larger sense, the job is to come up with new sounds and new ways of saying old things.

The idea of creativity can perhaps be viewed as an awareness of available resources rather than some unattainable genius ability conferred upon a precious few individuals. There is ample evidence that creativity is not limited to the super intelligent or gifted. In other words if you have a place to work, plus the raw materials, tools, and techniques, creativity can be a matter of choices from available options. After all, what is it that constitutes the difference between what is considered advanced and basic? It's possible that *advanced* guitaring should be considered nothing more than creative combinations and variations of the basics. To that end you are invited to explore the guitar player menu. These options will include resources, tools, and methods. From the menu we can make conscious selections of what is available until the process becomes familiar and more essential considerations can be explored.



I'm not certain, but I think the above quote may have originated years ago when a popular brain teaser was making the rounds. Just in case there is anyone left who hasn't seen it yet, I'm going to add it to the mix. The object of the puzzle is to connect all the dots with only four straight lines and without lifting your writing implement. If you absolutely give up and can't get it, the solution is on page 15.



Learning and Memory

As time has gone by, it has become clear that in order for progress to be made, it is necessary to back up and get involved with things that could not be anticipated at the onset. All the time this series was being developed, it seemed that there was something missing - perhaps a common thread to hold everything together. At some point the universal characteristic became evident and that was, at its essence, playing guitar is a learning experience. Seems less than earth shattering, maybe, until you try to define what learning really is. We all recognize when we know something, but we seldom contemplate the things we don't know, because we aren't sufficiently aware to consider them in the first place. It is easy to take for granted the learning process. For example, why does it work when it works, and why doesn't it *always* work? As teachers and students, we have to accept that in order for better progress to be made, both parties have to become progressively better at what we do. Assuming one teaches guitar, how can he or she do this job better without at some point focusing on the teaching itself? On the other hand, how can one learn guitar, without also knowing more about the learning part? Monkey-see, monkey-do only goes so far.

There are some things that should be taught and some things that are better left up to each student to determine for him or herself. Knowing which is which is not easy. What is easy for both parties, is falling into that trap that insists "The right way is this way" - meaning *my* way or more commonly, the way *I* learned. An example of a fundamental approach is whether a student should use a pick or his fingers to vibrate the strings with his right hand. Many instructors have no hesitation instructing students to do it one way or another not realizing that to a great extent it is the teacher's own personal preference and is not really a matter of what the student needs or finds easiest. Even sensitive teachers would suggest this is simply a matter of what style of music is being played but that ignores the innumerable exceptions that make the rules.

Deciding what and what not to teach is no mean feat, and it pervades every level of endeavor. For example, say I recommend that a student use a pick, do I also say what kind of pick to use and which fingers to hold it with; how to hold it, and whether to aim the leading edge upward or downward and so on ad infinitum? I believe these are among the things that should be decided and implemented for oneself, and then constantly audited and improved upon. The catch is, that to accomplish certain things, it is necessary to follow certain guidelines. For example, in order to be able to, say, play a "false harmonic," it is necessary to hold the pick in such a way that the side of the thumb contacts the string on the way past. You could read an entire book about it, look at a thousand pictures, watch the teacher do it over and over and still, you'd have to employ a certain amount of trial and error until you can make it happen for yourself. Every student should consciously and aggressively critique what teachers teach for its intrinsic value, relevance and rightness, and remember that reduction to practice, as the patent office terms it, is his or her own responsibility. If you don't necessarily agree with the way things are done here or anywhere else, try another way. To some extent, it boils down to who makes the decisions, and ultimately we each make our own.

With that said, I want to try to give you a value for the learning experience and a perspective you may not have considered. I haven't met too many people who don't have a lot of day to day problems, and with few exceptions, think that most of those problems could be solved with *money* and lots of it.

Learning and Memory

In growing up in our era (and most others I suspect) we've grown accustomed to believe that money is THE THING. Granted, with perhaps the exception of the computer, it is our most evolved tool. But if you think about it, intelligence is worth way more than money. If you have (the right) intelligence then you can get money, but not the other way around or else you wouldn't always hear about fools and their money being soon parted. But what exactly is intelligence? Most psychologists agree that more than anything else, it is the ability to learn. If you can learn, then you can have intelligence to get money and almost anything else you need. So when it comes down to it, learning is THE THING.

So what is this thing, learning? If, like most people, you've never actually tried to put it into words, learning can be considered the process by which changes in behavior result from experience or practice. This behavior includes any response by means of feelings, thoughts, or actions. This also includes muscular and also glandular activities, which we won't go into. I believe the essence here is change and its process. Changing the way we do things is fundamental to learning. The process varies.

It is also interesting to note that learning is not considered temporary. When we say, "Its like riding a bike - once you learn, you never really forget," we are referring to a change in our abilities that is more or less permanent. Learning and memory are integral to one another. When you learn to make a G chord, as in when you learn to ride a bike, definitive learning has occurred since you have changed what you can do through experience and practice, and you'll never completely forget how it is done. On the other hand, I freely admit that I've recognized questions in Trivial Pursuit or on Jeopardy that I'd even heard the answers to before, and yet I miss them time and again. (Eg. from Trivial Pursuit: How many "bouncing Johnsons" were on the court for the 1986 NBA championship playoffs?) The problem, I believe, is that I don't have a place for many kinds of information in my frame of reference. I suppose I could try to memorize the answer for the next time but usually the questions weren't all that relevant to me. We shouldn't forget that we are products of an education system that features an emphasis on performance in the form of test taking, in which students are motivated to retain a broad range of surface information just long enough to make the grade. Later on we tend to forget what we studied for lack of application. True learning involves a permanent change in the way we do things.

It is generally accepted that there are at least four discernible types of learning. They are known as classical conditioning, instrumental conditioning, multiple response learning, and insight learning. In each of these methods there is something of value, so we'll examine what each type is first and then how it relates to us as guitar players.

Classical conditioning is the Pavlovian thing. In case you haven't yet heard of Pavlov, he was a Russian who experimented with dogs by ringing bells etc., at their feedings over a period of time so that the dogs would eventually "learn" to salivate any time the bell itself was rung. Ok, so we got into a gland thing. The key elements of classical conditioning are the stimulus, the response, and the reinforcer. Whenever the dogs learned to salivate to a bell, the reinforcer was the food, the stimulus was the bell and the the response was dog drool everywhere. This type of learning is noteworthy because the stimulus and the response can be of widely divergent natures and conditioning may still occur.

Learning and Memory

Instrumental conditioning is the type of learning usually associated with B. F. Skinner. It is also known as "shaping" and trial and error behavior. I heard a story about instrumental conditioning a long time ago, about a class of college kids who conspired to *shape* a novice professor. Before the first class they agreed that no one would respond to his lecture unless he happened to raise his voice, and then they'd all perk up for a short while. Throughout the period, the professor tried valiantly to engage his bored class until finally by the end of the class, he was pretty much yelling at the top of his lungs without realizing it. Mr. Skinner's research focused on an element termed an *operant* whereby an a learned response operates on the environment to produce an effect of some sort. Here's a sobering example to remember the next time you're squared off against a one-armed bandit in a Las Vegas casino. When a person plays a slot machine, the occasional chump change payoff (the operant) elicits the desired response of having the environment (you) put more money into it. Skinner used rats to demonstrate his theories on learning. He'd put a hungry rat with a willingness to learn into a cage with a lever connected to a food supply and pretty soon it could pass the bar exam. (Sorry, couldn't resist that one.) The term *shaping* refers to the proximate aspects of this type of learning. The rats wouldn't just walk up and stomp on the lever and when they did hit it accidentally, they didn't automatically put two and two together. The process was gradual and the rat's behavior was shaped to hit the lever as a means to get fed over a period of time. At first he was rewarded for being in close enough proximity to hit the lever without intending to. The intent resulted later as a learned response to the lever-food relationship.

Multiple response learning involves combining simple movement sequences together to create more complex chains of movement patterns. Learning to use a typewriter is an example of multiple response learning. An untrained typist will poke at individual keys and letters using only one or two fingers at first. This inefficient method must sooner or later be replaced by a system that specifies certain keys be struck with certain fingers from basic hand positions. Through repetition of this method, the typist is eventually able to type out words as wholes. The whole word level continues until sentences come together as wholes. Each level uses a combination of sequences derived from the previous levels until, if you're Isaac Azimov, you sit down at the typewriter and get up later with an entire book. Since rats don't type, they put 'em in mazes. When a rat is in a maze, he'll always come to a point at which he has to make a choice to, say, turn left or right and only one choice is correct. His learning is a sequence of correct turn choices combined and remembered. It is also notable that the beginning and the end of the maze is significantly easier to learn than the middle. This is true of many endeavors such as chess, jigsaw puzzles, and guess what else.

Insight learning occurs by understanding the separate components of a problem and their relationships to one another. Insight is often the result of pondering something for a period of time until all at once a not-so-obvious solution becomes apparent. We've all heard success stories where people say "The idea hit me like a bolt from the blue!" and the like. These types of statements serve to underscore the sudden impact this kind of learning can have on us. A psychologist named Wolfgang Kohler experimented with chimps and documented insight learning. The chimps were presented with out-of-reach food, a stick and a box. First they tried to jump to the food but it was too high. The stick was usually next but it was too short by itself. They would try the box by itself, but it was also too short. The chimps eventually tried

Learning and Memory

combinations of stick-jumping and box-jumping until after a while they tried the stick and the box together and reached the food. They were able to reason through the relationship between the stick and the box to solve the banana problem.

I have personally experienced insight learning on one or two occasions and I'm not convinced that it is always a totally conscious process. In one instance I'd been trying to design yet another gizmo for the guitar market. I wanted to convert one of those (Skil) cordless screw guns for use as a powered guitar string winder for music stores, roadies, and lazy rich kids. The problem was that they were geared for driving screws which meant high torque and low speed, but this was the opposite of what was needed for winding the strings onto the machine head posts. A friend of mine happens to be a brilliant mechanical engineer so I put the problem to him saying I wanted to double the speed and halve the torque (which was too specific, I later found out). He looked the gearbox over and quickly calculated that it couldn't be done without changing the shaft placement which was totally impractical, so I just dropped it altogether, or so I thought. A few weeks later as I was waking up in the morning, I *saw* the gears in an orientation that would do the job. It wasn't precisely double the ratio but in fact, higher with even lower torque that wouldn't break strings. I had the problem in the back of my mind as they say, and my subconscious produced an insight solution for me. The interesting thing in retrospect is that my conscious mind was convinced that it couldn't be done. Ooh, it makes me wonder.

What is the key to retaining what we have learned? First of all, it is pretty safe to say that in learning, we build upon what we already know. The concept of a *frame of reference* pertains to the background of firm knowledge necessary to be able to understand and apply new ideas and information. For example, you aren't going to have much luck solving calculus problems without having requisite skills in algebra. Before you can do algebra, you need to know the basic math functions of addition, subtraction, multiplication, etc. Basic math is a frame of reference for algebra, and algebra provides one for calculus. On the other hand, we've all seen teaching systems that I consider garbage because they dump information into students as if they were filling up a container, slam down the lid with a test, and expect the student to just understand and integrate it by sheer intellect (a variant of garbage-in, garbage-out). A presumption is usually made that the student already has the necessary frame of reference to proceed and that isn't always true. Beyond the necessity of a foundation upon which to build, there are three types of memory which we employ to retain what we learn. These are sensory memory, short term memory, and long term memory.

Sensory memory is the ability to retain information which we receive through sight, hearing, touch, smell, and taste. If you think about it, it's easy to remember the taste of ketchup, the smell of popcorn or the feel of sandpaper. The trails sparklers leave at night are a visual form of sensory memory. Short term memory is the *desktop* we use to hold a bit of unsupported information such as a telephone number we just looked up, just long enough to complete the call. Long term memory is that *file cabinet* of limitless amounts of information we store indefinitely. Long term memory takes three forms: procedural, episodic and semantic. Riding a bike is an example of procedural memory. Remembering where you bought your first guitar is an episodic recollection. Semantic (meanings) memory is the ability to recall facts and figures such as names, dates, meanings of words, etc.

Learning and Memory

The most difficult things to remember, not surprisingly, are the ones which haven't occurred yet. The term for things to remember to remember, is prospective memory. Prospective memory can be both short and long term, and has given rise to an entire industry of devices such as calendars, datebooks, and day planners, in many forms from low to very high tech, all designed to help us recall the future.

There is another, more delicate aspect of learning that I feel needs to be discussed, since it is at the very heart of both the process and what we are about. It's not something we usually think about when we think of the learning experience, but that may be because it isn't about *thought* processes per se. It concerns both how we *feel* about what we're learning, and how we feel when we're learning it. Our emotions play a pivotal role in the learning process and that can work for or against us. When we feel good about what we are learning, it doesn't matter how difficult the work is, because we will rise to the occasion. If we don't feel good about it it doesn't matter how easy it is either because it will impede our progress to the point where we may question the very purpose of our endeavors and the validity of continuing any further. When learning, we are also subject to our present moment feelings. It's hard to be tired, stressed out, nervous or in any way emotionally off balance, and have an effective learning experience. The solution is to monitor ourselves and try to determine if anything is getting in the way of our ability to learn effectively and deal with it as directly as we can. In case you hadn't noticed, we seldom learn under ideal conditions.

Have you ever noticed that we tend to think in specific terms when discussing thinking and more generally when speaking of our emotional state? We always say "What do you think?" and "How do you feel?" to describe our states of mind and heart. Saying "How do you think?" and "What do you feel?" seems to go against logical convention, but perhaps there is something to be gained by changing the emphasis so that we directly address the way we feel and are less certain about our thought processes.

Many learning disabilities (of various levels of severity) can be traced directly back to earlier emotional trauma of some sort or another. Few, if any of us, run the gauntlet of our education systems unscathed. In fact many of us get damaged by ignorant, insensitive or impatient teachers (and dare I say parents?) who fail to grasp that we each have special needs, speeds, and abilities. In fact, if we have had enough unsuccessful learning experiences, we may be pre-programmed to fail because we've lost confidence in ourselves, the teachers, or the system itself. Naturally, most of us manage to muddle on anyway, or if we're lucky, we get repaired by those wonderful people who take the job of teaching seriously, intelligently and sensitively. My personal observation is that the learning process is at once, stimulating and exhausting. What's more, when learning, we all put our self esteem on the line, and set ourselves up to occasionally look pretty stupid. If the teacher understands the amount of inherent risk and stress this involves, they may make the extra effort to try to relieve it and make the process more relaxed and enjoyable. Humor works wonders. Funny teachers, like most funny people, are exceptional human beings. And even if they aren't always funny, at least their attempts to redistribute the vulnerability will be appreciated by all but the most cynical - as long as it doesn't get in the way of the learning. The effects of learning are cumulative and restorative, and just one profoundly positive experience can more than make up for several so-called "failures."

Learning and Memory

I've always felt that excelling in the private and public joys of music is a good way for the rest of us to compensate for not having the physical and mental advantages of the jocks and honor students.

So, having discussed learning and memory in general, we'll now attempt to relate the different types to our more specific efforts with the guitar. Classical conditioning obviously works best for the classical guitar. (Heh. Just wanted to see if you were still awake.) Classical and instrumental conditioning are types of training where a significant amount of repetition is necessary for the learning to occur. They are reward-dependent but in different ways. Pavlov's experiments were a direct association between the sounds and the food repeated over a period of time. Skinner's boxes were an indirect association between the levers and the food that became a direct association after a sufficient number of repetitions. These types of learning have much in common with the technical or physical requirements of the guitar. There is no substitute for repetition in order to acquire physical coordination (conditioning) on a musical instrument and the guitar is certainly no exception. With very few exceptions, beginning students grossly underestimate the physical requirements of the guitar. As we each *approximate* rightness in our playing, we convert an indirect learning experience to a direct one. As stated earlier, many of the physical aspects of playing defy analysis and simply have to be attempted, failed and re-attempted to be understood. This process of constantly shaping our own behavior is even more essential than the task itself as it forms the method by which we measure ourselves against each successive task. As the various objectives approximate rightness, not only are we able to perform with increasing precision, but we can carry over those new found abilities to more demanding future goals. The frequency of repetition is the essence of the procedural mastery necessary for guitar virtuosity. In other words, how many times and over what period of time will you have to repeat something before you can do it to your own satisfaction with little if any possibility of error? Secondly, how long can you maintain that level of accuracy without having to practice (or worse, reacquire) it again? Answer number one: many. Answer number two: not very long. What you have is a conditioning continuum where each piece of music not only has to be acquired but also maintained or else it degrades. With time and consistency of effort, we can hope to eventually bask in the comfort of the overall technical accomplishment that is so often associated with guitar mastery. But don't count on it.

The learning method most easily associated with guitar is multiple response learning. The idea of joining small fragments (such as movement sequences) into progressively larger *chunks* to make a whole, can be appreciated by guitarists at any level. In music, much harmonic and melodic development consists of sequences of smaller sections grouped to create larger ones. In lead playing, smaller phrases or licks are grouped together to form larger phrases. (In more formal music circles, the terms motive and theme are used similarly.) The idea of learning by combining musical and physical subassemblies together is at the heart of what we do when we learn a piece of music by reading or by ear. When reading, at first we are bound to a note-by-note plodding until through experience, we are able to recognize groupings of tones and rhythms that we've seen before. When we learn by ear, we aurally latch onto the largest perceivable tone groupings until we can find the proper location on the fretboard and the correct rhythmic feel. The difference in the two approaches can be thought of less as philosophical ones, as those of specificity. If it is easier for us to appreciate the

Learning and Memory

exactness of the written specification, then we will gravitate toward a reading habit. If we prefer to listen to a section over and over until each aspect becomes clearer and more specific, then we will tend to want to learn by ear. Because of the nature of multiple response learning, the earlier and later stages of both approaches tend to be easier and more accessible than the middle ones.

Insight learning can be related to virtually any endeavor including the musical and guitaristic ones. Insight and creativity are first cousins. Creativity is necessary in, among other things, problem solving and producing new works. When we recompile the raw material necessary to produce new expressions of old ideas, new uses for old tools, or new applications for old methods, we are acting in ways that can be considered insightful. When songwriting for example, small but significant changes to common phrases can quickly become popular sayings used to make hits. Having a background of a great deal of diverse information can become a wellspring of new ideas if you use your imagination to combine things of a divergent nature. As we struggle to increase our abilities, new possibilities open up, not the least of which are those created from our mistakes. Insight learning is on the menu in every restaurant of our existence and once we've tasted it, we hunger for more. It can be as common as getting a joke or as profound as a miracle. In fact, some would say no experience can compare. It sprouts from insatiable curiosity and is cultivated with intensity of awareness. It is also the type of learning at which successful musicians seem to excel.

In every type of learning there is an underlying factor that produces the fuel to power our intellectual engines. Something enables us to overcome the inertia of the status quo. Something compels us toward an ever distant finish line in our race to catch up, overtake and excel. That something can be characterized as heart, persistence, courage, drive or perhaps best, willpower. You can't buy it on late night TV and can't cultivate it by just wanting to be the guy on stage bad enough. I don't even know if it can be learned. I'm pretty sure each one of us has it but doesn't always know what to do with it. I do know that when we see it in action, willpower can be awe inspiring.

Ultimately the job is to use whatever we have to play and produce more and better music. But it is not enough just to play for ourselves. A significant conversion occurs when we play for others. Over the years I've developed a half-serious list of graduations for most (popular) guitarists based pretty much on where their equipment resides. It goes like this: The first graduation is when you move it out of your bedroom and into a garage with your friends equipment. That, of course, makes you part of a long standing American institution known as the garage band. The second graduation is getting it out of the garage and into a local club, however seedy. That turns you into a pro and a heavy equipment mover. The next graduation is when it sleeps in trucks and travels from city to city. By then you develop a relationship with that twisted maniac known as the roadie, who will occasionally help you move your gear. The last graduation is a simple matter of touring your albums and clawing your way up from opening act to headliner, hit by hit. Then you have to start paying your roadie what he's worth because he owns you, but you don't have to bang gear anymore. Or so I'm told.

Whenever an audience hears us play, they don't judge us by how many books we've read, or how many hours a day we practice or how much we've sacrificed for the

Learning and Memory

guitar or on any of the formative aspects of learning that precede the performance. They judge us based on how they hear us and to some extent, how they see us. How they perceive us in general is mainly an issue of how they feel about us as we play. They perceive us in terms of how they relate to us, or more to the point, in how well they feel we are relating to them. When as guitarists, we can learn to relate to our audience on their terms, then we have succeeded as musicians.

Ok. That's it for this section. At least one of us feels better. Some people may view this part of the book as less than guitar-specific, but it's a matter of coming to grips with things. Can a guitar teacher help someone learn *guitar* better without helping them become a better *learner* also? There was a thought that kept occurring to me over and over. What would the ideal learning situation be like? What characteristics would the perfect student and the perfect teacher possess? Perhaps the perfect teacher would always teach exactly what was needed, exactly when the student needed to know it. By the same token, the perfect student would always completely and permanently understand, integrate and retain everything the teacher taught the first time every time. On a personal note, I also believe that both teacher and student would be both passionate and witty about the subject to a point that it was effortless and enjoyable, yet profound and life affirming. Right. When monkeys fly out of my Macintosh. The reality is, we all muddle on as best we can.

To save a buck, I learned drafting so I could render designs for guitar stuff. An interesting thing about it that I've never forgotten, is that you only dimension a line in one place, one time, and that place should be the optimal location to convey your intentions to the person who has to make the part. That kind of singular specificity is perfect for keeping misunderstandings and losses in translation from occurring between designers and builders. Then, if a part gets made and doesn't work, everyone sprints for the print to see who screwed up and has to pay. What we're attempting to do here is similar in intent, anyway. Anytime a new idea is presented, an attempt is being made to put it in the right place at the right time on a section by section basis. That is the teacher's part. The student's part is to first, determine which section is next in line given his or her frame of reference, and second, to accept that for real learning to occur, a certain amount of repetition is necessary for new ideas to take hold. So this is the deal. I'll do my part to insure that the specifications are in order, if you agree to simply repeat everything until it sinks in permanently. This includes going back and rereading and replaying the first two books until you know them cold.

When I hear, I forget.
When I see, I remember.
When I do, I understand.

Chinese Proverb



Theory

The theory chapter of Volume III is broken up into four main sections: Notation Formats, Rhythm, Keys, and Intervals. Notation Formats presents the various means of writing and illustrating music that is used throughout the method. The Rhythm section discusses the terms, symbols, and meanings used to denote durations, beats, and other rhythmic materials in music. The section on Keys deals with how to derive the notes available in a given key area for the purpose of enabling each key to be used as an equal in different situations. Intervals explores two note combinations in a guitar oriented format with some common usages.

Every artist was once an amateur.

Ralph Waldo Emerson

Notation Formats

In order to pursue the creative and analytical applications of the material in Vols. I and II, we have to agree on a format or formats to specify and illustrate the way notes, intervals, chords, scales and arpeggios are described. Pitches are notated one way and rhythms another and they have to be rendered within a time frame. The problem is that there are several ways to do this and not any one way is best for everybody.

What is termed **standard notation**, or the standard method of notating music, involves the use of simple graphic symbols based primarily on dots and lines called heads and stems. Each note is specified by a combination of these which defines both pitch and how long notes are sustained relative to one another. They are grouped into units of beats called measures (of time).

In standard notation, pitches are specified by placing them either higher or lower (representing frequency) on the page within a group of 5 lines called a staff. This system evolved as an all-purpose method for use with practically any instrument. In fact it works fine for most instruments, but the guitar's tuning system produces problems that increase the difficulty of interpretation. The appropriate string on which to play the note is not always obvious, and so requires a separate means of specification. Also the 2nd to 3rd string interval prevents string to string symmetry. The form this additional specification takes in modern guitar notation is a number within a circle near the note stem and/or a roman numeral indicating the position. These specifications are not always employed, however and the player must constantly reason through the available choices in order to arrive at the optimum or intended string when two or more are within reach. In some ways this is like *arranging* each piece you are learning. It is mentally taxing and the only relief seems to be to memorize everything as soon as possible and store it as a frame of reference for later. I don't believe this mental effort actually stunts the creative process, but it is seldom that you find guitarists that are outstanding at both.

This process can be daunting especially for beginning and intermediate guitar players, and has led to the resurgence in popularity of an equally ancient, string-specific method of notation known as **tablature**. In tab the horizontal lines represent the guitar strings themselves and, of course, there are six instead of five. The pitches in tab are notated less for musical purposes, than to specify an exact location. This is done by means of a number indicating the fret to be *stopped* overtop a line representing a string. (This is another guitar-oriented approach as contrasted with the music-oriented standard notation.) Tab relies on the same rhythmic symbology as standard notation to specify durations. Tab by itself suffers from the inability to clearly distinguish between certain durations such as quarter notes and half notes. This method of writing music is graphically somewhere between the dynamic standard notation and the static fretboard "snapshot" method used in Vols. I and II.

So what we have now, is two standards for illustrating both pitch and time on a fretboard: standard notation and tablature. In today's fast paced music industry, a kind of organizational "skeleton" is widely used, called **charts** or **lead sheets**. Charts vary in the amount of information they contain and there is not really one set format. It consists of whatever the session player needs to jot down at the time or whatever has been prepared for him. Generally a lead sheet has words, chords, and melody, and collections of these are known as *fake books* since experienced musicians can fake their way through songs they've never actually played, for audience requests, etc.

Notation Formats

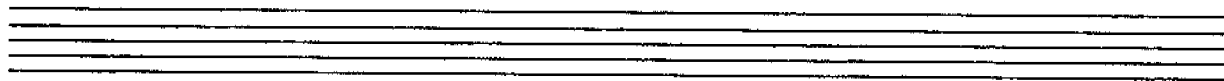
Sometimes it is nothing more than a number sequence that refers to a chord progression so the key can change to accommodate the range of the singer. This method of sketching the minimum amount of information is useful for several reasons. For one thing, it is quick to write out and saves time in the studio when music is being worked out on the fly, often to the tune of hundreds of dollars per hour. More importantly it allows the experienced session players a chance to improvise and try different ideas when its his turn to contribute, instead of just sticking to a script. To this end a contractor or artist may select a guitarist because of a unique type of sound that he thinks will work well in the song. For example, guitarist Edward Van Halen was called in to do a solo on Michael Jackson's "Thriller" album. (I considered this unusual combination evidence of some shrewd musical instincts on the part of whomever was responsible.) For a chart they just told him where to start playing and when to stop. For the purpose of illustrating or teaching basic strumming patterns, what is commonly termed a slash sheet is also used. **Slash sheets** use chord symbols plus diagonal lines showing the number of beats each chord gets.

There are other **symbols** to describe the traditional ornaments, etc., as well as more modern technical articulations, many of which have become popular due to evolution in styles of playing and innovations in instrument design. More traditional symbols such as turns, mordents, and fermatas, have been joined by bends, vibratos, hammer-ons, tremolo dive-bombs, etc., and each has their own unique designation which indicate effects rather than pitch or time values. Another minimalistic symbology for notation via the fretboard, is a simple two number **fraction** specifying intersections of string and fret numbers. Finally, don't forget the **graphs** of Vol. I and II that are partial fretboard representations lacking specifications for all but where to put your fingers. With all the different standards and options for writing and reading music, its no wonder that so many guitarists get frustrated and just wear out tape trying to figure it out by ear. In some ways it is a more direct approach since fewer man made contrivances stand between the music and the musician. The difference in psychology of the two approaches is that learning by ear deals with possibilities, whereas learning by reading symbols deals with specifications. Paradoxically, an indirect vs. direct approach.

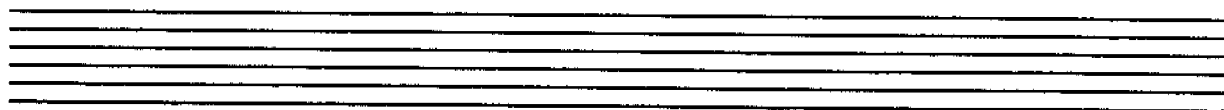
For the purpose of enabling as many as possible to learn on their own terms, the musical examples will be rendered in context sensitive formats. At various times these may include graphs, fractions, symbols, charts (including number sequences), tablature, and standard notation. There is no one way that works best for everyone at all times. There are different types of thought processes for different types of learning circumstances, musicwise and otherwise. If you're on stage performing something you've played a thousand times before, you aren't using the same thinking that you'd use when you're alone in your practice room hammering out the first few lines of a complicated piece you just started. Contrary to what you may have heard, the relationship between the guitar content and the musical content is not cart and horse. The only appropriate metaphor seems to be chicken and egg. In other words, what takes precedence is whatever is relevant at the time. We won't be limited to one type of format here. The format(s) that appeals to one person may not necessarily work for the next. A benefit to the student, is that the formats with which he or she is least familiar may be de-mystified by seeing it in peaceful coexistence with others more familiar. Maybe for the learn-by-ear guys, standard notation and tab will stop looking like a page full of squashed mosquitoes, and a lead sheet won't look like a blank page to the readers.

Notation Formats

Below is the five-lined staff of standard notation, and the six-lined strings of tab.



Staff

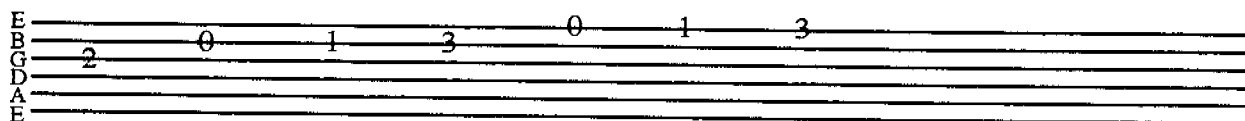


Tablature



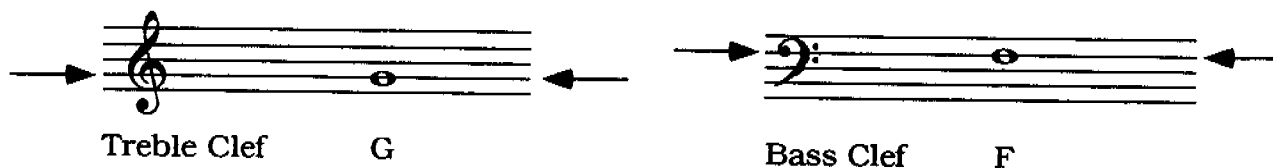
A B C D E F G

The 7 Letters of the Music Alphabet (Treble clef.)



Tablature Orientation (Open position.)

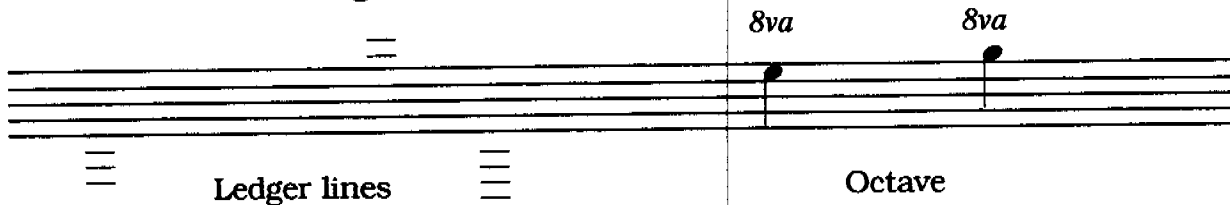
In standard notation the pitches are specified by their placement on the staff. In tablature each note is specified as an intersection of a string and fret or *stop*. The advantage of standard notation is conveyance of pitch and time relationships. The advantage of tab is that unequivocal fretboard positions are related. At the very beginning of a piece of music written in standard notation is a symbol called a clef which determines the pitch range of the staff for the different instruments. The most common clefs are treble and bass clef. The symbols are hard to recognize as such, but they are nothing more than old style calligraphic letters. Treble clef is a fancy "G" and bass clef is an "F".



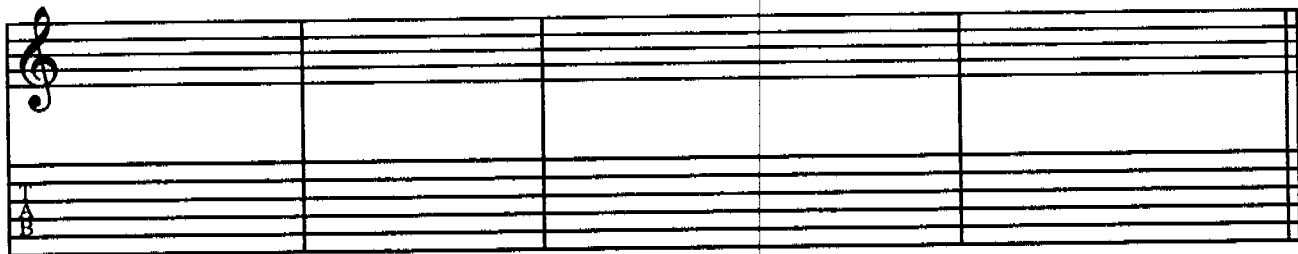
The G in the treble clef circles the second line from the bottom and the F in the bass clef refers to the second line from the top. The notes increment alphabetically relative to the clef using both lines and spaces. (Although this is a simple system, it is not necessarily intuitive. I'll bet I wasn't the only kid one who thought the treble clef "sat" on the E line and the bass clef "hung" from the A line.)

Notation Formats

For beginners, the hard part is going backwards or down the staff since as a rule, we aren't used to saying or using the alphabet in reverse. Although music only uses the seven letters A through G, it can make you wonder just how well you learned your ABCs. Since the range of the guitar is limited, only the treble clef is used. The notes, by convention, are written an octave higher than they are actually played. This spreads them more evenly on the staff and so requires fewer **ledger lines** or the added lines that extend above and below the staff for notes out of its range. The symbol *8va* (octave) can be substituted for ledger lines indicating to play the note an octave higher.



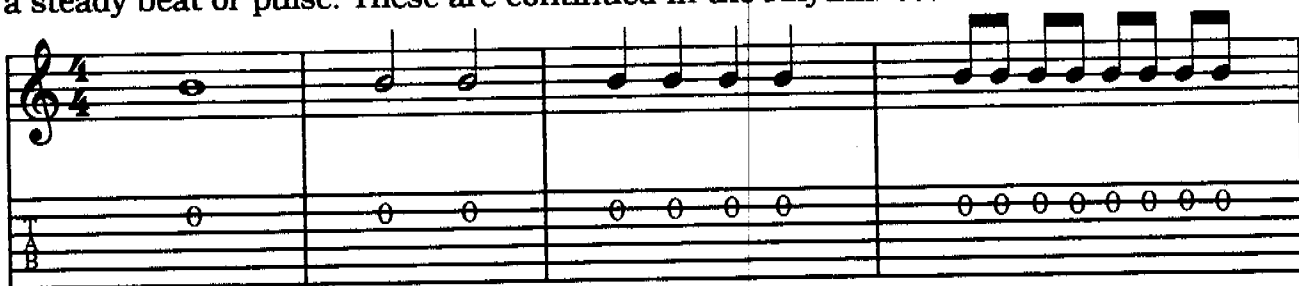
Below is the dual format now in common usage for notating modern guitar music. The vertical lines are called **measure lines** or **bar lines** and denote an equal time period regardless of the amount of physical space represented or the number of notes included. Double lines symbolize the end of a section. Symbols and graphs provide further specifications.



Slash lines or rhythm marks are an efficient shorthand for chord progressions with minimal rhythmic information. The slashes indicate the beats but not the way to strum them. In other words just playing down stroke strums for each slash mark is not what is intended. They indicate only the beats and where the chord changes are in relation to them.



Next is an introduction to the time values most commonly used in music. These time values are called divisions of the beat, since they are relative only in the context of a steady beat or pulse. These are continued in the Rhythm section.



Notation Formats

Thus far we've only discussed the notation of *natural*, or unaltered notes. The other notes are termed accidentals because someone a long time ago seemed to feel that sharps and flats were notes that occurred "by accident".

Western musical instruments are designed and tuned in a manner called *equal temperament*, meaning that they are grouped and oriented in octaves. The term octave pertains to an eighth letter and scale tone repeated (ABCDEFGG-A). In between all but two pairs of notes (B-C and E-F) are the accidentals. Seven natural notes and five accidentals add up to twelve tones. Octaves, or a pitch and its double (or half) are divided into twelve tones, each division termed a *half-step*. The half-step is the smallest unit of pitch in western music. Indian, Chinese, African, etc. music have various tonal systems with more or less divisions of the octave. More on this in the section on guitar tunings. The accidentals alter notes by half-steps. A sharp *raises* (toward the body) a note one half-step higher in pitch, and a flat *lowers* (toward the headstock) it one half-step. A half-step is the equivalent of one fret, and two frets is called a whole-step.

The note one half-step lower than B, is called B \flat (B flat). The note a half-step above F is called F \sharp (F sharp). The natural notes with accidentals in order are:

A A \sharp B C C \sharp D D \sharp E F F \sharp G G \sharp and back to A. Using flats, the notes in reverse order are:


G G \flat F E E \flat D D \flat C B B \flat A A \flat and back to G. Its the same starting from any note.

When notating accidentals, the \sharp or \flat symbol is placed in front of the note to be altered. Within a measure, once a note has been altered with an accidental, that note continues to be sharp or flat until the next measure or until it is cancelled with another accidental. The *natural* sign (\natural) cancels a sharp or a flat and reverts the note to natural. *If a natural sign is not used to cancel a sharp or flat, it is automatically cancelled by the next barline.*

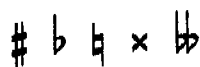
Notation Formats - Traditional Symbols

ppp pp mp p **Pianississimo, pianissimo, mezzo piano, piano** - Very soft to soft.

fff ff mf f **Fortississimo, fortissimo, mezzo forte, forte** - Very loud to loud.


 **Segno** - Sign. Indicates the beginning or end of a section to be repeated. **Dal Segno** or **D.S.** - From the sign.


 **Coda** - Marks separate part of music used for final ending


 **Sharp, Flat, Natural, Dbl. Sharp, Dbl. Flat** - Raises and lowers pitches in half step increments.

 **Crescendo, Decrescendo (diminuendo)** - Gradual increase or decrease of volume.

 **Rhythm marks** - ad lib rhythm usually with strummed chords

 **Mordent** - A short trill with varying interpretations.


 **Grace note** - A note of inconsequential (uncounted) time value printed in smaller type usually with a slash, and located adjacent to the primary note.

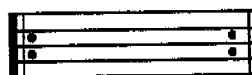
 **Turn** - A musical ornament placed above a note indicating to play four notes: the tone above, the principle tone, a tone below and end on the principle tone.


8va 8vb **Octave** - Indicates to play the passage one octave above (*8va*) or below (*8vb*) what is notated.


 **Fermata** - Hold note indefinitely, or until conductor signals release

 **Repeat measure** - Repeat the previous measure

 **Double bars** - Light bars are used to denote the end of a section; heavy bar denotes the end of a piece.

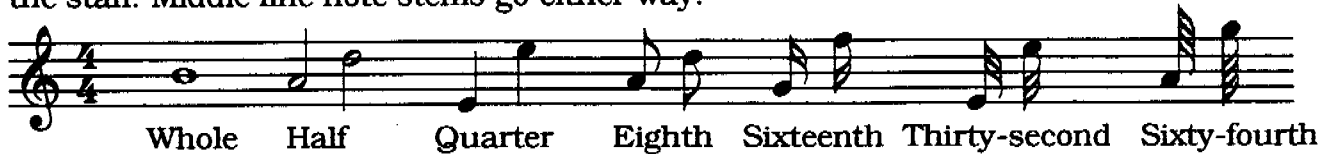
 **Repeat** - Repeat notes and measures in between the double bars.

 **First Ending** - Play notes under bracket then return to double bar

 **Second Ending** - Follows 1st ending. After first ending return to double bars, skip over first ending and play second ending.

Rhythm

Rhythm is a term used to describe durations of pitches in general, and the countless ways of combining patterns of durations. A composition's rhythm is specified in terms of divisions of what are called beats. **Beats** are analogous to our own pulse in that they are a consistently repeated temporal units that have a speed which is relatively fast or slow. In standard notation, a piece's rhythm is specified by a pair of numbers at the beginning of a piece or new section termed the **time signature**. The number on the top designates the number of beats per measure, and the number on the bottom says what type of note gets a beat. In the example below, *four-four* time, there would be four beats per measure and the quarter note would get a beat. Next, the different types of note durations are illustrated. All but the whole note have *stems*, and the shorter the time value, the more *flags* or *beams* the note will have. Flags and beams are the same, but beams are faster to notate, and so get used more often except in the case of vocal melody lines. The direction of the stem depends on whether the note is above or below the middle staff line such that the note doesn't extend too much beyond the staff. Middle line note stems go either way.



Whole Half Quarter Eighth Sixteenth Thirty-second Sixty-fourth

The next order of business is to establish the basis for the number system of the rhythmic half of music. It is fundamentally a base seven system in that seven different types of durations are commonly used (only six shown below). They are the whole note, half note, quarter note, eighth note, sixteenth note, the thirty-second note and the sixty-fourth note. Starting with the whole note, each type is successively both a doubling of the number of notes per measure, and a halving of the amount of time with which to play them. Below are the number of each type in one measure of four-four time.



One whole note = 4 beats



Two half notes = 4 beats



Four quarter notes = 4 beats



Eight eighth notes = 4 beats



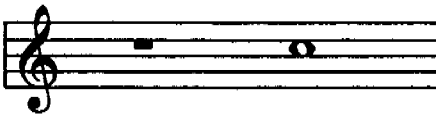
Sixteen sixteenth notes = 4 beats



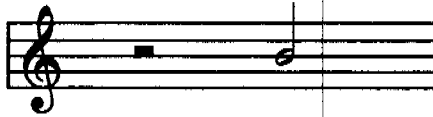
Thirty-two 32nd notes = 4 beats

Rhythm - Rests Dots and Ties

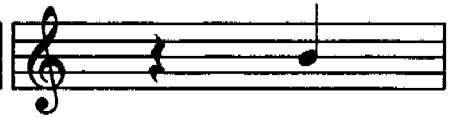
Within a measure, the sum of the time values must always total the value specified by the time signature. When that value has not been realized by notes, a kind of place holder termed a *rest* is used to account for the remaining time. A **rest** is a symbol that indicates a cessation of tonal activity, or silence, for a specified period of time. There are equivalent rests for all of the seven basic durations. The commonly used symbols for rests are illustrated below along with their tonal counterparts. The nonuniform nature of the rest's symbology is cause for some consternation, but here again, its best to just accept the situation and learn them any way you can. Hopefully, when newer technologies replace these systems, the designers will learn from past iconic inconsistencies. Ok, maybe that bears restating. The symbols don't really indicate anything by their individual or collective designs. The eighths through sixty fourths make sense, but none of the others have any apparent semantic consistency.



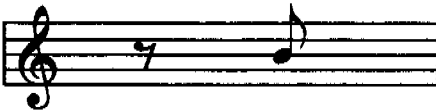
The Whole Rest and The Whole Note
Both equal four counts or beats.



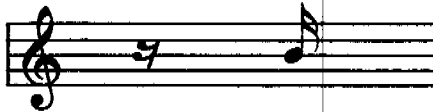
The Half Rest and The Half Note
Both equal two counts or beats.



The Quarter Rest and The Quarter Note
Both equal one count or beat.



The Eighth Rest and The Eighth Note
Both equal 1/2 count or beat.



The Sixteenth Rest and The Sixteenth Note
Both equal 1/4 count or beat.



The Thirty second Rest and The Thirty second Note.
Both equal 1/8th count or beat.

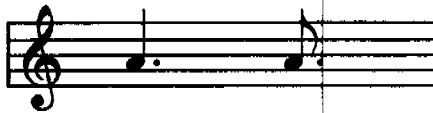


The Sixty fourth Rest and The Sixty fourth Note.
Both equal 1/16 count or beat.

Notes that need to be held for intermediate periods of time are designated by the *dot* and the *tie*. A **dot** increases the durational value of a note by one half of its normal value. The **tie** is a curved line that links two notes and adds their time values together even across bar lines. Ties and dots have somewhat overlapping abilities and composers use whichever makes the most sense to them. Dots don't cross over barlines, and ties are intended to join notes of different beats. It is interesting that you seldom see dotted or tied rests. Below are examples of dotted notes and tied notes.



The Dotted Whole and the Dotted Half Notes
A dotted whole note gets six beats (4 + 2).
A dotted half note gets three beats (3 + 1).



The Dotted Quarter and the Dotted Eighth.
A dotted quarter note gets 1 1/2 beats
A dotted eighth note gets 3/4 beat.



Dotted sixteenth, thirty second, and sixty fourth notes. Dotted 1/16s gets 3/8 beat.
A dotted 1/32s get 3/16 beat.
A dotted 1/64s get 3/32 beat.

Below is the same measure of repeated time values with various sections tied.



Rhythm - Time Signatures and Tempo


The terms *meter* and time are more or less synonymous in music. The time signature specifies a piece's meter. Next we'll present some different types of time signatures and what their numbers signify. Four-four time is used so often it is termed 'common time' and is usually abbreviated with the letter "C". Two-two is also known as 'cut time' and is abbreviated also with a "C", but with a line *cut* through it. Three-four time is called *waltz* time. Examples are illustrated below.


C	=	4	Four beats per measure	3	Three beats per measure
		4	Quarter note gets a beat	4	Quarter note gets a beat
C	=	2	Two beats per measure	5	Five beats per measure
		2	Half note gets a beat	16	Sixteenth note gets a beat




When written properly, rhythms are notated such that within the physical space of the measure, they are distributed evenly in a manner that best conveys the time signature's intent. Since musicians read in groupings rather than single note units, this makes it easier to readily interpret a section's rhythmic meaning. When learning to write music, get in the habit of spacing your notes evenly from the beginning. When learning to read music, get in the habit of interpreting entire beats at a glance.

A piece's **tempo** is the relative rate at which the beats occur in time. Again, the beats of a measure are designated by the lower number in a time signature. These beats are what we tap our feet to when a piece of music gets us going. They are also the back and forth motion we create when we dance. Traditional terms for the relative speed of the beats are Italian words such as *allegro* for fast, or *largo* for slow. There are many such terms which have no quantifiable definition, and so we've adopted a more specific system for determining a composition's tempo. It is based on an invention by a man named Malzel, called the metronome. His device was a clicking, spring-loaded mechanical pendulum, which could change speeds. It was designed to click from about 40 beats per minute to about 208. Now tempos are specified by the letters "M.M." (Malzel's Metronome, or metronome marking), with a note type, and a number. This indicates how many and what kind of note per minute. The M.M. is not always included when specifying tempo.

M.M.  = 120 means 120 quarter notes per minute

M.M.  = 60 means 60 half notes per minute

M.M.  = 200 means 200 eighth notes per minute

Rhythm - Common Groupings


Now that we've established the basic values, the important thing to do is to enable the player to think rhythmically and respond to common rhythms that are likely to be encountered. Since the beat of a piece of music is the basic unit of rhythm, we'll take some common beat groupings and practice them until they become easy to recognize and play. The thing that seems to prevent us from keeping accurate time is an unfamiliarity with certain common rhythmic expressions. To learn this we will practice counting rhythms beat by beat.

Counting is a two part affair. It involves simultaneously keeping a steady beat while tapping, saying, or playing the rhythms notated. Keeping the beat means tapping (or setting a metronome, drum machine, etc.) to just the main pulse. In 4/4 time that means four beats per measure (on the quarter note). In 3/8 time it means three beats per measure (on the eighth note), and so on.

Counting conventions attribute a specific terminology or rather verbalization to each beat. For example, when counting out loud, the strong quarter notes in 4/4 time are simply "1 2 3 4". Eighth notes are termed "and". This would make a series of eighth notes in 4/4 time "1 and 2 and 3 and 4 and". A 4/4 measure of sixteenth notes are counted "1 e and a, (pronounced one-ee-an-uh) 2 e and a, 3 e and a, 4 e and a". The plus symbol (+) is the equivalent to the word "and". Both are pronounced using the more monosyllabic "an". The tapping, or beat keeping is generally one tap per beat.


These exercises will be based on the single note open G string to allow us to concentrate on the rhythms. Use alternate picking on the eighth and sixteenth notes.

Foot taps or metronome clicks:



Counting: 1 2 3 4

Foot taps or metronome clicks:



Counting: 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 +

Foot taps or metronome clicks:



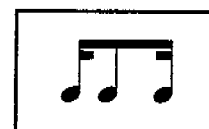
Counting: 1 e + a 2 e + a 3 e + a 4 e + a

Rhythm - Common Beat Groupings

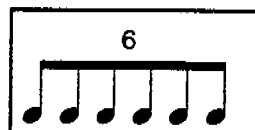
By combining dotted eighths and sixteenths, you get a familiar rhythmic combination also known as a "shuffle," probably because it brings to mind a drag-footed gait.



Below are the three most common sixteenth and eighth note groupings. A measure of each is illustrated. In each case a sixteenth other than the first is missing. Among durations, the quarter, eighth and sixteenth durations tend to get used most often.



The next most common rhythmic grouping is the triplet. Triplets are three notes that are played in place of two of the same value. They are indicated by a "3" and often a *slur* or brackets. A *slur* is a curved line over a group of notes indicating they are to be played *legato*, or in a connected fashion. These methods of notating rhythms can be used also for fives, sixes, sevens and various uneven groupings. Frederic Chopin would place a "cascade" of notes over a beat or beats and simply group them with a number over top. He said often that he wanted his music to be played "like water" and felt he couldn't really "hear" how his compositions sounded until his pal Franz Liszt, an even greater virtuoso, played them. With groupings of five and seven it is often easiest to relate to them as "threes and twos" and "fours and threes" or vice versa.



Rhythm - Exercises

What follows are some exercises using various note values. Before beginning to count and play, let a measure or two of metronome clicks or foot taps go by to get a steady feel for the tempo. If the tempo isn't right, change it to something you are comfortable with, but I never had to tell a student to speed up to learn something new, if you catch the drift. The exercises start with easy combinations of the values we've discussed and move toward more coherent rhythmic phrases.

MM $\text{♩} = 50 - 150$

The exercises are as follows:

- Staff 1: Quarter notes with counts: 1, 2 + 3, 4 + ect.
- Staff 2: Quarter notes.
- Staff 3: Quarter notes.
- Staff 4: Triplet eighth notes (marked '3'), quarter notes, and eighth notes.
- Staff 5: Triplet eighth notes (marked '3'), quarter notes, and eighth notes.
- Staff 6: Triplet eighth notes (marked '3'), quarter notes, eighth notes, and a quintuplet eighth note (marked '5').
- Staff 7: Sextuplet eighth notes (marked '6'), quarter notes, eighth notes, and a sextuplet eighth note (marked '6').
- Staff 8: Sextuplet eighth notes (marked '6'), quarter notes, eighth notes, and a sextuplet eighth note (marked '6').

Keys

Among the natural systems already in place when a person starts to learn guitar are physics, physiology, acoustics, and the overtone series. The man made ones are the twelve tone system, the guitar's polyphonic design, the geometry of the fretboard, and notation symbology. The concept of key is a product of both the twelve tone system and our human physiology. As a practical matter, keys are what chords, scales and arpeggios are derived from.

A **key** is a group of notes derived from the twelve tone system, that are arranged in half step and whole step increments such that each group is equivalent to another. In another sense, it is a group of centered tones that are agreed upon by a common aesthetic. In yet another sense, it can be considered an interface for the twelve tone system. Keys are specified by the notes contained within them and their distance from one another in half steps. (You should distinguish key and scale in the same manner as note and tone; the **note** is an abstraction we use in theory and symbology, and the **tone** is what we hear when something moves in such a manner as to vibrate our eardrum, activate our nervous system, etc. Similarly, a key is a concept and a scale is one expression of that concept.) Keys are named by a combination of the first seven letters of the alphabet and a system of "accidentals" termed sharps and flats. There are 15 keys - seven using flats and seven using sharps plus one that has neither.

In general use, the terms key, tonality and mode are as inbred as those folks in "Deliverance", and their meanings are difficult to distinguish. For one reason, the terms are context sensitive, but here goes, anyway. A key is a group of centered tones such as Major, minor or dorian, but then so is a mode or a tonality. Modes generally refer to the seven most common tonal orientations (Ionian, Dorian, Phrygian, Lydian, Mixolydian, Aeolian, and Locrian). Tonality refers to these plus all the major and minor variations as well as the numerous chromatic variants. In another sense, tonality is distinguished from modality, and in yet another it denotes tone centering as opposed to atonality or no discernible tone center. Now that I've cleared all that up for you...

In practical usage, a key has a name and type similar to intervals, chords, scales, and arpeggios. A key's name would be its letter name and accidental (when applicable). Its type would be Major, minor or Mixolydian, for example. A key would be referred to as "Ab Major", "C minor" or "D# dorian". The combination of name and type gives not only a tonal center and a whole step - half step specification, but also a humanistic quality such as happy or sad.

The concept of key as an interface for the twelve-toned system is a means of taking the individual tonal elements, and reducing them to a manageable number. If each key works the same as another, then **modulation**, or a change of key within a piece, can produce added tonal interest with ease and simplicity.

Ok here goes. What follows is important. If you are to proceed beyond the beginning levels of music theory, it will be because you have a firm grasp of the fundamentals, and are able to combine and vary them in creative ways, and recognize and understand them in the music of others in analytical ways. Being able to function in any key is a necessary ability for a musician. As a practical matter, keys are the most basic unit of tonal orientation with which the musician works. Now more than any other time, you should overcome any reservations you may have and just learn this material. Its significance can't be overstated although it was perhaps attempted.

Keys

The goal is to be able to recognize a key by its signature, identify the notes in a key, and develop intervals, chords, etc., from those notes.

The sharp keys in order are: (C), G, D, A, E, B, F#, and C#. The flat keys in order are: (C), F, Bb, Eb, Ab, Db, Gb and Cb. The order represents the incremental number of accidentals. The key of C can be considered a "zero" key since it belongs to neither the sharps or the flats, but it will be the starting place in the counting system to follow. The zero key in both cases has no accidentals. The first sharp key, G, has 1 sharp. The second sharp key, D, has 2 sharps. The third sharp key, A, has three sharps, and so on. The first flat key, F, has 1 flat. The second flat key, Bb, has 2 flats. The third flat key, Eb, has 3 flats, and so on.

The next issue is the order of sharps and flats as they are added on to successive keys. The sharps in order are F#, C#, G#, D#, A#, E#, and B# or FCGDAEB (all sharp). The order of flats is the same as the sharps but in reverse: Bb, Eb, Ab, Db, Gb, Cb, and Fb or BEADGCF (all flat).

To derive each key's **signature** or specification of accidentals, combine the number of sharps (or flats) with the order of accidentals. To get to the next sharp key, count up in fifths; to get to the next flat key, count up in fourths. For example, the key of G is the first sharp key (five up from C), and so has a signature of one sharp-F#. That means the notes in the key of G are: G A B C D E and F#. The key of D is the second sharp key (five up from G), and so has a signature of two sharps-F# and C#. Therefore the notes in the key of D are: D E F# G A B and C#. The key of A is the third sharp key (five up from D), and so has three sharps-F#, C# and G#. That makes the notes in the key of A: A B C# D E F# and G#. Remember that you add on another sharp in the order: FCGDAEB (all sharp).

The signatures (and notes) for the rest of the sharp keys are as follows:

The key of E has four sharps- F# C# G# & D#. The notes are: E F# G# A B C# & D#
The key of B has five sharps- F# C# G# D# & A#. Notes: B C# D# E F# G# & A#
The key of F# has six sharps- F# C# G# D# A# & E#. Notes: F# G# A# B C# D# E#
The key of C# has 7 sharps-F# C# G# D# A# E# & B#. Notes: C# D# E# F# G# A# & B#

Whereas the sharp keys increment in fives, the flat keys increment in fours (or fives in reverse). For example, the key of F is the first flat key (four up from C), and so has a signature of one flat-Bb. That means the notes in the key of F are: F G A Bb C D and E. The key of Bb is the second flat key (four up from F), and so has a signature of two flats- Bb and Eb. That means the notes in the key of Bb are: Bb C D Eb F G and A. The key of Eb is the third flat key (four up from Bb), and so has three flats-Bb, Eb, and Ab. Therefore the notes in the key of Eb are: Eb F G Ab Bb C and D. Remember that you add on another flat in the order: BEADGCF (all flat).

The signatures (and notes) for the rest of the flat keys are as follows:

The key of Ab has 4 flats- Bb Eb Ab & Db. The notes are: Ab Bb C Db Eb F & G
The key of Db has five flats- Bb Eb Ab Db & Gb. Notes: Db Eb F Gb Ab Bb & C.
The key of Gb has six flats- Bb Eb Ab Db Gb & Cb. Notes: Gb Ab Bb Cb Db Eb & F.
The key of Cb has 7 flats- Bb Eb Ab Db Gb Cb & Fb. Notes: Cb Db Eb Fb Gb Ab & Bb.

Keys

As with intervals, chords, scales, and arpeggios, unless otherwise specified, a key is assumed to be Major.

Next the job is to see if we can determine the notes in any key so we can function with it. To find the notes in the key of A, first determine what the accidentals are as specified by the key signature. Here it is in dialog format:

- 1) Is A a sharp or flat key? Answer: Sharp. (The sharp keys are G D A E B F# & C#.)
- 2) The key of A has how many sharps? Answer: three. (It is the third sharp key.)
- 3) Which ones are they? Answer: F# C# & G#. (The sharps in order are F#, C#, G#, D#, A#, E#, and B#.)
- 4) If those are the accidentals, then what are all the notes in A? Answer: A B C# D E F# & G#.

If you don't know that "A" is the third sharp key, and so has three sharps, then you'll have to count in fives from C (zero sharps) until you arrive at A. C counted up five = G (add a sharp - F#); G counted up five = D (add another sharp - C#); D counted up five = **A** (add a third sharp - G#). Key Signature of A: 3 sharps - F# C# and G#. (Counting on your fingers helps if you use two hands. Point with a finger of the opposite hand instead of a thumb, or you're liable to miscount.)

We'll do it once more with a flat key: Bb. To find the notes in the key of Bb, first determine what the accidentals are as specified by the key signature.

- 1) Is Bb a sharp or flat key? Answer: Flat. (The flat keys are F Bb Eb Ab Db Gb Cb & Fb.)
- 2) The key of Bb has how many flats? Answer: two. (It is the second flat key.)
- 3) Which ones are they? Answer: Bb & Eb. (The flats in order are Bb Eb Ab Db Gb Cb & Fb.)
- 4) If those are the accidentals, then what are all the notes in Bb? Answer: Bb C D Eb F G & A.

The job now is to go through all 15 keys and name the signature and the notes of each. If it is your first time with keys, it will no doubt be arduous, but don't put it off. If you are having trouble, as always, go back to the beginning of the section and reread from the start. You may see something you missed the first time.

Being able to determine the notes in a key means we can build on them in a melodic and harmonic context. The first melodic extrapolation we will take up is the directional *motion* of one note to another. This is discussed in the chapters on intervals and melodic phrasing. The first harmonic extrapolation we'll discuss are the chords in a key and how they progress in a musical context, and to attach a chordal function to the notes in a key to produce the chords in a key. These are found in the chapter on chord progression. Throughout this series, the term *key area* has been frequently used. The use of this term is to draw attention to the difference between a temporary or brief change of key within a progression, and a complete modulation into another key altogether. For example one E chord played in the key of Eb constitutes a change of key area, but not a change of key.

Keys

If you find the systems outlined for determining the notes in a key too convoluted, you can make up your own method or simply learn them by rote. Below are the keys, signatures and their notes in table format.

Sharp Keys

Key	Key Signature	Notes in Key
C	No accidentals	C D E F G A B
G	F#	G A B C D E F#
D	F# C#	D E F# G A B C#
A	F# C# G#	A B C# D E F# G#
E	F# C# G# D#	E F# G# A B C# D#
B	F# C# G# D# A#	B C# D# E F# G# A#
F#	F# C# G# D# A# E#	F# G# A# B C# D# E#
C#	F# C# G# D# A# E# B#	C# D# E# F# G# A# B#

Flat Keys

C	No accidentals	C D E F G A B
F	Bb	F G A Bb C D E
Bb	Bb Eb	Bb C D Eb F G A
Eb	Bb Eb Ab	Eb F G Ab Bb C D
Ab	Bb Eb Ab Db	Ab Bb C Db Eb F B
Db	Bb Eb Ab Db Gb	Db Eb F Gb Ab Bb C
Gb	Bb Eb Ab Db Gb Cb	Gb Ab Bb Cb Db Eb F
Cb	Bb Eb Ab Db Gb Cb Fb	Cb Db Eb Fb Gb Ab Bb

Now for a glimpse of a practical guitar-oriented application of all that theory. Several years back, Steely Dan launched their careers with the song "Reelin' In the Years", that featured some nice guitar work by studio legend Elliott Randall. The solo was played over the repeated progression G to A. So what key did he play his solo in?

You might suppose that he'd have to switch keys every time the chord changed, but that wasn't what happened. The solo was played in the key of D. If you can figure out why, you're able to make all this information work for you. There are two types of logic behind why it worked so well. First, the G and A chords are the 4 and 5 chords in the key of D. On the other hand, the key signature of G has one sharp (F#), and the key signature of A has three sharps (F# C# G#). The reason D worked is because it had the key signature closest to both of those: two sharps (F# C#). It was a good compromise that resulted in a great solo on a hit song.

Intervals

Intervals are any two notes sounded either simultaneously or in succession. When played simultaneously, they are termed **harmonic intervals** and when played in succession, **melodic**. Intervals derive their name from both: 1) the distance between the two pitches (inclusive) in terms of scale steps (unison, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, octave, ninth, etc.), and 2) from the half step variations in (musical) character similar to triadic chords (diminished, minor, major, augmented, and perfect.) The intervals within an octave are termed "simple", and beyond an octave are termed "compound".

Combining their numeric pitch distance and musical character from lowest to highest, the intervals in half step increments are: unison, minor 2nd, Major 2nd, minor 3rd, Major 3rd, Perfect 4th, tritone (aka augmented 4th, or diminished 5th), Perfect 5th, minor 6th, Major 6th, minor 7th, Major 7th, and octave (Perfect 8th). Starting from the unison, each successive interval is one half step "wider" than the preceding one and so can be specified by the number of half steps (inclusive). There are 12, (13 if you include the unison) simple intervals. You can save yourself a lot of time and confusion if you skip the countless why's and wherefore's of the terminology and just learn them. In practical usage, 4ths and 5ths are deemed to be Perfect unless otherwise specified; 3rds, 6ths, and 7ths are similarly deemed to be Major unless otherwise mentioned. This is not unlike when someone says "Play a G chord", we understand it to be Major until we hear otherwise.








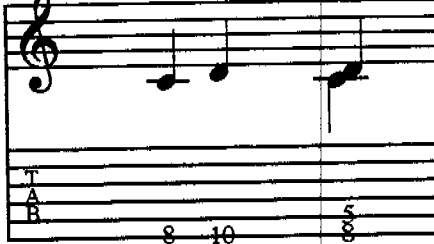
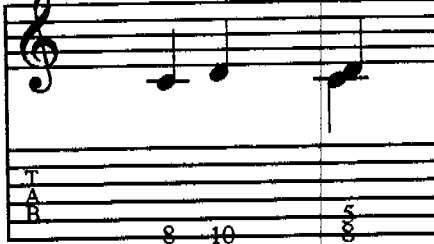



Compound intervals are generally limited to two octaves. You can, of course, play wider intervals, but there aren't any new names for them. An easy way to identify compound intervals is to add seven to the simple intervals. This makes the compound Major 2nd a Major 9th, the compound Major 3rd a Major 10th, and so on. The compound intervals, again in order, are: octave, minor 9th, Major 9th, minor 10th, Major 10, Perfect 11th, (double) tritone (aka aug. 11th or dim. 12th), Perfect 12th, minor 13th, Major 13th, minor 14th, Major 14 and (double) Octave. In practical usage, musicians often forgo these terms referring to the more familiar simple intervals, octave understood.













On the fretboard, melodic and harmonic intervals can be derived by a variety of methods, two of which we will use. Melodic intervals are easily accessed within the appropriate scale forms, and smaller harmonic intervals can be produced from adjacent string pairs. For adjacent strings only two cases exist: the 2nd-3rd pair; and all the other pairs (1st-2nd, 3rd-4th, 4th-5th, 5th-6th). Remember that each adjacent string pair is a naturally occurring (Perfect) 4th except the 2nd and 3rd which is a (Major) 3rd.










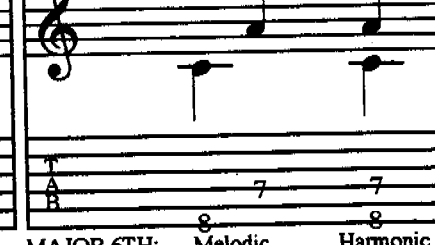
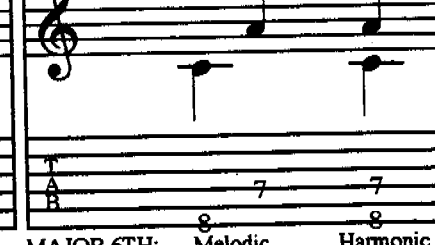
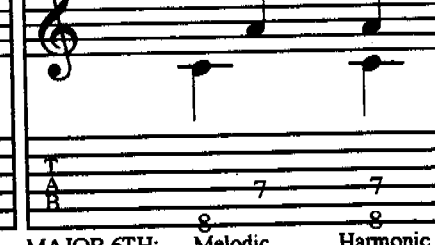
From smallest to largest, each will be illustrated in its harmonic and melodic guitar orientation. Intervals are subject to **inversion**, or the exchanging (of relative positions) of the higher and lower tones. When a 2nd is inverted it becomes a 7th; when a 3rd is inverted it becomes a 6th; when a 5th is inverted it becomes a 4th, and so on. An interesting difference about intervals on the guitar as opposed to a keyboard, is the smaller the (harmonic) interval, the longer the reach which brings us to the unison. A **unison** is the same tone played in two separate places. It is indistinguishable from a single note for guitar purposes, and because of the inordinate reach it will not be illustrated.













Simple Intervals - Sixth String

The strategy for the melodic intervals is to derive them from the appropriate scale form. From the sixth string, the Major and perfect melodic intervals (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th and Oct.) are derived from the E diatonic scale form.; the minors (min. 3rd, min. 6th and min. 7th) from the G diatonic scale form; and the min. 2nd and the tritone from the chromatic scale.

					
					
MINOR 2ND: Melodic	Harmonic	MAJOR 2ND: Melodic	Harmonic	MINOR 3RD: Melodic	Harmonic

					
					
MAJOR 3RD: Melodic	Harmonic	PERFECT 4TH: Melodic	Harmonic	TRITONE: Melodic	Harmonic

					
					
PERFECT 5TH: Melodic	Harmonic	MINOR 6TH: Melodic	Harmonic	MAJOR 6TH: Melodic	Harmonic

					
					
MINOR 7TH: Melodic	Harmonic	MAJOR 7TH: Melodic	Harmonic	OCTAVE: Melodic	Harmonic

Simple Intervals- 5th String

From the fifth string, the Major and perfect melodic intervals (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th and Oct.) are derived from the A diatonic scale form. The minors (3rd, 6th and 7th) are derived from the C diatonic scale form; and the min. 2nd and the tritone from the chromatic.

MINOR 2ND: Melodic Harmonic
 MAJOR 2ND: Melodic Harmonic
 MINOR 3RD: Melodic Harmonic

MAJOR 3RD: Melodic Harmonic
 PERFECT 4TH: Melodic Harmonic
 TRITONE: Melodic Harmonic

PERFECT 5TH: Melodic Harmonic
 MINOR 6TH: Melodic Harmonic
 MAJOR 6TH: Melodic Harmonic

MINOR 7TH: Melodic Harmonic
 MAJOR 7TH: Melodic Harmonic
 OCTAVE: Melodic Harmonic

Simple Intervals- 4th String

From the fourth string, the Major and perfect melodic intervals (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th and Oct.) are derived from the D diatonic scale form. The minors (3rd, 6th and 7th) are derived from the E diatonic scale form; and the min. 2nd and the tritone from the chromatic scale.

T A B	10 11 6	T A B	10 12 7	T A B	10 13 8

MINOR 2ND: Melodic Harmonic MAJOR 2ND: Melodic Harmonic MINOR 3RD: Melodic Harmonic

T A B	10 9 9	T A B	10 10 10	T A B	10 11 11

MAJOR 3RD: Melodic Harmonic PERFECT 4TH: Melodic Harmonic TRITONE: Melodic Harmonic

T A B	10 12 12	T A B	10 13 13	T A B	10 10 10

PERFECT 5TH: Melodic Harmonic MINOR 6TH: Melodic Harmonic MAJOR 6TH: Melodic Harmonic

T A B	11 11 10	T A B	12 12 10	T A B	13 13 10

MINOR 7TH: Melodic Harmonic MAJOR 7TH: Melodic Harmonic OCTAVE: Melodic Harmonic

Simple Intervals - 3rd String

From the third string, the Major and perfect melodic intervals (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th and Oct.) are derived from the G diatonic scale form. The minors (3rd, 6th and 7th) are derived from the A diatonic scale form; and the min. 2nd and the tritone from the chromatic.

MINOR 2ND: Melodic Harmonic MAJOR 2ND: Melodic Harmonic MINOR 3RD: Melodic Harmonic

MAJOR 3RD: Melodic Harmonic PERFECT 4TH: Melodic Harmonic TRITONE: Melodic Harmonic

PERFECT 5TH: Melodic Harmonic MINOR 6TH: Melodic Harmonic MAJOR 6TH: Melodic Harmonic

MINOR 7TH: Melodic Harmonic MAJOR 7TH: Melodic Harmonic OCTAVE: Melodic Harmonic

Compound Intervals- Sixth String

As with the simple intervals, the major and perfect compound intervals from the sixth string are derived from the E diatonic scale form; the minor 10rd, 13th and 14th from the G diatonic scale form; and the minor 9th and double tritone from the chromatic scale.

<p>MINOR 9TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>	<p>MAJOR 9TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>	<p>MINOR 10TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>
<p>MAJOR 10TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>	<p>PERFECT 11TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>	<p>DBL TRITONE Melodic Harmonic</p>
<p>PERFECT 12TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>	<p>MINOR 13TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>	<p>MAJOR 13TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>
<p>MINOR 14TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>	<p>MAJOR 14TH: Melodic Harmonic</p>	<p>DBL OCTAVE: Melodic Harmonic</p>

Compound Intervals- 5th String

From the fifth string, the Major and perfect compound intervals are derived from the A diatonic scale form. The minors (3rd, 6th and 7th) are derived from the C diatonic scale form; and the min. 2nd and the tritone from the chromatic.

MINOR 9TH: Melodic MAJOR 9TH: Melodic Harmonic MINOR 10TH: Melodic Harmonic

MAJOR 10TH: Melodic Harmonic PERFECT 11TH: Melodic Harmonic DBL. TRITONE: Melodic Harmonic

PERFECT 12TH: Melodic Harmonic MINOR 13TH: Melodic Harmonic MAJOR 13TH: Melodic Harmonic

MINOR 14TH: Melodic Harmonic MAJOR 14TH: Melodic Harmonic DBL. OCTAVE: Melodic Harmonic

Intervals - Diatonic Progression

Diatonic stepwise motion in thirds are termed *couplets*, and are presented below on both types of naturally occurring adjacent string pairs. The guitar pattern series in the first measure will work for the string pairs 6-5, 5-4, 4-3, and 2-1. The pattern series in the second measure works only on the 3-2 pair. Both are in the key of A. These intervallic progressions are a combination of scalar stepwise motion and chordal diatonic progression. Keep in mind both W-W-H, W-W-W-H, and Maj. min. min., Maj. Maj. min. dim. as applied to intervals. The Whole-Half motion is from the lower string. Try to recognize the guitar form each interval is a portion of.

Musical notation showing two measures of diatonic stepwise motion in thirds on adjacent string pairs. The first measure covers string pairs 6-5, 5-4, 4-3, and 2-1. The second measure covers the 3-2 pair. The key signature is A major (two sharps).

T	6	7	9	11	13	14	16	18	2	3	5	7	9	10	12	14
B	7	9	11	12	14	16	18	19	2	4	6	7	9	11	13	14

In the next series, the couplet progression is inverted to sixths instead of thirds. Major thirds invert to minor sixths; minor thirds invert to major sixths. This time the Whole-Half motion is in the higher string. The guitar pattern results one way for the string pairs 3-1 and 4-2, (directly below) and another for the pairs 5-3 and 6-4.

Musical notation showing two measures of inverted diatonic stepwise motion in sixths on adjacent string pairs. The first measure covers string pairs 3-1 and 4-2. The second measure covers string pairs 5-3 and 6-4. The key signature is A major (two sharps).

T	5	7	9	10	12	14	16	17	10	12	14	15	17	19	21	22
B	6	7	9	11	13	14	16	18	11	12	14	16	18	19	21	23

Below are the sixths on the 5-3 and 6-4 string pairs. The sixths are played on non adjacent strings to avoid the unnecessary reaching that would occur on adjacent pairs. Although the entire length of the neck isn't illustrated for each string pair, you should be able to use the sequences printed to access both the neck's entire length and changes from one string pair to another. Once the patterns become familiar in this key, apply the progressions to a couple of others.

Musical notation showing two measures of diatonic stepwise motion in sixths on non-adjacent string pairs. The first measure covers string pairs 5-3 and 6-4. The second measure covers string pairs 5-3 and 6-4. The key signature is A major (two sharps).

T	2	4	6	7	9	11	13	14	7	9	11	12	14	16	18	19
B	4	5	7	9	11	12	14	16	9	10	12	14	16	17	19	21

Intervals

Intervals fall into two categories in terms of how we relate to them individually. If an interval per se, is pleasing to the ear, it is termed *consonant*. If not, it is considered *dissonant*. Traditionally the consonances were thirds, sixths, and octaves. The dissonances were the seconds and sevenths, leaving the others considered neither fish nor fowl. As this was somewhat less than objective, another more specific definition has been adopted. If an interval or its inversion exists within a triadic chord, then it is deemed **consonant**. These are the major and minor thirds and sixths, plus perfect fifths and fourths. Otherwise it is a **dissonance**, which includes major and minor seconds, sevenths and the tritone. Even within these parameters, some consonances are more appealing and stable than others. Dissonances tend to produce physiological tension, motivating a resolution toward consonance. It is this specificity of tension vs. resolution which gives intervals unique qualities separate from chords. In practical application, an interval is richer than a single note in a melodic sense and only slightly less definite than a chord in a harmonic sense.

Using seventh chords as our basic unit, we will take another look at the relative value of each chord tone for the purposes of discussing certain types of intervallic progression. If you are familiar with altered and extended chords, then you know that some degrees are more important than others to the essential nature and character of a chord. When producing altered and extended chords, it is often necessary to leave off less important tones to permit the addition of others. The first to go is the fifth degree. It has the least significance to the chord in terms of distinguishing value. The next to go is perhaps surprisingly, the tonic. The tonic is important because it references the tones, but not as important as the ones which remain. The remaining third and seventh degrees become the main determinant of character when reductions are necessary or when intervals become the unit of currency.

The third degree establishes the single greatest distinction of a chord, and that is whether it is major or minor oriented. If the third is unaltered, then it is, of course, major oriented. The major oriented quatrads are Major 7th, augmented 7th, and dominant 7th. If the third is flatted, it produces a minor orientation. The minor oriented quatrads produced are the minor 7th, minor 7b5, and diminished 7th.

The seventh degree is the second most essential chord tone. It has been termed the *leading tone* since it pulls strongly toward the tonic. Without a tonic note, the seventh degree at least suggests one, by way of leading our ear toward it, if in a tensioned manner. The seventh and its alterations also identify the character of the chord with the dominant chord and its extensions in particular. Recall in Vol. II we related the major-ness or minor-ness of the various modes by the character of the last interval. If the last interval was a half step, then the mode sounded more major. If it was a whole step, then it came across as more minor.

By combining the essential intervals with the most basic cadence, the five-one resolution, we produce two types of intervallic progression that are distinctive, useful, and easy to remember. In the spirit of gonzo guitar we are going to term these *exploding* and *imploding* chromatic 5-1 intervals. Ok, call it literary license. Exploding and imploding just means that the physical motion of both degrees on the fretboard is outward and inward, but some words are easier to remember than others. Musically the motion is simply contrary for both. They are illustrated on the next page.

Intervals - Contrary Motion

The key we will illustrate this intervallic motion in is C, and the diagrams follow CAGED sequence starting with the C form. The 5-1 in the key of C is G to C, or G dom.7 to C Maj. 7 using quatrads. The third and seventh degrees of the G chord are the notes B and F \sharp , which is the interval of a tritone. By moving outward in contrary motion, or exploding the interval by a half step in both directions, we can conveniently resolve to the 1st and 3rd degrees of the C chord as shown in the first illustration.

Diagram 1: C7 Form Tritone (T: 9, A: 8, B: 10) and G/E Form Min. 6th (T: 12, A: 10, B: 12).
 Diagram 2: A7 Form Tritone (T: 12, A: 10, B: 12) and E/D Form Min. 6th (T: 12, A: 9, B: 12).
 Diagram 3: G7 Form Tritone (T: 14, A: 13, B: 15) and C Form Min. 6th (T: 15, A: 12, B: 12).

Diagram 4: E7 Form Tritone (T: 4, A: 3, B: 5) and C/A Form Min. 6th (T: 7, A: 6, B: 8).
 Diagram 5: D7 Form Tritone (T: 7, A: 6, B: 8) and G Form Min. 6th (T: 7, A: 5, B: 8).

Next are the imploding intervals. The musical motion is outward just as above, but with these, the physical motion of the forms is inward.

Diagram 6: C7 Form Tritone (T: 7, A: 10, B: 8) and E Form Min. 6th (T: 8, A: 9, B: 9).
 Diagram 7: G7 Form Tritone (T: 0, A: 3, B: 1) and C Form Min. 6th (T: 1, A: 2, B: 2).
 Diagram 8: E/D Form Tritone (T: 4, A: 8, B: 5) and G Form Min. 6th (T: 5, A: 7, B: 7).

Diagram 9: C/G Form Tritone (T: 7, A: 13, B: 8) and E/C Form Min. 6th (T: 8, A: 12, B: 12).

Intervals - Contrary Motion

These 5-1 progressions can be continued indefinitely by simply moving the resolved "1" a half step in either direction, making the tritone and continuing as before. you will here this type of harmonic activity in a great deal of classical and baroque music.

Technique

What is meant here by the term *technique* is the overall physical aspects of playing. When people refer to the plural "techniques," it usually pertains to more specific articulations such as slides and trills. A technical issue is generally a physical issue. If you know the three Ls of real estate, you can probably guess the three Ps of technique. The goal here is to 1) establish technically oriented *practice* habits, 2) put iterative note sequences into *practice*, and 3) *practice* guitar-specific articulation techniques. In Vol. II, a lot of tonal material was provided but without a method for applying it in a practical context. This area is intended to provide answers to the oft asked question, "How should I practice the stuff in your books?" It is obvious that in order to make use of those materials, we've got to do more than just be able to play them as simple forms. In a general sense, the goal of technical studies is to enable us to do things we couldn't do before. I don't subscribe to the teaching philosophy that says "My way or the highway." Too many opposing methods work in too many different circumstances. I've got to get my hands to work for me, and you have to get yours to work for you. Maybe this is what all those so-called "self-taught" players really mean. But don't forget that we can learn wrong just as easily and permanently as right. What is meant by the term "wrong," is anything which prevents us from attaining our goals.

As a child I took piano lessons from the proverbial "little old lady down the street" who always stressed *proper* technique. (Another thing she always stressed was the furniture, since she weighed in at about 280, but let's just say she left a lasting impression on us both, and leave it at that.) At the time, holding your hands as if you had oranges in them was taught as the way to achieve proper technique. In retrospect, I don't think I could dream up a more ridiculous approach. No wait, how about like you're holding mashed potatoes... no, unpinned grenades... uh, shark bait? Wait a minute. How about holding your hands as if you were maybe... playing a piano? Nah. As you can imagine, not only do strategies for technique go in and out of style, techniques for approaching different styles of music vary greatly from artist to artist and teacher to teacher. So *proper* (roll the first "r" please) technique is not something that one should expect people to agree upon. On the other hand, it is important not to down play the significance of technical ability. To a certain way of thinking, technique is what puts the virtue in virtuosity. How to get there is anybody's game. I remember reading about a performer who once said in an interview that the night before every concert, he'd squeeze a tennis ball 5000 times or so in each hand. The first thing that popped into my head was, "Well that's a way to get good at squeezing tennis balls, but I don't think it would prepare him as well as playing his guitar." Later I realized that if he thinks this is what he needs, and feels it helps him, well ok. Whatever works, works. Our physiology, emotions, and psychology are all a part of what goes into our guitar playing. After all, guitarists are at least as superstitious about their careers as your average minor league ball player. If you believe something besides practice is improving your overall technical ability, then by all means go for it. On the other hand, the people who play really well also seem to practice an awful lot.

The physical requirements of playing the guitar are such that anyone who takes it seriously is going to commit themselves to an ongoing daily struggle with strength, coordination, extensibility, concentration, endurance, and velocity, to name a few. To address these requirements, this section will attempt to provide specific technical studies, aka *etudes*, general developmental concepts and an overall system of goals for both individual practice sessions and longer range objectives.

Technique

Since the job of the left hand is fundamentally different from that of the right, it makes sense to examine them as two separate issues. Synchronizing them is a third and more significant issue altogether. All things being equal, scales are more demanding than chords, and arpeggios are more demanding than scales. That goes for each hand individually and in sync.

Left hand scale and arpeggio requirements will usually be in groups of fours, threes, twos, and ones in terms of the number of notes played per string (position crossovers, single and double string play notwithstanding). As the number of notes per string decreases, the string to string activity on the part of the right hand increases.

As a general statement of technique with respect to the material in Vol. II, right hand techniques can be divided into *chordal* and *scalar* approaches, where chordal pertains to picking in one direction with (normally) one pickstroke per string. Scalar pertains to the alternating direction convention usually termed alternate picking. The analog for strings picked with the fingers (and/or nails) is similar. Notes played with a scalar technique are plucked with alternating fingers (usually index-middle, or index-thumb) on the same string. Right hand chordal technique is where a finger (or thumb) plucks just one string per ascent or descent.

Since arpeggios are a hybrid of chords and scales, they can be articulated with either right hand approach. When encountering two or more notes per string using the chordal approach, play the tones that follow with techniques such as hammer-ons, slides, and pull-offs. When playing arpeggios using the scalar technique, reverse the pick direction for each note regardless of the number of notes per string.

If there was one overall, golden rule for technique (in both hands), it would probably pertain to economy of motion. This can mean anything from putting your left hand fingers closer to the strings about to be played, to preventing the pick from travelling any further past the string than necessary.

We all recognize a polished player when we hear one. I have my favorites and you have yours. The technical abilities these players possess is among the things that set them apart from ordinary guitarists and get our attention. I've heard many students say something to the effect, "I'd kill to play like [fill in the blank]" but would they do something even more outrageous? Would they practice and experiment just as much as [fill in the blank] does?

● ●
A laborer works with his hands. A craftsman works with his hands
and head. An artist works with his hands, his head and his heart.

Anon ● ●

Technical Development Exercises

The technical development exercises that follow are designed to produce and sustain synchronization between the left and right hands. They will also prepare them for almost any single note, string to string activity likely to be encountered. The right hand part can be played using fingers or any type of pick(s) you are interested in or already comfortable with. The right hand motion of particular interest involves the change from playing on just one string to playing on adjacent ones, because of the differences of the two activities. For those who use a flat pick, moving to another string is a longer, necessarily more elliptical motion, which has to blend in with the shorter, more linear ones of the same string. This is the so-called *circular* picking, of which many players speak. For players who use their fingers, this motion will be somewhat more easily absorbed by having as many as four or five fingers range the plane of the strings. The main difference then will be between the direction of travel of the fingers and the thumb. In other words, going from string to string using thumb and finger is a kind of balancing action, whereas using successive fingers tends to draw the right hand out of position.

Although there might seem to be quite a number of string to string possibilities, in a directional sense there are actually only four: down-down, up-up, down-up, and up-down. Most people will do these exercises with a pick. As a matter of course, flatpick users learn to associate downstrokes with strong beats (accents) and upstrokes with weak beats. As a result, most will usually begin each series with a downstroke. Make it a policy to also play starting with an upstroke 50% of the time. It will pay off when there are regular accented upstrokes such as with three notes per string, and when there's an irregular number of notes from one string to another such as with harmonic minor lead patterns.

Continuing along the lines alluded to early on, the studies that follow are designed to increase your physical awareness, coordination, and velocity. They can be used, for example, as a preparation for practice sessions and performances, or for velocity studies. There are relatively few guitarists who can pick up the instrument and be playing at the top of his or her ability right from the start. The rest of us must warm up for a period of time to get to that point, and thirty to sixty minutes is about average. These are not intended solely as velocity studies, but they're fairly well suited for it. Regardless of your intentions, the approach should be to begin dead slow at first, meaning *no errors*. A simple way to determine what speed to begin at is to ask yourself this question. "At what speed do I play it so that I *cannot possibly* make an error." Determine that, and then start a notch or two slower. Establish a baseline velocity and if you make an error, start over and decrease it. Learn to distinguish between speeding up your brain and speeding up your fingers. As with all practice, strive for comprehension first, control and accuracy second, expression next, and speed last. Only increase the rate of the exercise when there is little if any possibility for error in doing so, and only in metronome or nominal increments. Most of us tend to do something slow once, ignore our errors, then immediately start to accelerate to warp speed. Control means accuracy; and repetition produces a certainty which enables velocity. One more note about right hand alternation: These exercises are scalar in a technical sense, and as such utilize alternate picking in the right hand. If you use a pick, alternate down and up pick strokes at all times. First start with downstrokes then repeat the entire exercise starting with upstrokes. If you use your fingers, alternate index and middle or thumb and index, then repeat the exercises reversing the order.

Technical Development Exercises - Fours and Threes

1. Fours - Start on the sixth string, first position (four fingers - four frets positioning) and play every fret on every string in order 6th to 1st string and then go back 1st to 6th again starting with the 4th finger. Only the first of about twenty positions, are illustrated in these exercises. Next move up a fret and repeat the exercise. Continue advancing a fret at a time until you run out of playing area for your particular guitar. Then repeat the exercises in the other direction (back down the neck, fret by fret) starting with a picked upstroke or a different right hand finger than before.

Ascending

Musical notation for the ascending 'Fours' exercise. The notation is written on a grand staff (treble and bass clefs). The treble clef staff shows a sequence of notes ascending from the 6th string to the 1st string, with a sharp sign (#) indicating a specific fretting. The bass clef staff shows the corresponding fretting positions, with numbers 1, 2, 3, and 4 indicating the fingers used for each fret. The exercise is divided into five measures, each containing four notes.

Descending

Musical notation for the descending 'Fours' exercise. The notation is written on a grand staff (treble and bass clefs). The treble clef staff shows a sequence of notes descending from the 6th string to the 1st string, with a sharp sign (#) indicating a specific fretting. The bass clef staff shows the corresponding fretting positions, with numbers 4, 3, 2, and 1 indicating the fingers used for each fret. The exercise is divided into five measures, each containing four notes.

2. Threes - Start in the first position on the sixth string and play three notes per string in the same manner as above. The exercise illustrated below uses the 1st 3rd & 4th fingers. (The various options for these exercises are discussed later.) The descending part is illustrated on the next page. Don't forget that only the first position is being illustrated in these exercises. These studies involve practicing the string to string motion illustrated in as many positions as you can access on your instrument. Exercise number 2 is continued on the following page.

Ascending

Musical notation for the ascending 'Threes' exercise. The notation is written on a grand staff (treble and bass clefs). The treble clef staff shows a sequence of notes ascending from the 6th string to the 1st string, with a sharp sign (#) indicating a specific fretting. The bass clef staff shows the corresponding fretting positions, with numbers 1, 3, and 4 indicating the fingers used for each fret. The exercise is divided into five measures, each containing three notes.

Technical Development Exercises - Twos and Ones

Descending

Musical notation for a descending exercise. The top staff is a treble clef with a key signature of one sharp (F#). The bottom staff is a guitar staff with strings labeled T, A, B. The exercise consists of six measures. The first two measures are on the sixth string, and the next four are on the fifth string. The notes descend from the 4th fret to the 1st fret. The guitar staff shows fret numbers: 4 3 1, 4 3 1, 4 2 1, 4 3 1, 4 3 1, 4 3 1.

3. Twos - Again start in the first position on the sixth string but this time play only two notes per string. The twos can be played using any combination of two fretting fingers, with the 1st and 4th illustrated ascending and descending, below.

Musical notation for exercise 3, "Twos". The top staff is a treble clef with a key signature of one sharp (F#). The bottom staff is a guitar staff with strings labeled T, A, B. The exercise consists of six measures. The first two measures are on the sixth string, and the next four are on the fifth string. The notes ascend from the 1st fret to the 4th fret and then descend. The guitar staff shows fret numbers: 1 4, 1 4, 1 4, 1 4, 4 1, 4 1.

4. Ones - The object here is to treat each string with scalar, or alternate picking. These can be played using any chord form or none at all. The E form is illustrated below. These could be considered a kind of "faux arpeggio" or chord forms played like scales.

Musical notation for exercise 4, "Ones". The top staff is a treble clef with a key signature of one sharp (F#). The bottom staff is a guitar staff with strings labeled T, A, B. The exercise consists of six measures. The first two measures are on the sixth string, and the next four are on the fifth string. The notes ascend from the 1st fret to the 4th fret and then descend. The guitar staff shows fret numbers: 1 3 3 2 1 1, 1 2 3 3 1, 2 4 4 3 2 2, 2 3 4 4 2.

Since the pinky is our shortest and weakest finger, we tend to favor it, so the variations you select should bring it into play as often as possible. You may have noticed that the exercises seem to entail a lot of notes when played all the way up the neck and then back down again fret by fret. On a twenty four fret neck with two variations of all four, it comes to just under 10,000 notes and takes about 30-60 minutes to complete. But then your hands are nicely synchronized and you're ready for just about anything. Including a nap.

Technical Development Exercises - Variations

There are numerous ways to create variations of the technical material presented as numbers of notes/fingers per string. By keeping that one characteristic constant and changing others, we begin to have an understanding of the concept of creative choice, and more importantly, the physical manifestations of those choices. Don't forget that our hands are constantly sending signals to our brains about, among other things, their mistreatment and the unreasonable demands we place upon them. For many of us these messages can get in the way of production, and lead to slow downs, sick outs, and work stoppages. But don't ignore possible medical problems, either.

Among the left hand variations that can be made while keeping the number of notes per string constant are: 1) changing the tonal direction, 2) changing the note/fret order, 3) changing the string order, 4) including pattern/finger extensions, 5) using string articulation techniques, and 6) combinations of these. As the number of notes per string gets lower, the number of possible variations is reduced also. As always, it is up to each of us to find new ways of looking at the same old things. Remember the idea here is to allow the player to concentrate on the physical aspects of the guitar to the exclusion of pretty much everything else. Later we'll combine these acquired technical abilities with some tonal and rhythmic materials to make something that sounds like music. What follows are examples of the above variations.

Fours: Note/Fret Order Var. - Ascending

Musical notation for 'Fours: Note/Fret Order Var. - Ascending'. The exercise is written on a grand staff with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody consists of five measures of ascending eighth notes: F#4, G4, A4, B4, C5; F#4, G4, A4, B4; F#4, G4, A4, B4; F#4, G4, A4, B4; F#4, G4, A4, B4. The bass staff shows the fretting hand with fingerings: 1-3-2-4, 1-3-2-4, 1-3-2-4, 1-3-2-4, 1-3-2-4.

Fours: String Order Var. - Ascending

Musical notation for 'Fours: String Order Var. - Ascending'. The exercise is written on a grand staff with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody consists of five measures of ascending eighth notes: F#4, G4, A4, B4; F#4, G4, A4, B4; F#4, G4, A4, B4; F#4, G4, A4, B4; F#4, G4, A4, B4. The bass staff shows the fretting hand with fingerings: 1-2-3-4, 1-2-3-4, 1-2-3-4, 1-2-3-4, 1-2-3-4.

Musical notation for 'Fours: String Order Var. - Ascending' (continued). The exercise is written on a grand staff with a treble clef and a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody consists of two measures of ascending eighth notes: F#4, G4, A4, B4; F#4, G4, A4, B4. The bass staff shows the fretting hand with fingerings: 1-2-3-4, 1-2-3-4.

Technical Development Exercises - Variations

Threes: Extension Var. - Ascending

Musical notation for 'Threes: Extension Var. - Ascending'. The top staff is a treble clef with a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody consists of a sequence of eighth notes: G4, A4, B4, C5, D5, E5, F#5, G5, A5, B5, C6, D6, E6, F#6, G6, A6, B6, C7. The bottom staff shows the fretting hand with fingerings: 1 3 5, 1 3 5, 1 3 5, 1 3 5, 1 3 5, 1 3 5, 1 3 5, 1 3 5.

Twos: Direction Var. - Ascending

Musical notation for 'Twos: Direction Var. - Ascending'. The top staff is a treble clef with a key signature of one sharp (F#). The melody consists of a sequence of eighth notes: G4, A4, B4, C5, D5, E5, F#5, G5, A5, B5, C6, D6, E6, F#6, G6, A6, B6, C7. The bottom staff shows the fretting hand with fingerings: 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1, 4 1.

To pursue the variations further, we'll list some of the permutations of each that you can incorporate into your own technical studies. Progress from adding just a single variation, to combining two, then three, and so on. This part of the TDEs is the most important. Think of it as both a creative and self-reliant endeavor. Combinations help bridge the technical gap between simple dexterity exercises and tone groups such as scales and arpeggios.

1) **Changing directions.** Here you are limited to either ascending or descending. This means going from where you are tonally, to higher or lower in both a specific sense such as note to note, or a more general sense such as phrase to phrase.

2) **Changing the note/fret order.** Remember that on the left hand, index = 1, middle = 2, ring = 3, and pinky = 4. Playing four notes per string, the following permutations of order are possible: 1234, 1243, 1324, 1342, 1432, 1423; 2341, 2314, 2413, 2431, 2134, 2143; 3412, 3421, 3214, 3241, 3142, 3124; 4123, 4132, 4231, 4213, 4312, 4321.

Three notes per string: 123, 132; 231, 213; 312, 321.

Two notes per string: 1-2; 2-1; etc.

3) **Changing the string order.** The order of strings can be altered in a manner similar to the changing of the note/fret order. Since there are six strings, many permutations of this are possible. Use the permutations of the fours above as a guide for these.

4) **Pattern/Finger Extensions.** A space of one fret can be placed between the four fretting fingers as follows: index and middle, middle and ring, and ring and pinky.

5) **Articulation Techniques.** The ones that will be most useful for these exercises are the hammer-ons, pull-offs, slides, and bends. Hammer-ons can occur when the note to note direction (per string) is higher; pull-offs can be used when the direction is lower; slides and bends can be used in either direction.

6) **Alternate No. of Notes Per String.** Play four notes on the sixth string, then three on the fifth, then four, then three, and so on. The next variation is to alternate three types of "notes per string" finger groups.

Articulation Techniques

This section covers guitar-specific techniques that are known by various names including slurs, technical devices, guitar tricks, etc. To beginning players whose fingers are not yet guitar-strong, they may be considered crude physical demands, but they will soon come to represent some of the most expressive aspects of playing the instrument.

The symbols are mostly graphic representations that are intended to be *iconic*, in the sense that they convey meaning without words. They are in fairly common usage having become somewhat standardized over the years. There are surprisingly few basics, but by varying and combining them you can start to appreciate the broad range of non-musical expression that is possible when you have complete access to an instrument's tone generators - in this case, strings. It makes the restrictions imposed by the mechanics of a keyboard key seem woefully limited by comparison.

The basic articulation techniques are: Pull-Offs, Hammer-Ons, Slides, Mutes, Harmonics, Bends, Tremolos, Vibratos, and Rasgados. For the left hand techniques, this is roughly in order of difficulty, also. These techniques will be absorbed by constant repetition and experimentation until they are understood on not so much an intellectual level, as a tactile one. This area falls under the heading of multiple response type learning, and there is no way to "psych" the techniques out or just "grok" them. They must be played many more times than you would like to think. As with the other areas in which repetition is a necessity, think in basic units of hundreds, and serious units of thousands. What follows is a symbol legend of articulation techniques to be practiced individually until easily recognized, applied, combined, and improvised.

"...I'm gonna keep doing this - make a little exercise out of it so I don't get bored. Because if you get bored you get violent, and if you get violent you get problems and then you're on TV for the wrong reasons."

Steve Morse

Articulation Techniques Legend - Basics

PULL OFF- With both fingers fretting the string, pick only the higher note and sound the lower note with the higher fretting finger. Push or pull away so the string is plucked and not just released. Pull offs can also be played without first being picked.

HAMMER ON- Pick the lower note then percussively fret the higher note as to sound it without picking again. Hammer ons can also be played as a first note without picking.

SLIDE (Legato)- Pick the lower note then drag the fretting finger against frets to the higher note. Tie (curve under S) indicates pick note only once for smoothness. AKA Glissando.

MUTE (Left hand)- Lay the fingers of your left hand across the strings unfretted to produce a percussive non-tonal sound when picked.

HARMONIC (Natural)- Lightly touch the string exactly over the fret then pick the string and remove finger quickly.

BEND- Pick the note and push or pull the string the specified number of half steps moving adjacent strings out of the way with fingers. Bends can also be microtonal or less than 1/2 step. AKA portamento.

TREMOLO- Using alternate picking, pick the note(s) continuously as rapidly as possible.

VIBRATO (Moderate)- Repeatedly bend and release the string with the fretting finger(s) or use the tremolo bar likewise. Effect can be subtle, moderate, or exaggerated as line indicates.

RASGADO- Sweep the strings with successive fingernails (or thumb) to produce rapidly arpeggiated or *scraped* chord.

Articulation Techniques - Variations and Combinations

TRILL- Play a rapid succession of hammer-ons and pull-offs using the first note and the parenthetical note.

ACCENT- Play the indicated note or notes with added emphasis.

TAP- Hammer on with the index or middle finger of the right hand. A right hand tap is usually followed by a pull off or slide.

TAP-PULL OFF- Tap the first note with a finger of the right hand and pull off the following note or notes with the left.

TAP-SLIDE- Tap the first note with a finger of the right hand and slide in the direction indicated. The tap-slide is usually followed by a pull off.

SLIDE (Portato)- Pick the lower note then drag the fretting finger against frets to the higher note, also picked.

PRE SLIDE (Indefinite)- Slide from a non-specific point to the indicated note.

POST SLIDE (Indefinite)- Slide from the note specified to an indeterminate point in the indicated direction.

PICK SLIDE- Drag the edge of the pick along the string(s) (against the windings) in the indicated direction for a scratchy sound.

PALM MUTE- Lay the palm of your picking hand over the strings while playing. Lighter touch permits more tone to come through. Heavier touch is more percussive as notated.

HARMONIC (Artificial)- Fret the note normally and as you are picking, lightly contact the string with the side of the picking thumb on the way past. Can also be produced with right hand by both touching and plucking the string with the right hand.

TAPPED HARMONIC- Fret the note normally then tap the note with a finger of the right hand percussively on the fret an octave higher than fretted.

Articulation Techniques - More Variations and Combinations

REVERSE BEND- Prebend the string to the specified number of half steps then pick the string and release down to original tone.

BEND RELEASE- Play the first note, bend to the second then release to the original note again.

UNISON BEND- Play both notes at once and bend the lower one up to the pitch of the higher.

BEND TAP- Bend the first note the specified number of half steps, sustain the bend and tap the higher note with the right hand.

TREMOLO BAR- Push or pull up on bar to lower or raise the pitch of the note(s) by the specified number of half steps in the direction(s) indicated. Can also be an unspecified amount.

STACCATO- Dot indicates to play the note with a shortened time value. Wedge indicates shortened time value plus accent.

OCTAVE (8va)- Play the note indicated one octave higher than notated.

TREMOLO BAR HARMONIC- Play harmonic as indicated then pull or push bar in direction(s) indicated for the number of half steps specified. May also be unspecified.

SUSTAIN- Dotted lines mean hold present value until another value is met. In example, hold the bend until the following notes are played.

The variations and combinations of the seven or eight basic techniques are practically limitless and the legend is designed to provide a practice guide and a feel for the symbology you can expect to encounter, as opposed to an exhaustive representation of what one can do in this area. Consider it an inducement to encourage you to come up with some new and interesting variations and combinations of your own. As you may have noticed, a little imagination goes a long way in this business. These devices are another link in the guitar-music chain, and form a separate area of endeavor from the ones presented thus far.

Make it a point to practice these both as separate items from the other areas, and in conjunction with one or more others, as you become better acquainted with them on an individual basis.

Rhythm Playing

Rhythm playing at its most basic, is a combination of chord progressions played with a defining rhythmic arrangement. For guitarists, the rhythmic arrangement includes both the right hand approach and the overall style. The chapters on rhythm and chord progression are combined in this section so it might be a good idea to have studied them first. This section also relates closely to the Styles chapter, and the student is encouraged to refer to it for further information concerning the influence of rhythm on the different styles of music. Since this section deals mainly in right hand strumming patterns, the tablature will be replaced with arrows indicating downstrokes and upstrokes.

As a practical matter the rhythms presented here should be used for a variety of purposes limited only to one's imagination. If you have a tape recorder, especially a multitrack, you can put together an extended or loop track, and practice playing lead. If you are a songwriter, you can vary, combine, and incorporate these ideas into your own material to come up with something original. If you are learning arranging and transposition for the guitar, you can play the progressions in different keys using different form/position schemes and different right hand arrangements. Start by substituting an appropriate seventh chord for the triad. To initiate the creative process, it is sometimes necessary to take the rudiments of an idea and combine it with others. Variation also is essential.

For the time being, it is a basic policy to play chords with the root as the lowest tone except when otherwise specified. It is also fundamental to play downstrokes on the beat and upstrokes off the beat unless otherwise specified.

We've all heard the stories of record company executives who listen to demo tapes for five or ten seconds and decide whether they need to hear any more or not. The rhythmic character of the piece combined with the chord progression gives us the ability to tell the style, tempo and character of a piece instantly. In song form, the chord progression makes up the bulk of the harmonic activity, but at the very heart of rhythm playing is the rhythm itself, which gives the music its feel. As a result, a rhythm is responsible for much of what makes the music work when it works. Without a strong rhythmic and harmonic background, there cannot be an effective melodic foreground and there is little if anything upon which to base an overall arrangement.

In performance situations, it's been demonstrated that you can miss notes or chords and still carry on, but if you drop the beat the whole thing can fall to pieces right away. If you're a working guitarist, you're familiar with the structuring of sets so that your dancing audience has a variety of rhythms and tempos. You'll come to realize that this listener response is the result of a combination of factors driven on the most fundamental level by the beat and tempo.

This chapter has three sections, Forms and Progression, Chord Progression, and Rhythm Playing.

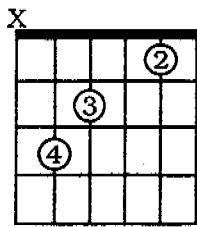
Forms and Progression

In this section, the diatonic progression of both triads and sevenths is illustrated using each of the CAGED forms. In each case a single form is used throughout the progression starting from the open position until it repeats at the 12th. To play in sequence, first go down the left column and then down the right, as was the case in Vols. I and II. The triads are shown on the left half of each page and the sevenths are on the right.

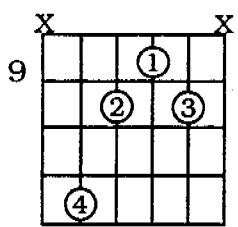
Each diatonic progression that follows is a combination of the chords in a key and a single basic chord form. Each key is the same as the letter name of the chord form. This exercise combines the concepts of building the chords in a key on the notes of the key, with the basic chord forms in various positions. It is also useful for demonstrating the whole-step and half-step scale relationship in a chordal context. As usual, some of the stretches will be difficult if not impossible for some. This exercise is a practical application of theoretical principles, and is a good intermediary between the chords as constructed, and chords as used in progressions.

A logical next step is to combine the diatonic progression of chords with various chord forms. The object is to enable the guitarist to think in terms of both the forms and the function within a key at the same time. After that it becomes a matter of progression as an entity with musical character or style- the guitar considerations becoming secondary in importance.

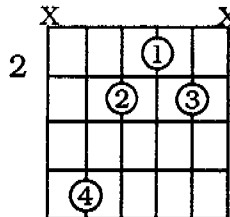
**Diatonic Progression
Triads & Sevenths - C Forms**



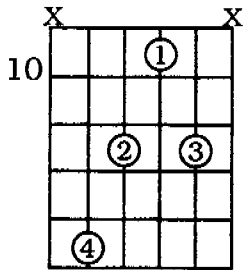
C Major
C form
1 Chord Key of C



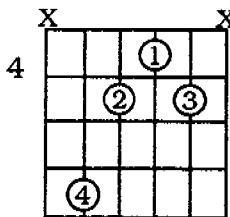
A minor
C min. form
6 Chord Key of C



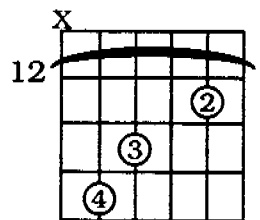
D minor
C min. form
2 Chord Key of C



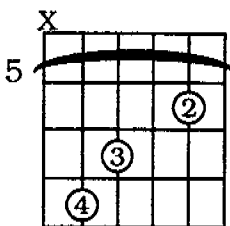
B diminished
C dim. form
7 Chord Key of C



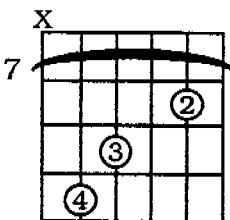
E minor
C min. form
3 Chord Key of C



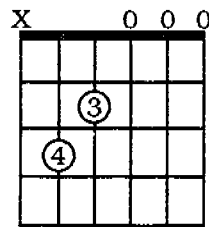
C Major
C form
1 Chord Key of C



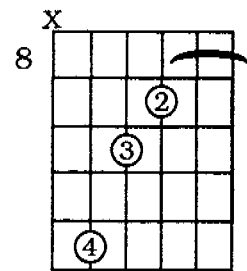
F Major
C form
4 Chord Key of C



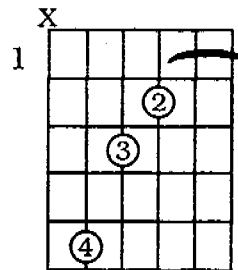
G Major
C form
5 Chord Key of C



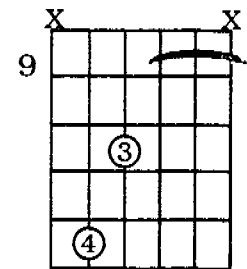
C Maj. 7th
C Maj 7th form
1 Chord Key of C



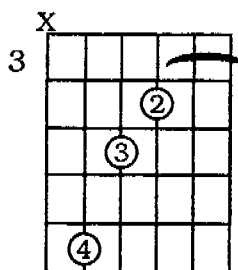
A min. 7th
C min. 7th form
6 Chord Key of C



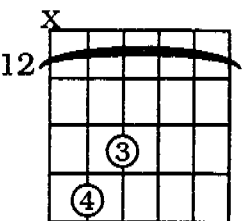
D min. 7th
C min. 7th form
2 Chord Key of C



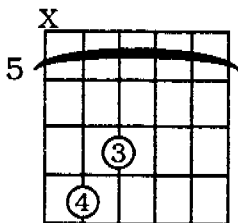
B min. 7b5
C min. 7b5 form
7 Chord Key of C



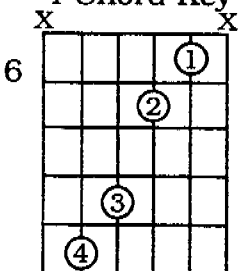
E min. 7th
C min. 7th form
3 Chord Key of C



C Maj. 7th
C Maj. 7th form
1 Chord Key of C

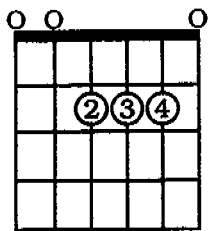


F Maj. 7th
C Maj. 7th form
4 Chord Key of C

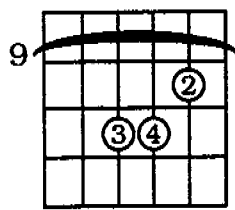


G Dom. 7th
C Dom. 7th form
5 Chord Key of C

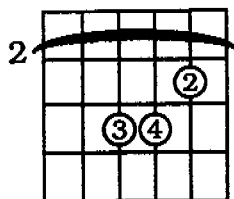
**Diatonic Progression
Triads & Sevenths - A Forms**



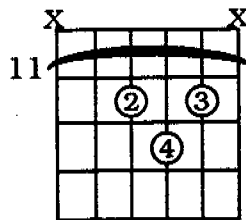
A Major
A form
1 Chord Key of A



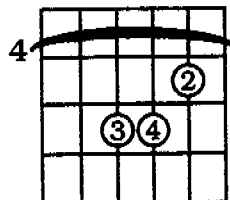
F# minor
A min. form
6 Chord Key of A



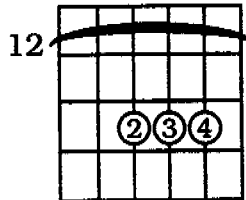
B minor
A min. form
2 Chord Key of A



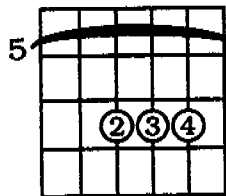
G# diminished
A dim. form
7 Chord Key of A



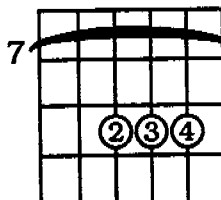
C# minor
A min. form
3 Chord Key of A



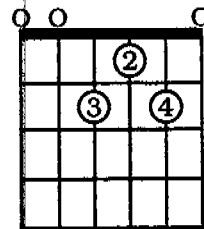
A Major
A form
1 Chord Key of A



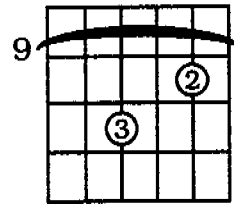
D Major
A form
4 Chord Key of A



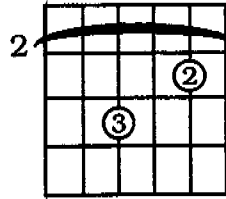
E Major
A form
5 Chord Key of A



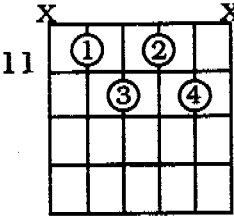
A Maj. 7th
A Maj. 7th form
1 Chord Key of A



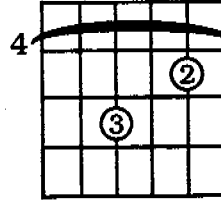
F# min. 7th
A min. 7th form
6 Chord Key of A



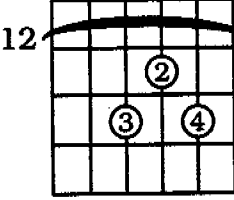
B min. 7th
A min. 7th form
2 Chord Key of A



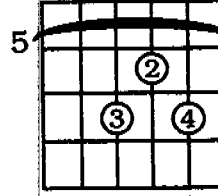
G# min. 7b5
A min. 7b5 form
7 Chord Key of A



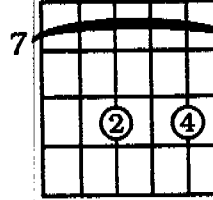
C# min. 7th
A min. 7th form
3 Chord Key of A



A Maj. 7th
A Maj. 7th form
1 Chord Key of A

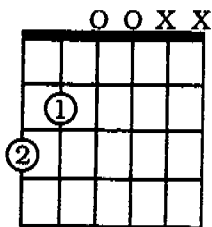


D Maj. 7th
A Maj. 7th form
4 Chord Key of A

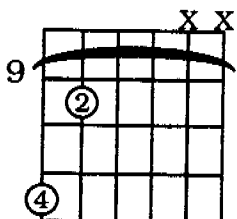


E Dom. 7th
A Dom. 7th form
5 Chord Key of A

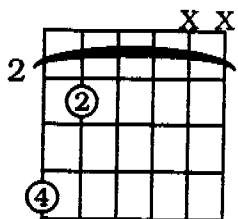
**Diatonic Progression
Triads & Sevenths - G Forms**



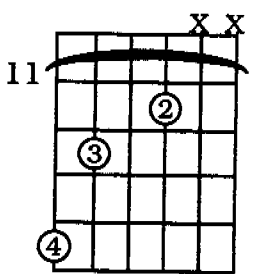
G Major
G form
1 Chord Key of G



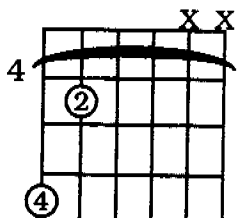
E minor
G min. form
6 Chord Key of G



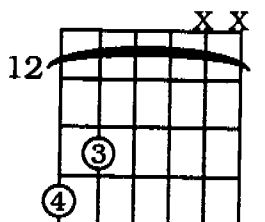
A minor
G min. form
2 Chord Key of G



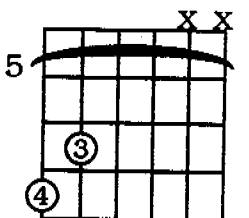
F# diminished
G dim form
7 Chord Key of G



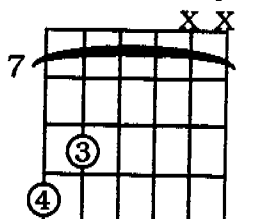
B minor
G min. form
3 Chord Key of G



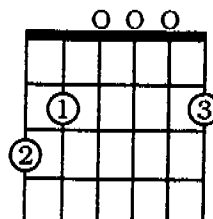
G Major
G form
1 Chord Key of G



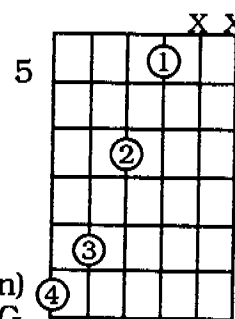
C Major
G form
4 Chord Key of G



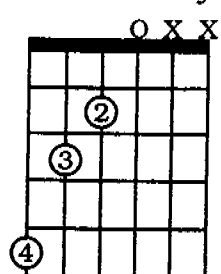
D Major
G form
5 Chord Key of G



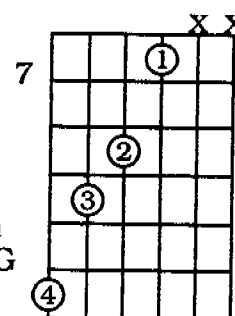
G Maj. 7th
G Maj. 7th (open)
1 Chord Key of G



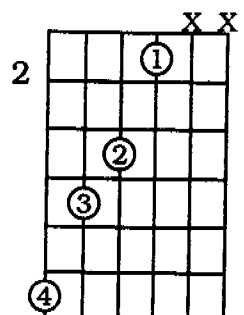
D Dom. 7th
G Dom. 7th form
5 Chord Key of G



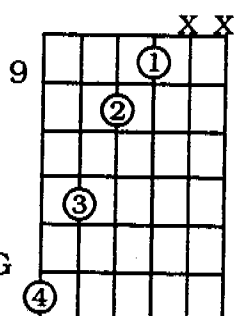
A min. 7th
G min. 7th form
2 Chord Key of G



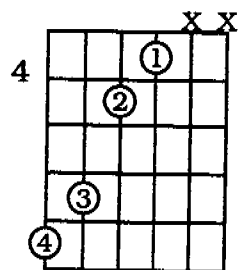
E minor
G min. form
6 Chord Key of G



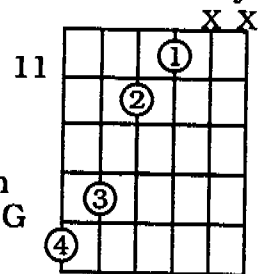
B min. 7th
G min. 7th form
3 Chord Key of G



F# min. 7b5
G min. 7b5 form
7 Chord Key of G

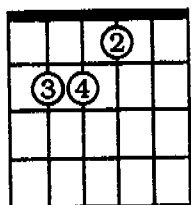


C Maj. 7th
G Maj. 7th form
4 Chord Key of G

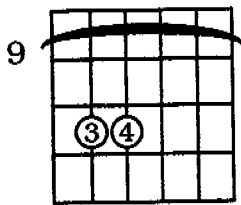


G Maj. 7th
G Maj. 7th form
1 Chord Key of G

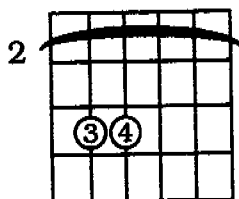
**Diatonic Progression
Triads & Sevenths - E Forms**



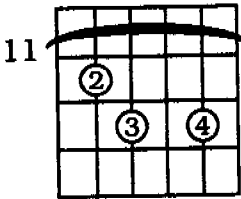
E Major
E form
1 Chord Key of E



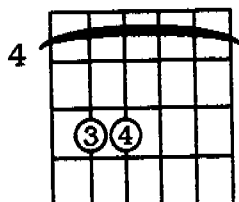
C# minor
E form
6 Chord Key of E



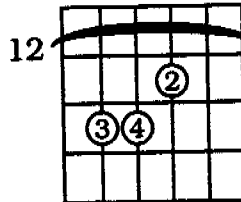
F# minor
E min. form
2 Chord Key of E



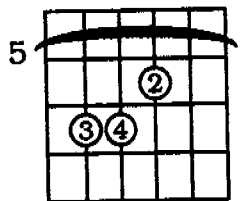
D# diminished
E dim. (7th) form
7 Chord Key of E



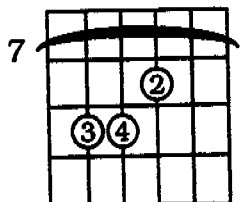
G# minor
E min. form
3 Chord Key of E



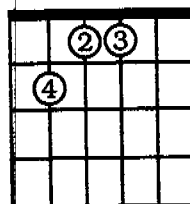
E Major
E form
1 Chord Key of E



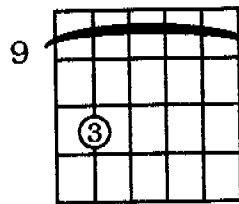
A Major
E form
4 Chord Key of E



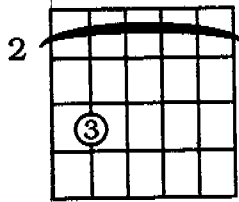
B Major
E form
5 Chord Key of E



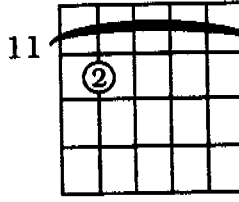
E Maj. 7th
E Maj. 7th form
1 Chord Key of E



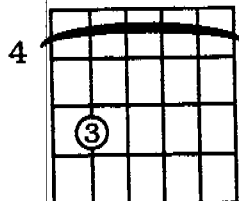
C# min. 7th
E min. 7th form
6 Chord Key of E



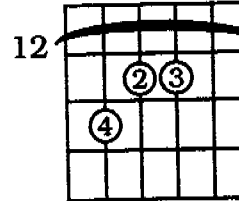
F# min. 7th
E min. 7th form
2 Chord Key of E



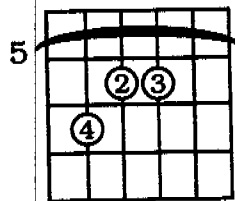
D# min. 7b5
E min. 7b5 form
7 Chord Key of E



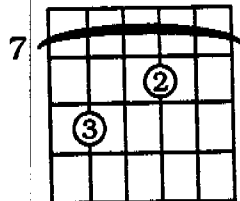
G# min. 7th
E min. 7th form
3 Chord Key of E



E Maj. 7th
E Maj. 7th form
1 Chord Key of E

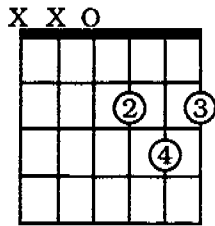


A Maj. 7th
E Maj. 7th form
4 Chord Key of E

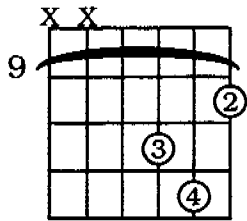


B Dom. 7th
E Dom. 7th form
5 Chord Key of E

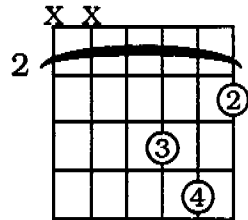
Diatonic Progression Triads & Sevenths - D Forms



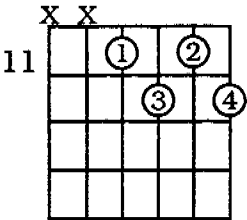
D Major
D form
1 Chord Key of D



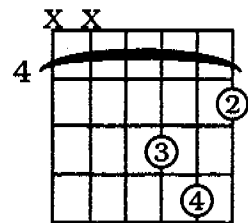
B minor
D min. form
6 Chord Key of D



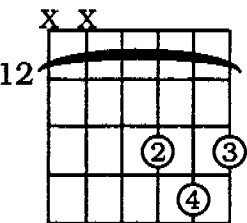
E minor
D min. form
2 Chord Key of D



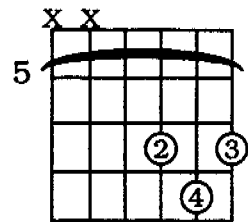
C# diminished
D dim. form (Alt.)
7 Chord Key of D



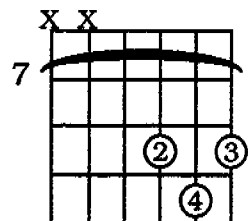
F# minor
D min. form
3 Chord Key of D



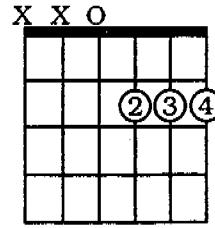
D Major
D form
1 Chord Key of D



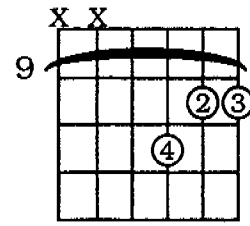
G Major
D form
4 Chord Key of D



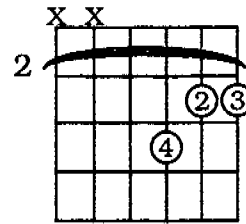
A Major
D form
5 Chord Key of D



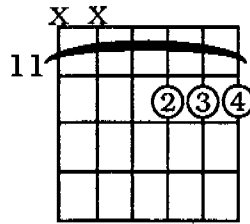
D Maj. 7th
D Maj. 7th form
1 Chord Key of D



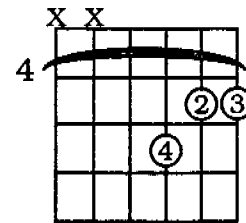
B min. 7th
D min. 7th form
6 Chord Key of D



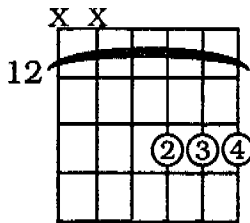
E min. 7th
D min. 7th form
2 Chord Key of D



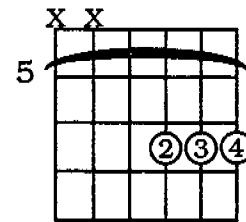
C# min 7b5
D min. 7b5 form
7 Chord Key of D



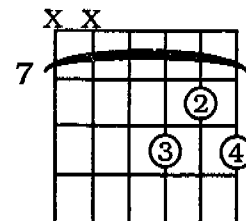
F# min. 7th
D min. 7th form
3 Chord Key of D



D Maj. 7th
D Maj. 7th form
1 Chord Key of D



G Maj. 7th
D Maj. 7th form
4 Chord Key of D



A Dom. 7th
D Dom. 7th form
5 Chord Key of D

Chord Progression

Progressions are chords *progressing* from one to another in a logical musical sequence. They are the harmonic framework supporting the melodic focus. In order to understand how chord progressions work on the guitar, we'll need to have a working knowledge of keys, and keep a few other balls in the air at once. The requirements will be listed in reverse order (last to first) to show what is operating and why it is necessary.

To execute chords and progressions on the fretboard we need to combine each one's musical formula with a fretboard form as discussed in Vol. II. In general we could play a progression using all open position forms (different forms, same position); we could also use a single form in various positions (same form, different positions); or, most likely, combinations of different forms and positions.

Musically, chords progress in a manner that can be reduced to number values that apply equally to any key or key area. That makes the chords in any key: 1 2 3 4 5 6 and 7 (also written I II III IV V VI and VII). For example a common progression is: 1 6 4 5. The rules for what makes a good progression seem to be the same rules for music in general: whatever sounds good, is good.

To to be able to specify exactly which chord each number represents, we apply both a name and type that identifies each chord within a given key. A chord's **name** is its letter and accidental (when applicable). A chord's **type** is a quality specified by its formula. For example the 1 6 4 5 progression in the key of D is: D Major, B minor, G Major, and A Major; (abbreviated D, Bm, G, and A - since a chord type not otherwise specified is assumed to be Major.) The *type* is Major, the (letter) *name* is D. The type is minor, the name is B; the type is Major and the name is G; etc.

The *number* of a chord is always a specific type of chord. Using triads: "1" chords are always Major, "2" chords are always minor, "3" chords are minor, "4" chords are Major, "5" chords are Major, "6" chords are minor, and "7" chords are always diminished. Put the other way, the 1, 4, and 5 chords are always Major; the 2, 3, and 6, are always minor; and the 7 chord is always diminished. This is the easiest part since it only changes if you use quatrads (sevenths) or a new tonality or modality. Using seventh chords, the 1 chords are Maj. 7th; 2 chords are min. 7th; 3 chords are min. 7th; 4 chords are Maj. 7th; 5 chords are dom. 7th, 6 chords are minor 7th, 7 chords are min. 7th b5.

To be able to name each chord in a key we first need to know the notes in the key by letter name (and sharp or flat accidentals). Example: The notes (1 2 3 4 5 6 and 7) in the key of D are: D E F# G A B and C#.

To know what letter name the notes in a key are, we need to know the key *signature* of the key. The **signature** is the number of *accidentals* in the key and which ones they are. For example signature of the key of D is : two sharps - F# and C#. The key signature of the key of Eb is 3 flats - Bb Eb and Ab.

To know the key signatures for any key you derive the sharp keys one way and the flat keys another using one kind of counting system for sharp keys, and another for flat keys. The counting system for deriving both sharp and flat key signatures have two parts: Counting in intervals then adding on accidentals in a specific sequence.

Progressions - The Chords In A Key

For sharped keys you count in intervals of five to get to each successive key and then add another sharp. Starting with the key of C, the signature is 0 sharps. Five up from C is the key of G, and it has 1 sharp (adds 1). Five up from G is D and it has 2 (adds 1) sharps. Five up from D is A and it (adds 1) has 3 sharps etc.

Sharps are added to each successive key in the following order: FCGDAEB. (That is : F# C# G# D# A# E# and B#). A way to remember this letter sequence is the phrase: Fat Cats Get Dangerous And Eat Birds or just repeat the letters until you know them.

Now combine the addition of each successive sharp with each next key. For example the starting key is always C. C has 0 sharps. Count up five to G and it has one sharp-the first sharp is F# so the key sig. for G is F#. The notes in G are: G A B C D E and F#. Next example: Counting five from the key of G gives us the next key: D. D has two sharps F(at) and C(ats) sharp or F# and C#. The notes in the key of D are: D E F# G A B and C#.

The Flat keys work in a similar manner. First they count in fours instead of fives to each successive key. Starting from C, the next key is F, then Bb, then Eb, and so on.

The Flat keys successively add flats in the order: BEADGCF (That is, Bb Eb Ab Db Gb Cb and Fb). A way to remember this one is the stupid phrase: Bill Edwards Always Did Get Cold Feet (worked for me) or just learn the sharps backwards as well.

Now combine the addition of each successive flat with each successive key. For example the starting key is again C. C has 0 flats. Count up four to F and it has one flat - the first flat is Bb so the key sig. for F is Bb. That makes the notes in F: F G A Bb C D and E. Next example: Counting four from the key of F gives us the next key: Bb (remember Bb was added right then). The notes in Bb are: Bb C D Eb F G and B. Next key, Eb, has three flats Bb, Eb, and Ab. The notes in the key of Eb are: Eb F G Ab Bb C and D.

Ok maybe it was more than a few balls to keep in the air. If this is your first exposure to these areas, you're probably either back punching the pause and rewind buttons on your cassette recorder, or staring into space wondering exactly when your nice friendly guitar turned into such a hideous, incomprehensible beast. It isn't over yet. Now we have to go back and do it in the other direction. To understand chord progression we first need the notes of a key to build the chords (in the key) upon. (If you don't yet know how to derive the notes in a key, go to the chapter on keys.) The notes in the key of F are: F G A Bb C D and E. The chords types (if triads) in any key will always be in the same order: Major, minor, minor, Major, Major, minor, and diminished. The chords in any key are given a numerical value (1-7) so they are equivalent in any key. This number also tells us what type of chord it will be:

1 chords are Major	or	Major seventh
2 chords are minor	or	minor seventh
3 chords are minor	or	minor
4 chords are Major	or	Major seventh
5 chords are Major	or	Dominant seventh
6 chords are minor	or	minor seventh
7 chords are diminished	or	minor seventh, flat five

Progressions - The Chords In A Key

Combining the number value, chord types and notes of a key gives us the chords in a key. Continuing with the key of "F" this means the triads and seventh chords in F are:

1 chord:	F Maj.	or	F Maj. 7
2 chord:	G min.	or	G min. 7
3 chord:	A min.	or	A min. 7
4 chord:	Bb Maj.	or	Bb Maj. 7
5 chord:	C Maj.	or	C Dom. 7
6 chord:	D min.	or	D min. 7
7 chord:	E dim.	or	E min. 7 b5

The triads and sevenths in the key of E are:

1 chord:	E Maj.	or	E Maj. 7
2 chord:	F# min.	or	F# min. 7
3 chord:	G# min.	or	G# min. 7
4 chord:	A Maj.	or	A Maj. 7
5 chord:	B Maj.	or	B Dom. 7
6 chord:	C# min.	or	C# min. 7
7 chord:	D# dim.	or	D# min. 7 b5

The triads and sevenths in the key of C are:

1 chord:	C Maj.	or	C Maj. 7
2 chord:	D min.	or	D min. 7
3 chord:	E min.	or	E min. 7
4 chord:	F Maj.	or	F Maj. 7
5 chord:	G Maj.	or	G Dom. 7
6 chord:	A min.	or	A min. 7
7 chord:	B dim.	or	B min. 7 b5

The triads and sevenths in the key of D are:

1 chord:	D Maj.	or	D Maj. 7
2 chord:	E min.	or	E min. 7
3 chord:	F# min.	or	F# min. 7
4 chord:	G Maj.	or	G Maj. 7
5 chord:	A Maj.	or	A Dom. 7
6 chord:	B min.	or	B min. 7
7 chord:	C# dim.	or	C# min. 7 b5

The triads and sevenths in the key of Ab are:

1 chord:	Ab Maj.	or	Ab Maj. 7
2 chord:	Bb min.	or	Bb min. 7
3 chord:	C min.	or	C min. 7
4 chord:	Db Maj.	or	Db Maj. 7
5 chord:	Eb Maj.	or	Eb Dom. 7
6 chord:	F min.	or	F min. 7
7 chord:	G dim.	or	G min. 7 b5

Progressions - Number Sequences and Chord Type

The use of the triad vs. sevenths (or ninths, elevenths and thirteenth and polychords for that matter) is a matter of style and taste in practice. In rock, the distortion and other effects actually prevent us from distinguishing much in the way of *color* tones. A metal guitar sound is so heavily saturated with compression and distortion that you can't distinguish much more than basic intervals. In most bluegrass and folk music, the only seventh chord you're likely to hear is the dominant in the five chord, and the rest will be triads. In modern country music you're much more likely to hear quatrads than even a few years ago. In blues, ninth chords are essential to the style. In jazz, the sevenths are considered the basic units, with exotic alterations and extensions a source of distinction. In popular music, anything goes. More on this in Styles. As individual musicians, each of us has to determine whether we feel the triads or the sevenths are the basic chordal unit in a key.

The numerical value of a chord in a key means we can specify a progression with only a key and a number. For example, the 2 chord in the key of G is A min. (or A min. 7th). A *four* chord in F is Bb Maj. (7th). A 6 chord in Bb is F min. A 7 chord in the key of A is G# dim (or G# min. 7b5). A 3 in C# is E#. A 5 in F is C (7). And so on. The ability to think and *move* in increments such as these is fundamental for good musicianship.

A progression of chords is therefore easily reduced to number sequences in a key. For example, the progression: 1 4 1 5 in the key of A is the chords: A D A E, and should be fairly recognizable as the basis for more than a few memorable rhythm guitar parts. Another obvious progression is 1 2 3 4 5. In the key of, say, E this is the chords: E F# min. G# min. A and B. This is also the harmonic basis for numerous songs and depending on how you expressed it rhythmically, should bring a few things to mind. 1 2 5 1 and 1 4 5 1 progressions form the basis for thousands of songs. Now is the time for experimentation and application. By turning this process around, you can reduce progressions you already know to basic elements and even transpose them to other keys without trouble. Play the chords of some songs you know and write down the number sequence. Change the numbers into chords from another key and play the progression again in the new key and you will have transposed a progression.

When we actually apply progressions to the fretboard, we have the option of expressing them in various forms and positions guitarwise. When you played the 1 4 1 5 progression above, which forms did you use? All open forms perhaps. Now use only A forms or C forms and only change positions. Try the progressions using various combinations of forms and positions for feel and sound. Next play the same number sequence transposed to other keys and listen for the similarities and differences.

The fact that certain number chords are always a certain type can work in the other direction as well. For example an A min. chord is either going to be a 2 chord in the key of G, a 3 chord in the key of F or a 6 chord in the key of C. An Eb Maj. 7 will either be a 1 chord in the key of Eb or a 4 chord in the key of Bb. A G Dom. 7 can only be a 5 chord in the key of C. An F min. 7 chord can be a 2 in Eb, a 3 in Db, or a 6 in Ab. A B Maj. can be a 1 in B, a four in F#, or a 5 in E. An A dim. can only be a 7 in Bb. A B min. 7 b5 can only be a 7 in C. And so on. Since certain types of progression are more common than others, then you'll start to see a reduction in the number of possibilities to a manageable number. In fact, even exotic sounding progressions are usually combinations of common ones which have modulated to other keys and back.

Progressions - Chord Function

The combination of brief modulations of key area with altered and extended chords provide a rich harmonic foundation on which to base melodies and melodic ideas. If you think about it, no musical endeavor has to be incomprehensible if we are willing to consider multi layered combinations of basic elements.

If you are into the creative aspects of guitar such as songwriting or arranging, the question sooner or later becomes, "How do chords work together?" or "What chords sound good together?". What follows is an attempt to put questions such as these into perspective.

In an early effort to attribute them with a specific function and placement, the notes and chords in a key were given descriptive names: tonic, supertonic, mediant, subdominant, dominant, submediant, and subtonic (1 2 3 4 5 6 7). Although not all of these terms are actually utilized in modern times, you will still hear three of them used frequently in the context of chord progression. They are the tonic, subdominant and dominant, or 1, 4, and 5 chords. The terms tonic, subdominant, and dominant, refer to the function of the chord in a progression. In any and every key, the 1, 4, and 5 chords are considered the *principle* chords. They are the chords used most often in music as a basic harmonic background for the vocal, melodic, or improvisational foreground. Many (some say most) rock, country, blues, and folk songs use just the principle chords as the extent of the harmonic content. In jazz, the 1, 2, and 5 chords often serve the same purpose. Songwriters and composers of many genres often embrace this bare bones approach as the least equivocal harmonic material. As a general rule, the most common progression is: tonic, subdominant, dominant, and back to tonic.

But what about the four other chords, the 2, 3, 6, and 7? In progressions, the others will function like either a tonic, subdominant or dominant chord. Over a period of time, the other four names (supertonic, mediant, submediant, and subtonic) have faded in meaning since each of them behave like either a tonic chord, a subdominant chord or a dominant chord in actual usage. This is important so it bears restating. **The 3, and 6 chords function like tonics; the 2 like a subdominant; the 7 like a dominant.**

Again, tonic chords tend to progress to subdominants, subdominants progress to dominants, and dominants progress to tonics. This must be tempered with the understanding that there will usually be a melodic factor that must be taken into consideration. Many (some say most) progressions follow a general sequence of tonic, subdominant, dominant and tonic as a basis for development. The following is a table of some of those possibilities:

T	S	D	T	T	S	D	T	T	S	D	T
1	4	5	1	3	4	5	1	3	4	5	3
1	2	5	1	6	4	5	1	6	4	5	3
1	4	7	1	3	2	5	1	6	4	5	6
1	2	7	1	6	2	5	1	3	2	5	3
1	4	5	3	3	2	7	1	3	2	7	3
1	4	5	6	6	2	7	1	3	4	7	3
1	2	5	3	3	4	7	1	6	2	7	3
1	2	5	6	3	4	5	6	6	4	7	3

Progressions

Using the previous number sequences, pick some keys and forms and play through the progressions using new fretboard combinations. In other words if you are used to playing the open chords, use forms in other positions and vice versa. The first thing you should notice is that some of these progressions have a sense of finality to them especially if they end in a 1 chord. The term for this repose is cadence. A **cadence** is a progression that gives a feeling of resting something like hitting home plate. Naturally there are about a zillion different types of cadences with some interesting names to learn, but we'll just mention a few of them here. The 5 - 1, or *authentic* cadence is the most definite and the most common. The 4 - 1, or *plagal* cadence is common to church music (Ah-men). When a progression ends in other than a 1, it is termed *deceptive*, the most common being 5 - 6.

What follows are a collection of four bar progressions (including cadences) all of which are in the key of **D Major**. They have been notated in slash sheet format. For learning purposes, they have additional markings that indicate each chord's numerical value and function within the progression. T=Tonic; S=Subdominant; and D=Dominant.

The first group are 2-5 variations. The 2-5 is one of the most widely used two chord progressions in popular and many other styles of music. Here's two strategies to derive the maximum enjoyment from this entire section. Play through the progressions and find the ones you like, then 1) teach the chords to a friend and make them play it over and over while you practice your lead playing, or 2) add a melody and lyrics, make a hit song, retire, and play guitar all day.

Em A Em A Em7 A Em A
 2-S 5-D 2-S 5-D 2-S 5-D 2-S 5-D

Em A D Bm Em A7 D
 2-S 5-D 1-T 6-T 2-S 5-D 1-T

G A7 D Bm Em A D
 4-S 5-D 1-T 6-T 2-S 5-D 1-T

D F# Em A
 1-T 3-T 2-S 5-D

D G Em7 A
 1-T 4-S 2-S 5-D

Progressions

More four bar progressions in the key of D Major with numeric value and function added.

D A G A Bm G D A

1-T 5-D 4-S 5-D 6-T 4-S 1-T 5-D

G D A D G A D

4-S 1-T 5-D 1-T 4-S 5-D 1-T

D Em G A

1-T 2-S 4-S 5-D

Bm G D A

6-T 4-S 1-T 5-D

D F#m G A

6-T 3-T 4-S 5-D

D A Bm G D A7 D

1-T 5-D 6-T 4-S 1-T 5-D 1-T

G D F# dim. Bm Em A7 D

4-S 1-T 7-D 6-T 2-S 5-D 1-T

Progressions - Minor Keys

The way diatonic progression works with minor keys is a little different than with Major keys. Building the chords on the natural minor degrees does not produce much in the way of chord function. For the minor keys to work in a manner similar to Majors, we must build the chords off the harmonic minor degrees instead of the natural minor. The addition of the sharped seventh degree creates chord function where before there was none. As before we'll determine the key signature to learn the notes in the key and build the chords on each degree in the key.

In the key of D minor, the key signature is Bb, making the notes in the key: D E F G A Bb and C. This is the same key signature (and notes) as the key of F Major, and the term for this relationship is *relative*. D minor is the relative minor of F Maj., and F Maj. is the relative major of D min. Every major key has a relative minor (and vice versa) which is an interval of a minor third below it. Knowing the relative is the easiest way to determine the key signature for minor keys. Then add the sharped seventh degree to make it harmonic minor. The triads and quatrads which will occur on these degrees in order are as follows.

1 chords:	minor	or	minor #7th
2 chords:	diminished	or	minor 7th b5
3 chords:	augmented	or	Major 7th #5
4 chords:	minor	or	minor 7th
5 chords:	Major	or	dominant 7th
6 chords:	Major	or	Major 7th
7 chords:	diminished	or	diminished 7th

Adding the sharped seventh degree or the harmonic minor gives us the notes: D E F G A Bb and C#. The chords in D harmonic minor (and their spellings) are now going to be:

1 chord: D min.	Spelled: D F A	or	D min. #7	Spelled: D F A C#
2 chord: E dim.	Spelled: E G Bb	or	E min. 7 b5	Spelled: E G Bb D
3 chord: F aug.	Spelled: F A C#	or	F Maj.7 #5	Spelled: F A C# E
4 chord: G min.	Spelled: G Bb D	or	G min. 7th	Spelled: G Bb D F
5 chord: A Maj.	Spelled: A C# E	or	A dom. 7th	Spelled: A C# E G
6 chord: Bb Maj.	Spelled: Bb D F	or	Bb Maj. 7th	Spelled: Bb D F A
7 chord: C# dim.	Spelled: C# E G	or	C# dim. 7th	Spelled: C# E G Bb

The next key we'll do this in is E harmonic minor. The key signature for E minor is the same as for G Major, so the notes in E natural minor are E F# G A B C and D. The addition of the sharped 7th degree produces the notes: E F# G A B C and D#.

The chords (and their spellings) in E harmonic minor are:

1 chord: E min.	Spelled: E G B	or	E min. #7	Spelled: E G B D#
2 chord: F# dim.	Spelled: F# A C	or	F# min. 7 b5	Spelled: F# A C E
3 chord: G aug.	Spelled: G B D#	or	G Maj.7 #5	Spelled: G B D# F#
4 chord: A min.	Spelled: A C E	or	A min. 7th	Spelled: A C E G
5 chord: B Maj.	Spelled: B D# F#	or	B dom. 7th	Spelled: B D# F# A
6 chord: C Maj.	Spelled: C E G	or	C Maj. 7th	Spelled: C E G B
7 chord: D# dim.	Spelled: D# F# A	or	D# dim. 7th	Spelled: D# F# A C

Progressions - Minor Keys

The next key is C harmonic minor. The relative major of C minor is Eb (up a minor third), so the key signature for both keys is Bb, Eb, & Ab. Adding the #7 of the harmonic minor makes the notes in C harmonic minor: C D Eb F G Ab and B \sharp . The chords in C harmonic minor and their spellings are:

1 chord: C min.	Spelled:	C Eb G	or	C min. #7	Spelled:	C Eb G B
2 chord: D dim.	Spelled:	D F Ab	or	D min. 7 b5	Spelled:	D F Ab C
3 chord: Eb aug.	Spelled:	Eb G B	or	Eb Maj. 7 #5	Spelled:	Eb G B G
4 chord: F min.	Spelled:	F Ab C	or	F min. 7th	Spelled:	F Ab C Eb
5 chord: G Maj.	Spelled:	G B D	or	G dom. 7th	Spelled:	G B D F
6 chord: Ab Maj.	Spelled:	Ab C Eb	or	Ab Maj. 7th	Spelled:	Ab C Eb G
7 chord: B dim.	Spelled:	B D F	or	B dim. 7th	Spelled:	B D F Ab

The next key we'll do this in is F harmonic minor. The relative major of F is Ab (up a minor third), so the key signature for both is Bb Eb Ab and Db. Adding the #7 of the harmonic minor makes the notes in F harmonic minor: F G Ab Bb C Db and E \sharp . The chords and their spellings in F harmonic minor are:

1 chord: F min.	Spelled:	F Ab C	or	F min. #7	Spelled:	F Ab C E
2 chord: G dim.	Spelled:	G Bb Db	or	G min. 7 b5	Spelled:	G Bb Db F
3 chord: Ab aug.	Spelled:	Ab C E	or	Ab Maj. 7 #5	Spelled:	Ab C E G
4 chord: Bb min.	Spelled:	Bb Db F	or	Bb min. 7th	Spelled:	Bb Db F Ab
5 chord: C Maj.	Spelled:	C E G	or	C dom. 7th	Spelled:	C E G Bb
6 chord: Db Maj.	Spelled:	Db F Ab	or	Db Maj. 7th	Spelled:	Db F Ab G
7 chord: E dim.	Spelled:	E G Bb	or	E dim. 7th	Spelled:	E G Bb Db

The next key is A harmonic minor. The relative major of A minor is C (up a minor third), so the key signature for both keys is no accidentals. Adding the #7 of the harmonic minor makes the notes in A harmonic minor: A B C D E F and G \sharp . The chords in A harmonic minor and their spellings are:

1 chord: A min.	Spelled:	A C E	or	A min. #7	Spelled:	A C E G \sharp
2 chord: B dim.	Spelled:	B C F	or	B min. 7 b5	Spelled:	B D F A
3 chord: C aug.	Spelled:	C E G \sharp	or	C Maj. 7 #5	Spelled:	C E G \sharp B
4 chord: D min.	Spelled:	D F A	or	D min. 7th	Spelled:	D F A C
5 chord: E Maj.	Spelled:	E G \sharp B	or	E dom. 7th	Spelled:	E G \sharp B D
6 chord: F Maj.	Spelled:	F A C	or	F Maj. 7th	Spelled:	F A C E
7 chord: G \sharp dim.	Spelled:	G \sharp B D	or	G \sharp dim. 7th	Spelled:	G \sharp B D F

The last key we'll do this in is G harmonic minor. The relative major of G is Bb (up a minor third), so the key signature for both is Bb and Eb. Adding the #7 of the harmonic minor makes the notes in G harmonic minor: G A Bb C D Eb and F \sharp . The chords and their spellings in G harmonic minor are:

1 chord: G min.	Spelled:	G Bb D	or	G min. #7	Spelled:	G Bb D F \sharp
2 chord: A dim.	Spelled:	A C Eb	or	G min. 7 b5	Spelled:	A C Eb G
3 chord: Bb aug.	Spelled:	Bb D F \sharp	or	Bb Maj. 7 #5	Spelled:	Bb D F \sharp A
4 chord: C min.	Spelled:	C Eb G	or	C min. 7th	Spelled:	C Eb G Bb
5 chord: D Maj.	Spelled:	D F \sharp A	or	D dom. 7th	Spelled:	D F \sharp A G
6 chord: Eb Maj.	Spelled:	Eb G Bb	or	Eb Maj. 7th	Spelled:	Eb G Bb D
7 chord: F \sharp dim.	Spelled:	F \sharp A C	or	F \sharp dim. 7th	Spelled:	F \sharp A C Eb

Progressions - Minor Key Functions

With minor keys, the same general philosophy applies as with majors in that whatever sounds good, is good. The same, somewhat less general order of functions also applies in that there are Tonic, Subdominant, and Dominant functioning chords that tend to progress in the order: T S D and T. Here again, the 1, 3, and 6 chords are tonics; the 2 and 4 chords are subdominant; and the 5 and 7 are dominant. Here again, progressions which produce a feeling of rest or repose are termed cadences.

The triads and quatrads in D harmonic minor are:

D min.	or	D min. #7
E dim.	or	E min. 7b5
F aug.	or	F Maj. 7th #5
G min.	or	G min. 7th
A Maj.	or	A Dom. 7th
Bb Maj.	or	Bb Maj. 7th
C# dim.	or	C# dim. 7th

What follows are some four bar progressions in the key of D minor. The 5-1 progression seems to be the most common two chord progression in the minor tonality.

The following table summarizes the chord progressions shown in the five staves:

Staff	Measure 1	Measure 2	Measure 3	Measure 4
1	A (5-D)	Dm (1-T)	A7 (5-D)	Dm A Dm (1-T 5-D 1-T)
2	Dm (1-T)	Gm (4-S)	Bb (6-T) A7 (5-D)	Dm (1-T)
3	Dm (1-T) C# dim. (7-D)	Dm/F (1-T) Gm (4-S)	F aug. (3-T) A7 (5-D)	Dm (1-T)
4	Dm (1-T)	Bb (6-T)	E dim. (2-S) A7 (5-D)	Dm (1-T)
5	F aug. (3-T) E dim. (2-S)	A7 (5-D) Dm (1-T)	Gm (4-S) Bb (6-S)	A7 (5-D) Dm (1-T)

Progressions - Modulation

A certain amount of experimentation will demonstrate that the limitation of the chords to one key makes harmonic progression a little on the predictable side. What's called for are ways to access other chords and key areas in an orderly manner. The term for changing key areas is **modulation**. The methods for modulation we will be discussing are secondary dominants, diminished sevenths, function shifting, tonality shifting, and chromaticism.

The first method of moving beyond the boundaries of the key is termed *secondary dominants*. **Secondary dominants** are dominants of chords other than the tonic in the key. The concept behind secondary dominance is the idea of temporarily using a chord not of the key that is a dominant of a chord that *is* in the key. The pull of the fifth is the strongest tension and resolution of all two-chord progressions, and permits us to travel outside our key by one chord easily and harmoniously. For example: The key of C Major has the chords C Dm Em F G Am and B dim. The primary dominant is the G chord and we describe it musically as the 5 of 1 (V of I) or just the 5 chord. The first secondary dominant is the 5 of 2, or A Major since the 5 of Dm is A, and dominants are Major (for triads). The next secondary dominant is the 5 of 3, or B Major. The next one would be the 5 of 4, but using triads, that is our tonic again, so we'll skip it for now. The 5 of 5 is the D Major chord. The 5 of 6 is the E Major and the 5 of 7 is F#. This gives us five secondary dominant chords with which we can temporarily leave the confines of the key. Secondary dominants can be written 5 of 2, 5/2, V/II, etc. In the function part of the example below, S/D is an abbreviation for secondary dominant.

The (two chord) secondary dominant progressions in the key of C are:

5/2:	A Maj.	to	D min.
5/3:	B Maj.	to	E min.
5/5:	D Maj.	to	G Maj.
5/6:	E Maj.	to	A min.
5/7:	F# Maj.	to	B dim.

C A Dm G C E Am F etc.

1-T 5/2-S/D 2-S 5-D 6-T 5/6-S/D 6-T 4-S

The (two chord) secondary dominant progressions in the key of G are:

5/2:	E Maj.	to	A min.
5/3:	F# Maj.	to	B min.
5/5:	A Maj.	to	D Maj.
5/6:	B Maj.	to	E min.
5/7:	C# Maj.	to	F# dim.

The (two chord) secondary dominant progressions in the key of Bb are:

5/2:	G Maj.	to	C min.
5/3:	A Maj.	to	D min.
5/5:	C Maj.	to	F Maj.
5/6:	D Maj.	to	G min.
5/7:	E Maj.	to	A dim.

Progressions - Modulation

Take some time and write out the secondary dominants in the keys you find yourself playing in the most. It may help to simplify things if you remember that the order of notes in fifths is B E A D G C G F Bb Eb Ab Db Gb Cb and Fb.

Diminished seventh chords provide an interesting means of both changing key areas and substituting for the dominant chord. With diminished chords, however, it is important to be able to think enharmonically. **Enharmonic** means the same tone has different names. Here's how diminished substitutions work. An "A" diminished seventh chord has the notes A C Eb and Gb. It can be expressed three other ways in inversion: C Eb Gb A; Eb Gb A C; and Gb A C Eb. *If we flat the root tone of each inversion, these are the chords that are produced: Ab7th (Ab C Eb Gb); B7th (B Eb Gb A) - (B7th B D# F# A enharmonically); D7th (D Gb A C) - (D F# A C enharmonically); and F7th (F A C Eb).* This means that just one diminished seventh chord can be resolved to the 1 chords of Ab 7th, B7th, D 7th and F 7th. The symmetry of the diminished seventh chord results in only three completely different ones possible, as follows.

The four 2-chord progressions built from the (A C Eb Gb) diminished chord are:

A dim.7	substitutes for (Ab dom.7th)	and progresses to Db Maj.
C dim. 7	substitutes for (B dom. 7th)	and progresses to E Maj.
Eb dim. 7	substitutes for (D dom. 7th)	and progresses to G Maj.
Gb dim. 7	substitutes for (F dom. 7th)	and progresses to Bb Maj.

The four 2-chord progressions built from the (G Bb Db Fb) diminished chord are:

G dim.7	substitutes for (F# dom.7th)	and progresses to B Maj.
Bb dim. 7	substitutes for (A dom. 7th)	and progresses to D Maj.
Db dim. 7	substitutes for (C dom. 7th)	and progresses to F Maj.
Fb dim. 7	substitutes for (Eb dom. 7th)	and progresses to Ab Maj.

The four 2-chord progressions built from the (B D F Ab) diminished chord are:

B dim.7	substitutes for (Bb dom.7th)	and progresses to Eb Maj.
D dim. 7	substitutes for (Db dom. 7th)	and progresses to Gb Maj.
F dim. 7	substitutes for (E dom. 7th)	and progresses to A Maj.
Ab dim. 7	substitutes for (G dom. 7th)	and progresses to C Maj.

Naturally, the diminished sevenths do not have to resolve to a Major chord type. They can progress to minors and other types of chords. Below are a couple of progressions using this type of substitution. More later.

Two musical staves illustrating chord progressions using diminished seventh chords. Each chord is represented by a slash on a staff, and the resolution is indicated by '1-T' and '5-D' below the staff.

Staff 1: C, C dim., G, G7, Am, F, Gb dim., G
 1-T 5-D 5-D 5-D 6-T 4-S 1-T 5-D

Staff 2: C, Db dim., F, G7, C, G dim., Dm, G
 1-T 5-D 5-D 5-D 6-T 4-S 1-T 5-D

Progressions - Modulation

The term **function shifting** pertains to treating a chord (which has a specific tonic, subdominant or dominant function) as one of the other two functions (other than secondary dominants). In a major key, any minor triad you encounter within the key is going to be either the 2 (subdominant), 3 (tonic), or 6 (tonic) chord in that key. If you shift the function of a 2 chord, you will treat it like one of the tonic chords and vice versa.

Any major triad you encounter within a key will either be a 1 (tonic) chord, 4 (subdominant) chord, or a 5 (dominant) chord. If you shift the function of a 1 chord, you will treat it like either a subdominant or dominant chord. Shifting the function of the 4 chord means treating it like a dominant or tonic. Shifting the function of a tonic chord means changing it to subdominant or dominant, and so on.

In the first example, the Am would clearly be a tonic (6 chord) in the key of C, but the function shifted to subdominant (2 chord) in the key of G.

A musical staff in treble clef showing four measures of chords. Above the staff are the chord names: C, Am, D, and G. Below the staff are the function labels: 1-T, 2-S, 5-D, and 1-T. Each measure contains a series of slanted lines representing the chord's sound.

In the next example, the Em becomes a subdominant in the key of E instead of a tonic in the key of C.

A musical staff in treble clef showing four measures of chords. Above the staff are the chord names: C, Em, A7, and D. Below the staff are the function labels: 1-T, 2-S, 5-D, and 1-T. Each measure contains a series of slanted lines representing the chord's sound.

Tonality shifting is a term for changing the character of a chord from one type to another. This means you can leave the key temporarily by changing a major chord to a minor (and vice versa) and then treat it as if it were a 2, 3, or 6 chord of another key.

In the example below, the first shift is when the C tonic changes to a dominant in the key of F. When the F changes to F min., it becomes a subdominant in the key of Eb.

A musical staff in treble clef showing six measures of chords. Above the staff are the chord names: C, C7, F, Fm, Bb, and Eb. Below the staff are the function labels: 1-T, 5-D, 1-T, 2-S, 5-D, and 1-T. Each measure contains a series of slanted lines representing the chord's sound.

In the following example, the first shift is when the F tonic changes to a dominant in the key of Bb. When the Bb changes to Bb min., its function can't be established until a chord follows.

A musical staff in treble clef showing four measures of chords. Above the staff are the chord names: F, F aug., Bb, and Bbm. Below the staff are the function labels: 1-T, 5-D, 1-T. Each measure contains a series of slanted lines representing the chord's sound.

Progressions - Modulation

The last method of modulation we'll discuss covers a great deal of harmonic motion. It is termed chromaticism. **Chromaticism** is the use of half step increments as scale or key degrees instead of the usual combinations of whole steps and half steps. Major, minor and other chords played in half step increments are common to almost every music style. Try to keep these all purpose alternatives in mind when developing ideas. They will be useful in a variety of situations.

In the example below, the triplet chords F F# and G produce a smooth chromatic transition to the G# chord in the second measure. The G# chord can be considered a new tonic or possibly a chromatic dominant of C since it is raised one half step above G.

Musical notation showing a chromatic progression of chords: F, F F# G G#, C, C. The first measure contains F (4-S) and a triplet of F F# G G# (#5-D and 1-T). The second measure contains C (1-T) and C (1-T).

Below the motion from the E to F and A to A# are both examples of chromaticism.

Musical notation showing chromatic motion of notes: E (5-D), F (#5-D), E (5-D), F (#5-D), A (5-D), A# (#5-D), A (5-D), A# (#5-D).

The last section deals with alternative methods of progression in modern and popular music. The first one is the concept of non-harmonic guitar oriented progressions dubbed *sonic shapes*. With sonic shapes, the tonal characteristics of chords in sequence takes a back seat to the guitar pattern for the purpose of uncovering new sounds independent of traditional harmonic organization. With sonic shapes, anything goes. Sonic shapes are patterns repeated in several positions on the fretboard. Noted jazz guitarist, Howard Roberts, used to write a column for *Guitar Player* magazine, and spoke frequently on this subject. If you're interested, check out some of their back issues.

Musical notation showing a guitar pattern with notes and fret numbers (5, 6, 7, 5, 6, 7, 5, 6, 7, 5, 6, 7).

Progressions - Alternative Methods

The last alternative method for chord progression has been a mainstay of the pop, rock, and metal styles for many years. From the early metal of "Iron Man" to mainstream rock like "Smoke On The Water", to MTV's theme music, this type of progression is a modern songwriter's mainstay. It is the idea of building (usually) major chords upon pentatonic scale tones. For example, in the key of A pentatonic minor, the notes are: A C D E and G. The progression then would include the chords A Maj. C Maj. D Maj. E Maj. and G Maj. You can add the ubiquitous b5 degree (the so-called blue note) to the scale and include that chord as well.

With the exception of the tonic, the functions of each chord in sequence is somewhat unclear, so rather than try to attach a logic similar to the diatonic chords, we'll just leave it up to each person's judgement as to which chords tend to go where. The rhythmic parts are all but missing, so each player will have to fill in those blanks for now.

The image shows four musical staves, each with four measures of music. The notes are represented by slanted lines on a five-line staff. Chord names are written above the notes, and guitar fingering or strumming patterns are written below the staff.

- Staff 1:**
 - Measure 1: A (1-T)
 - Measure 2: C (1-T)
 - Measure 3: D Eb D C (1-T)
 - Measure 4: E G A G (1-T)
- Staff 2:**
 - Measure 1: A (1-T)
 - Measure 2: C A (1-T)
 - Measure 3: Eb D (1-T)
 - Measure 4: C A (1-T)
- Staff 3:**
 - Measure 1: A DC (1-T)
 - Measure 2: A E G (1-T)
 - Measure 3: A CD (1-T)
 - Measure 4: A (1-T)
- Staff 4:**
 - Measure 1: E G A (6-T)
 - Measure 2: D Eb E (2-S)
 - Measure 3: E G A (5-D)
 - Measure 4: DC A (1-T)

It is hoped that this system provides not just familiar progressions, but also a lot of possibilities for creative experimentation. At least there are sensible alternatives to stabbing in the dark for things that *might* work then trying to remember what sounded good and never knowing why. The methods presented offer a number of possibilities for chords in sequence. By combining varying, and experimenting, you should be able to use them to analyze and understand other people's music and more importantly, develop some ideas of your own.

Rhythm Playing

In this section, we combine rhythm and progressions. The first progression is based on the *two-five* in the key of C and it should bring to mind at least two or three pop songs. The harmonic structure begins with the progression 2 5 1 4 in the key of C, then the Bb behaves like a chromatic (sharp) 5 chord in Dm only to resolve to a 5/5 (E). The E is the dominant of the Am and the change to the A major makes it a dominant of the Dm and the cycle starts again.

The right hand strumming pattern is easy but not too sing-song sounding. Watch for the variation or rhythmic *turn around* in the last measure.

The musical score is divided into three systems, each with a guitar chord diagram and a corresponding musical staff. The first system shows chords Dm, G, and C. The second system shows chords F, Bb, and E. The third system shows chords Am and A. Each system includes a treble clef staff with a melody line and a bass staff with a strumming pattern. The strumming pattern consists of a sequence of down and up strokes, with some measures featuring a '7' indicating a specific strumming technique. The key signature is one flat (Bb), and the time signature is 4/4.

Chord diagrams shown above the first system: Dm, G, C.

Chord diagrams shown above the second system: F, Bb, E.

Chord diagrams shown above the third system: Am, A.

Rhythm Playing

The next rhythm features simple bass lines with the strumming pattern in a country or county rock style rhythm. The key is E minor and the harmonic structure of the progression is 1 3 4 6 5. Tonic to tonic (1-3), then subdominant to chromatic dominant (4-6), then to dominant (5).

Em G

Am C B7

Below is a variation in a similar style using triplets and strong upstrokes.

D G

C F B

Rhythm Playing

The next progression is basic rock and roll in A. If given a chance, most students will read around the standard notation when there is an alternative. In this exercise, the chord symbols only tell the first part of the story and so you'll have to read the notation to play the rhythm. The harmonic structure is all 1 4 5 stuff, so to keep it from being boring, we'll have to rely on other things. It is continued on the next page.

The exercise consists of four systems, each with a guitar chord diagram, a treble clef staff, and a bass clef staff. The key signature is A major (two sharps). The time signature is 4/4.

- System 1:** Chord diagrams for A and E. Treble clef: A major chord eighth-note patterns. Bass clef: Down-up rhythmic pattern.
- System 2:** Chord diagrams for A and A. Treble clef: A major chord eighth-note patterns, followed by a melodic phrase. Bass clef: Down-up rhythmic pattern, followed by a triplet of eighth notes.
- System 3:** Chord diagrams for A and A. Treble clef: A major chord eighth-note patterns. Bass clef: Down-up rhythmic pattern.
- System 4:** Chord diagrams for E and E. Treble clef: E major chord eighth-note patterns, followed by a melodic phrase. Bass clef: Down-up rhythmic pattern, followed by a triplet of eighth notes.

Rhythm Playing

D

D

A

A

E

D

A

E

Rhythm Playing

The next rhythm is a typical flamenco progression in B minor, and features the *rasgado* technique on the second beat of each measure. With the exception of the *rasgado*, this is the same strumming pattern used in the first exercise. The difference in the chord progression alone changes the feel as well as the style.

Next is a typical bluegrass style rhythm part. Bluegrass groups tend to rely on the steady bass lines as found in the example below. These two lines are the "A" part, with the "B" part on the following page.

Rhythm Playing

C C7 F C

The first system of music consists of two measures. The first measure is divided into two parts: the first part contains a C major chord and a C7 chord, and the second part contains an F major chord and a C major chord. The treble clef staff shows the chord voicings with stems pointing down. The bass staff shows a rhythmic pattern of triplets (three notes beamed together) and single notes, with downstrokes indicated by downward arrows and upstrokes by upward arrows. The notes in the bass staff are: 3, 3, 3, 3, 0, 1, 3, 3, 3, 2.

C Am G C

The second system of music consists of two measures. The first measure is divided into two parts: the first part contains a C major chord and an Am (A minor) chord, and the second part contains a G major chord and a C major chord. The treble clef staff shows the chord voicings with stems pointing down. The bass staff shows a rhythmic pattern of triplets and single notes, with downstrokes indicated by downward arrows and upstrokes by upward arrows. The notes in the bass staff are: 3, 3, 3, 3, 2, 0, 0, 3, 3, 2.

Lead Playing

In the "Introduction to Lead Playing" section of Vol. II, we broached the subject by making an analogy to verbal communication, where the basic unit of exchange was the phrase, in the same sense as the basic unit of verbal communication is the sentence. (It might not be a bad idea to review that section as a foundation and basic philosophy for what follows here.) The object is to provide a more structured approach to improvisation than simply finding the right scale to play against the right chord or chords. Good lead playing accomplishes more than just playing appropriate scale tones against a progression, in that the player makes musical statements much the same way we speak in word groups with pauses that separate one idea from the next. As both the correct choice of words and the way they are used is essential to being understood, so the correct choice of melodic and rhythmic material and how they are expressed is fundamental to good lead playing. The vehicle for both is the phrase, and the purpose in both cases is to say something worth listening to.

The terms riff, lick, phrase, lead, solo, leitmotiv, motive, theme, subject, melody, etc., are all terms for musical statements consisting of tones in sequence expressed coherently. As groups they can be longer or shorter, and have more or less significance to the composition as a whole. For example a turnaround is shorter and less important than a song's melody but both are cut from the same cloth in terms of the material that goes into them. In more traditional terms, a theme or subject is larger and more significant than a motive. In common usage, a riff and a lick are considered the same thing - phrases - but leads and solos are usually collections of riffs and licks.

Whereas a musical phrase would be the equivalent of a verbal sentence, there can be larger sections that would be considered paragraphs or even essays. Often a lead is built around a few basic ideas that have been joined together and then restated, expanded, and developed to produce a more interesting and substantial whole. If you have an overall idea of what you are trying to accomplish or say in a solo, you can more effectively communicate by building your phrases based upon basic ideas.

What makes up a guitar phrase? The elements of a typical guitar phrase are: note selection, rhythmic expression, intervallic direction, iterations, and articulation techniques. Note selection pertains to a key area(s) and can be thought of as a *tone pool* where we draw from a selection of available resources for a specific purpose such as style or effect. This tonal orientation lends a fundamental character that prevails over the entire lead. The rhythmic expression is the combination of durations, tempo, etc., that contributes to the feel of the phrase. Intervallic direction is termed *motion* in traditional music theory, and pertains here to both the note by note raising or lowering of pitch, as well as the overall direction of the phrase and its sections. Iterations, or note sequences, are repeating series of tones in sequence. The term iteration is intended to convey repetition on not just one, but many levels often occurring simultaneously, such as numeric, intervallic, and sectional sequences and their repeating structures. The articulation techniques are the slurs, string tricks, etc., that are so much a part of guitar playing that they are often taken for granted or overlooked. In fact, the significance of hammer-ons, pull-offs, bends, etc., to phrase structure is such that I'd be willing to venture that it isn't likely that a lead has ever been played where they didn't figure in somehow. On the other hand, there have been times when the technique per se, has become the focus of the solo to the point that everything else is relegated to secondary status. Are you old enough to remember when right hand tapping became the big thing?

Lead Playing

What changes scales into musical phrases? The process that turns raw scales into usable riffs and licks is how they are expressed *rhythmically, iteratively, and melodically*. In the section on rhythmic phrasing, we examine the non-tonal characteristics of notes in sequence. In the section on iterative phrasing, we explore the repetition of note sequences in terms of various intervallic and numerical values. What do melodic phrases have that rhythmic and iterative ones don't? In a word - character. They have more personality and memorability in the form of rhythmic and tonal qualities in a synergistic combination. Iterations of note sequences contribute to phrasing, but as a kind of filler. Articulation techniques contribute also, giving them uniquely guitaristic qualities, as well. The melodic character of a phrase is more a matter of how things work as a whole, and how we relate to them as people. When it works, the whole becomes more than the sum of the parts.

Contrary to popular belief, the role of the solo in a song is not to demonstrate the technical proficiency of the lead guitarist. Self promotion notwithstanding, I believe it is to enhance the song and give it a secondary focus of interest. Having an outstanding technical command of the instrument, however, means you are going to be able to do things that you might not be able to do otherwise. The point is that the solo exists to create another level of interest. In other words, do something interesting, unusual, and unpredictable. The things we haven't heard before are what most of us listen for. Ah, what the hey. If all else fails just play faster than the other guy.

Since we've already examined the raw tonal groupings in Volume II, our exploration into phrasing will begin with primarily rhythmic statements, and progress to iterative and melodic statements.

Rhythmic Phrasing

What constitutes rhythmic *definition*? Within a composition there are a number of repetitive rhythmic characteristics. The most basic is the beat. The beat underlies all other rhythmic phenomena. The accented count of a group of beats gives a numerical value to the group known as meter. If the first of every three beats is accented, then it is said to be a *three*. If the first of every four beats is accented, then we will hear four beats per *measure* of time, and so on. For establishing relative values of durations within these groups, a value is given to each beat. This value is in the form of a type of note which gets a beat, such as a quarter note or eighth note. Overlying this rhythmic framework of beats, measures and durational values, our rhythmic phrasing is to be formed. What gives a phrase its definition is its cohesiveness and relevance. Rhythmic cohesion means that the durations making up the phrase hold together as a set with continuity. Relevance pertains to how well people will respond to it and whether they are likely to perceive it as a valid statement.

Rhythmic phrasing refers to the way the solo is played independent of pitch and other considerations. This reduces our focus to mainly the beat, and the combinations of durations. For phrasing purposes, it might be helpful to think of this as "the rhythm of the lead". This works for two reasons. First, the way each phrase is expressed on the single string level is really a microcosm of what happens on the rhythm playing level with all six strings. The larger strokes of rhythm playing are miniaturized down to one string where the tonal and rhythmic character varies more often, but the same principle is in effect. Second, it boils things down to just beats and durations. If you acquire the discipline to always play in definite rhythmic statements, half of all the possible mistakes you could make in lead playing stand to be eliminated. *Half* pertains to the definition of music as pitch and time relationships. In more positive terms, the advantage is that you will be playing more musically as a matter of course. As guitarists we tend to dismiss rhythmic issues as beginner stuff, and it is easy to lose sight of its significance in the area of lead playing. From a practical standpoint, playing rhythmically is a prerequisite to playing musically.

When improvising, try to mentally put the rhythm of each phrase out in front of the patterns, notes selection, articulations, etc., and concentrate on the part that gets taken for granted. The overall goal is to make statements that have rhythmic and tonal coherence in a way that makes them both more effective as a whole. The problem is that we tend to put our focus on the tonal aspects much the same way we automatically look at our left hand instead of our right whenever we are learning something new. The idea is to redirect our focus to see right hand as the all important rhythm maker. When the technical aspects of lead playing become less of an obstacle, the hard part becomes a matter of taste in the form of restraint. In other words, we have to discipline ourselves to try not to blurt out too many notes at one time.

Rhythm is how you say what you say in a lead. The tones are like the words, but the rhythm is the delivery including the emphasis and the expressiveness. This aspect of lead playing stands to contribute to your overall progress as much as any other. We'll start our approach by experimenting with simple rhythmic statements and then combine and vary. Since the beat is the unit of currency in rhythm, the beat groupings, or measures, will be the guide to the length of our statements. The first step is to establish how many measures or parts of measures a phrase is to have. By starting with small phrases, we can establish definition and build up to larger and more impressive ones as we go.

Rhythmic Phrasing

Next we'll present some two bar repeatable rhythm patterns that we can vary and layer in order to develop something of interest. First practice the basic rhythms until they are easy at about M.M. ♩-100. For obvious reasons, only the first figure has been notated in tablature.

The first figure is a two-bar rhythmic pattern in 4/4 time. The treble clef staff shows the following notes: Bar 1: quarter note G4, quarter note A4, quarter note B4, quarter note C5. Bar 2: quarter note D5, quarter note E5, quarter note F5, quarter note G5. The guitar tablature staff below shows the fret numbers: Bar 1: 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2. Bar 2: 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2.

The second figure is a two-bar rhythmic pattern in 4/4 time. The treble clef staff shows the following notes: Bar 1: quarter note G4, quarter note A4, quarter note B4, quarter note C5. Bar 2: quarter note D5, quarter note E5, quarter note F5, quarter note G5.

The third figure is a two-bar rhythmic pattern in 4/4 time. The treble clef staff shows the following notes: Bar 1: quarter note G4, quarter note A4, quarter note B4, quarter note C5. Bar 2: quarter note D5, quarter note E5, quarter note F5, quarter note G5.

The fourth figure is a two-bar rhythmic pattern in 4/4 time. The treble clef staff shows the following notes: Bar 1: quarter note G4, quarter note A4, quarter note B4, quarter note C5. Bar 2: quarter note D5, quarter note E5, quarter note F5, quarter note G5.

The fifth figure is a two-bar rhythmic pattern in 4/4 time. The treble clef staff shows the following notes: Bar 1: quarter note G4, quarter note A4, quarter note B4, quarter note C5. Bar 2: quarter note D5, quarter note E5, quarter note F5, quarter note G5.

The sixth figure is a two-bar rhythmic pattern in 4/4 time. The treble clef staff shows the following notes: Bar 1: quarter note G4, quarter note A4, quarter note B4, quarter note C5. Bar 2: quarter note D5, quarter note E5, quarter note F5, quarter note G5.

The seventh figure is a two-bar rhythmic pattern in 4/4 time. The treble clef staff shows the following notes: Bar 1: quarter note G4, quarter note A4, quarter note B4, quarter note C5. Bar 2: quarter note D5, quarter note E5, quarter note F5, quarter note G5.

Rhythmic Phrasing

Although there isn't anything to write home about, each of the previous examples has what would pass for rhythmic definition. Each two-measure phrase holds together and can be related to by us as listeners. If we try to put any more constraints on what constitutes definition, then we risk putting limitations on what can be a rhythmic statement. In fact too many things actually work to try to put much more spin on it. Outstanding examples of rhythmic definition are drummer Steve Gadd's snare drum intro to Paul Simons' song "Fifty Ways To Leave Your Lover", and the old General Cinema coming attractions hihat shuffle. Another distinct and haunting rhythm is the snare roll associated with a condemned man ascending the gallows.

We speak and write in phrases without even giving it much thought. It didn't come naturally at first, but by now we aren't even conscious of the process. Eloquent orators pace their delivery in calculated rhythms. Persuasive lawyers are trained to use precise pauses until the effects of significant statements have registered on their juries with maximum impact. Same thing applies here. If we are able to develop the rhythmic habit early, then later we will only have to concern ourselves with combinations and variations of rhythmic and other material.

In the following exercises, various tonal materials have been added to further develop the seven rhythmic phrases.

Musical exercise 1: A two-measure phrase in G major, 4/4 time. The melody consists of quarter notes G4, A4, B4, C5, D5, E5, F#5, G5. The bass line consists of quarter notes G2, F#2, E2, D2, C2, B1, A1, G1.

Musical exercise 2: A two-measure phrase in G major, 4/4 time. The melody consists of eighth notes G4, A4, B4, C5, D5, E5, F#5, G5. The bass line consists of eighth notes G2, F#2, E2, D2, C2, B1, A1, G1.

Musical exercise 3: A two-measure phrase in G major, 4/4 time. The melody consists of quarter notes G4, A4, B4, C5, D5, E5, F#5, G5. The bass line consists of quarter notes G2, F#2, E2, D2, C2, B1, A1, G1.

Rhythmic Phrasing

4 2 5 2 4 4 2 4 3 3 2 4 0 3 4 2

5 7 7 5 7 5 5 7 5 8 8 7

3 5 3 5 3 5 6 5 5 5 6 5 3

5 3 2 3 3 2 0 5 3 5 2 3 2 3 2 0

What becomes readily apparent is the rhythmic character acts only as support for the stylistic character of the phrase. Although we often associate pure rhythms with attention getting and specific events or compositions, the stylistic intent of rhythmic phrases is often unclear until tonal or other material is included. In other words, the tonal material lends essential defining qualities for what we perceive as the style of the music. The tempo of the rhythm sets the stage for one very important distinction, however, and that is whether it is to be fast or slow, and as Alice's Queen of Hearts observed: "That's very important!"

Iterative Phrasing

In between playing the basic tonal elements and playing melodic phrases are the fields of rhythm and iteration. Rhythm, in general is everything that pertains to the duration of notes relative to one another. In a specific sense, it is *metrical* in that its values are denoted by a temporal unit called a *beat*. Iterations differ from rhythms in that they are somewhat independent of an overall rhythm and its beats. The music's beat will stay the same for extended periods, usually the length of the composition, but the iterative character of a phrase can change quickly and often. The concept of iterations as an aspect of phrasing is simpler than the words make it seem. Iterative phrases are based on repetitive numerical sequences such as found in the technical development exercises but on a note by note basis regardless of the number of notes per string played. The term iterative is used instead of repetitive to suggest *levels* of repetition, in terms of both multiple repetitions, and different types of repetitions. Notes can be played in groups of sequences that repeat independent of an overall beat.

To put it differently, rhythm can be considered repetitions of the beat, whereas iteration is repetitions of note sequences.

Notes can be grouped in successive number combinations that iterate (repeat) at specific intervals (of time, number, *and* pitch). This makes them easy to relate to for a variety of reasons. The most common iterations are fours, threes, twos and ones. Fives are not uncommon, but tend to be perceived as combinations of threes and twos; sixes and eights are very common but can also be heard as double threes and double fours; sevens are usually interpreted as threes combined with fours. We tend to hear the lowest common denominators in terms of iterations, and like beats, we relate best to fours, threes, and twos depending on the tempo of the piece.

In the technical development exercises we limited the character of the studies to a number of notes per string in order to concentrate on the right and left hand synchronization. In this section we apply the repetitive note sequences to specific tonal material such as scales and arpeggios to produce a kind of musical intermediary between the raw tonal elements and melodic phrases. Iterations are more than just intervals, scales, and arpeggios, but less than melodic phrases. They can be considered a kind of tonal filler that all composers and improvisers use to one extent or another. Overuse of iterative phrasing gives the music a predictable character the same way that overusing a given articulation technique, such as tapping, does. They both tend to get old fast so don't rely on them to be more than they really are. On the other hand, nothing will improve your improvisation skills as rapidly as expanding your thinking patterns to include iterative phrasing as opposed to rerunning all those grooves you've worn into your neck out of habit.

In the examples that follow, we've tried to provide a sampling of different combinations of fretboard forms, tonal elements, and repetitive sequences. Again, these are examples only, for purposes of illustrating concepts at work. You've only really learned this section when you can use these methods to produce your own iterative phrasing with an understanding of the guitar form(s), the tonal material(s), and the repetition sequence(s).

Each iteration is described in the same order of presentation as the Fretboard Logic series itself: the appropriate fretboard orientation first, its musical orientation second, and the sequential nature of the iteration third.

Iterative Phrasing - Fours

The first iteration sequence uses the E diatonic scale form in the 8th position and is a C Major scale. It is a series of ascending *fours* (four scale tones), repeating in ascending *ones* (single scale tone increments).

The second iteration of fours also uses the E diatonic scale form, but is an A minor scale. In this series, each four note segment descends three scale tones, returns to the first, and then repeats one scale tone lower.

Iterative Phrasing - Fours

The third example is based on Lead Pattern 1, and is a C pentatonic Major scale. It is a series of descending fours, repeating in descending ones (single scale tone increments).

Musical notation for the third example, showing a C pentatonic Major scale in descending groups of four notes, with fret numbers 8, 10, 8, 9, 10, 8, 9, 7, 8, 9, 7, 5, 9, 7, 5, 7, 7, 5, 7, 5, 5, 7, 5, 7.

Musical notation for the fourth iteration, showing a harmonic minor scale in descending groups of four notes, with fret numbers 7, 5, 7, 5, 5, 7, 5, 3, 7, 5, 3, 5, 5, 3, 5, 3, 3, 5, 3, 0, 3.

The fourth iteration is based upon a single string, A harmonic minor scale. It is a series of descending fours, plus a *drone* (basso ostinato) in the form of an open first string. The series repeats in descending ones (again, single scale tone increments), which changes direction after the second sequence. It is continued on the next page.

Musical notation for the fourth iteration, showing a harmonic minor scale in descending groups of four notes, with fret numbers 12, 0, 0, 0, 10, 0, 0, 0, 8, 0, 0, 0, 7, 0, 0, 0, 8, 0, 0, 0, 7, 0, 0, 0.

Musical notation for the fourth iteration, showing a harmonic minor scale in descending groups of four notes, with fret numbers 7, 0, 0, 0, 7, 0, 0, 0, 7, 0, 0, 0, 7, 0, 0, 0, 8, 0, 0, 0, 10, 0, 0, 0.

Iterative Phrasing - Threes

The next iteration is an arpeggio based on the A min. form in the 7th position, making it an E min. arpeggio. The sequences are descending *threes* that increment in *ones* (single chord tones).

The next *three* is another arpeggio based on the extended diminished lead pattern from the open position, making it a G dim. arpeggio. The sequences are descending ones that return and then increment in ascending ones. It is continued on the next page.

Iterative Phrasing - Sixes & Eights

The next iterative phrase is a simple six played out on the first and second strings starting from the seventh position. It uses a portion of the C, A, and G diatonic scale forms, plus a whole tone section between the C and A. The tonal orientation is a little harder to specify. The first six notes have a somewhat modal sound somewhere between locrian and mixolydian, with each six note group ascending a tone and having no specific tone center in much the same way. However, the ending notes of each six in sequence are the last four notes in a G Major diatonic scale, so it appears to be more Major than anything else. Its easier to just call it partly atonal and pass it off as different, yet familiar.

Next is an eight which utilizes E chord forms in the seventh, fifth, third and second positions. The key area is B minor, and since the tonal material is quite specific, can be considered a chord progression as much as an iterative phrase. The chords in progression are B min., A Maj., G Maj. F# Sus., and F# Dom. 7th. It continues on the following page.

Iterative Phrasing - Eights

The image shows a musical score for guitar. It consists of three systems of notation. The top system is a treble clef staff with a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a common time signature (C). The melody is written in eighth notes, with a repeating phrase of eight notes: F#4, G4, A4, B4, A4, G4, F#4, E4. The second system is a bass clef staff with a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a common time signature (C). The bass line is written in eighth notes, with a repeating phrase of eight notes: D3, C3, B2, A2, G2, F#2, E2, D2. The third system is a guitar-specific notation with two staves: the top staff is the Treble (T) and the bottom staff is the Bass (B). The Treble staff has a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a common time signature (C). The Bass staff has a key signature of one sharp (F#) and a common time signature (C). The notation includes fret numbers (2, 4, 3, 2, 2, 3, 4) and a final chord symbol (F#m) at the end of the piece.

Ok. That's enough examples to get the idea of iteration in phrasing across. Again, the examples are meant only as a stepping off place to motivate you to start applying the concept to your own playing and recognizing it in others. As with most of the material and methods in Vol. III, the variations and combinations are practically limitless, and you are encouraged to experiment and develop your own ideas in this area. If you start to hear this type of phrasing in guitar music you are either just learning or already familiar with, (and see it in a new light) then we've both done our jobs. Go ahead and take it one step further now. Improvise using ideas in a similar and intentional manner. For this approach to work, you have to do more - way more - than just play the examples. That's the bad news. The good news is if you see what's going on, then it stops being guesswork and starts being fun (re-creation) in a very short time.

The more experienced readers have already noticed that the iterative phrases have not been properly notated with respect to key or time signatures. This was done to emphasize the repetitive nature of the phrases independent of rhythm in particular. Another thing you may have noticed is that the examples are less than spectacular from a musical standpoint. Given a choice between an example that is clear and unambiguous, and one that is zoomie and incomprehensible, I'll always go with the former. After all, what is advanced playing if not layered combinations of the basics? Heck, what's advanced anything if not interesting combinations of basics? Anyway you'll get to hear some zoomier stuff in later works. By then, if all goes according to plan, you'll be able to recognize things you used to couldn't recognize, including poor sentence structure.

Melodic Phrasing

Scales are groups of notes taken from a key consecutively, and are related by a character derived in a physical sense from their whole step-half step structure, and in a perceptual sense by how we relate to them physiologically and to an extent, culturally. Arpeggios are similar to scales in that they are derived from a key in a consecutive manner and are expressed as successive tones. The overall result of a particular step structure or note selection can be a kind of happy, lighthearted sound, a sad, serious sound, or numerous stylistic, social, even religious connotations. The metaphor of communication via speaking or writing is ideally suited to convey the difference between scales and arpeggios as basic music elements and musical phrases. Either way, the idea is to say something worth listening to. This means we must organize the available tones into rhythmic, melodic and necessarily guitaristic statements.

Phrases occur when related notes, usually the notes in a key area, are structured into coherent segments. These segments usually take form in tonal, rhythmic and iterative organizations. A melodic phrase differs from a rhythmic or iterative phrase by having more discernible relevance to us as human beings. A rhythmic phrase has an emphasis on rhythmic rather than tonal or repetitive character. An iterative phrase relies on numerical, sequential, and intervallic repetition(s) rather than a rhythmic character. A melodic phrase combines the qualities of both rhythmically and sequentially grouped tones in a manner such that we as listeners are able to relate to them in a way that is more than the sum of the parts. With melodic phrasing, the quality of the phrase can be measured by its memorableness, and the emotional and social impact it has on us as individuals and societies.

One hallmark of a melodic phrase of lasting quality has always been simplicity. The history of music is filled with examples of simple expressions of pitch and time in combinations that soar high above the humble materials of which they were made. A few examples of sparse and simple themes that have become indelible in our memories are first eight notes of Beethoven's Fifth Symphony, the first four notes of the "Draught" theme, the first six notes of "We Will Rock You" by Queen and the first six notes of "The Star Spangled Banner". Don't equate complexity with quality. Overly complex melodic ideas can alienate your listener and make the beauty harder to find.

Melodic quality, like all beauty, is in the eye of the beholder. A melody that brings tears to one person's eyes can be reviled as pathetic schmaltz by another. With that in mind, our intention here is to approach melodic phrasing as phrasing with an emphasis on tonal coherence rather than intrinsic value. The key to that coherence will be dividing tones into those which are played in passing, and those which are targets to be led up to. Target notes have more tonal significance than passing notes within the context of the phrase. Target notes, like key notes, center the tones and create tonal orientation. In general, target notes are more likely to be chord tones than not. Furthermore, in the context of the phrase, some chord tones will have more significance as target notes than others.

The concept of intervallic direction, aka melodic motion, pertains to the individual tone by tone changes. Direction implies that if the next tone played is different, it can only be above or below the previous tone. It will also be a specific intervallic distance above or below. Groups of intervals account for a melodic phrase's tonal content, and a group of tones can have a general direction as well.

Melodic Phrasing

The intervallic distance of all scale tones in sequence is seconds - major seconds or minor seconds. When you reduce it to these terms, the reason that diatonic scale tones played in succession can sound boring becomes apparent. If they lack interest in and of themselves it is because it is the same motion and the same one or two directional intervals over and over. Pentatonic scales have seconds and thirds but less tonal variety. The intervallic distance of all triadic arpeggios in sequence is thirds and fourths. Seventh arpeggios in sequence consist solely of thirds and seconds. Having at least twice the inherent intervallic content means that arpeggios played tone by tone will have that much more interest. Our strategy for melodic phrasing will be to think in terms not so much of the individual motion of each interval, but rather in scale and arpeggio segments.

We'll present melodic statements derived from scale material, arpeggio material, and combinations of both. You may find if you learn to look at it this way, that some of the most melodic tone sequences are combinations of both scale and arpeggio segments. Later on we will combine these types of phrases with iterative and rhythmic ones, and add on technical articulations, intervals, etc. You get the idea. The following phrases are derived from scale material only. Either record the progression or have someone play it while you play the phrases.

The image shows two musical staves in 4/4 time. The first staff contains four measures of music with chords Dm, G, C, and F. The second staff contains four measures with chords Bb, E, Am, and A7. Below the notes on both staves are guitar fingering diagrams. The first staff's fingering is: Measure 1: 5-6-8 (up), 5 (down); Measure 2: 8-6-5 (down), 7 (up); Measure 3: 7-5-6 (down), 8 (up); Measure 4: 6-5 (down), 7 (up), 5 (down). The second staff's fingering is: Measure 1: 6 (up), 5 (down), 7-5 (down); Measure 2: 4 (up), 4-5-7 (down); Measure 3: 5 (up), 7-5-4 (down); Measure 4: 7 (up), 5-6-8 (down).

The phrase was written for the purpose of distinguishing between a few things. The scale form guitarwise is G dia. form, 5th position. The scale material is consecutive seconds but the rhythm of the phrases is the same. Each phrase's motion, or intervallic direction, alternates up and down. Circle the target notes. Each half note is a target note and a chord tone (arpeggio note) occurring with every chord change. In the second measure, the "A" target note is the five of the Dm chord. In the third measure, the D is the five of G. In the fourth measure, the G is the five of C; the C in the fifth measure is the five of F, and so on until the last measure where the target note is the tonic. The notes in between the target notes are passing tones.

Melodic Phrasing

In the example below, we've used only arpeggios for our melodic material with the same rhythmic phrasing as before. The distinction between passing tones and target notes is harder to discern because every passing tone is also a chord tone. In other words, just being a chord tone doesn't make a target note. Part of what makes a note a target, is the rhythmic organization of the notes leading up to it.

The first example shows a 4-measure phrase in 4/4 time. The chords are Dm, G, C, and F. The melodic line consists of arpeggiated chords. The bass line shows fingerings: 5, 6, 7, 7 for Dm; 5, 4, 3, 3 for G; 5, 5, 5, 7 for C; and 7, 5, 5 for F. The second system shows chords Bb, E, Am, and A7. The melodic line continues with arpeggiated chords. The bass line shows fingerings: 3, 3, 3 for Bb; 5, 7, 6, 4 for E; 5, 5, 5 for Am; and 5, 5, 7, 6 for A7.

In the next example, we've kept the rhythmic structure and combined scale tones and arpeggios to produce a better mix of melodic materials.

The second example shows a 4-measure phrase in 4/4 time. The chords are Dm, G, C, and F. The melodic line combines scale tones and arpeggios. The bass line shows fingerings: 10, 12, 13, 13 for Dm; 12, 10, 13, 12 for G; 13, 10, 13, 12 for C; and 10, 13, 12, 10 for F. The second system shows chords Bb, E, Am, and A7. The melodic line continues with a mix of scale tones and arpeggios. The bass line shows fingerings: 10, 13, 11, 10 for Bb; 9, 10, 12, 10 for E; 8, 10, 9, 10 for Am; and 10, 11, 11, 12, 14 for A7.

Melodic Phrasing

By keeping the rhythmic and directional aspects the same for each exercise, the differences between scalar and arpeggiated melodic material become evident. When combined, the intervals of scales and arpeggios provide the most options for intervallic motion in melody. Two benefits of visualizing the raw melodic material via scales and arpeggios is that we can use the patterns that already exist on the fretboard, and we don't have to think through each individual interval, making it possible to get past the raw materials to the finished product faster.

One of the objects of this section is to try to get you to think like a vocalist instead of a guitarist. If you can sing your lead and are happy with the way it sounds, then it is probably going to hold up as a melodic effort. As guitarists, we routinely overplay, both to demonstrate our abilities and as a way to have as much say as possible in the music. It has been said many times that its what you don't play that counts. Playing melodically is one of the best ways to get past the guitar to the music.

Styles

The different styles of music throughout history have been a reflection of the great musicians who not only pioneered new ideas and methods, but were also standouts among their peers in a cultural sense as well. As much as forging new musical standards, they permeated the cultural strata of the times, conditions, and locales in which they lived. In this way, these musical trend setters have been able to affect entire societies either as representatives of the norm, or in conspicuous opposition to it.

This cultural facet of music styles is often more essential than the very quality of the music itself. What else would explain why the arguably superior music of the 18th and 19th centuries fails to compete commercially with popular styles such as rap, rock, country, and so on? Why are so many symphony orchestras, with their highly skilled and dedicated musicians, dependent on grants and private funding while the often unskilled and musically illiterate are able to sell albums by the millions? The answer lies in what you could call "culture clubs". Rap, for example, is about as unsophisticated as music can get. Tonal materials are virtually nonexistent and the lyrics are usually uttered in a monotone sing-song and practically inaudible. But rap, like all styles of music, has the ability to speak to people on a level that identifies and defines them culturally as much as stylistically. Our capacity to understand and relate to the different styles of music varies not only from society to society but also along personal growth curves throughout our lives.

Music's power to influence is sometimes profound. In many religions, the services alternate frequently between musical and non-musical sections because the nature of the music, including the participatory music, evokes deep feelings in what may have been an otherwise decidedly unreligious experience. In militaries throughout history, music has been used similarly to promote feelings of national pride and cohesiveness, even among disparate factions. Musicians have the potential to harness an almost unlimited power to influence the way people feel. This influence will, by necessity, take root within a stylistic and cultural milieu. Music styles are context sensitive and we tend to perceive them the same as our peer groups age-wise and otherwise. In other words, typical rock music will likely be perceived three different ways by a young child, a teenager, and a senior citizen. The same is true for classical, jazz, country, rap, and other styles.

As stated in the introduction in Vol. II, it is necessary to distinguish between what is meant by guitar styles and music styles. A guitar style usually pertains to an overall technical approach to the instrument such as flatpicking, chord melody arrangement, chord comping, fingerpicking, etc. Musical style relates to the musical and cultural characteristics of what is being played. Playing a specific type of guitar, such as classical, acoustic, electric etc., also has a tendency to dictate certain stylistic directions from the standpoint of technique, cultural influences and even attitude. For example, nylon string guitarists generally use a technique referred to as classical technique meaning the player plucks the strings with the fingers of the right hand often using fingernails to produce variations in tone. The style of music termed classical is derived primarily from period in music history. Guitar and music styles imply other more subtle dichotomies as well. We all know classical guitar players who look upon electric and acoustic guitar players as distant and somewhat excusable cousins. This section will discuss stylistic issues in terms of guitar, music, and culturally related aspects.

Styles

When a person takes up the guitar, he or she generally starts out by learning chords. For various reasons, guitarists tend to gravitate toward one of three common approaches to chords. The first approach is to play multiple chord forms in a single (open) position, and the second is to use a single form in multiple positions. The third approach would be multiple forms in multiple positions. Each of these formats also happens to be associated with different styles of music.

The first approach to chords, multiple forms in the open position, is generally associated with folk style, country, bluegrass and pop music. It is considered by most teachers to be the fastest and easiest way to get a student playing. The standard route is to get a book of songs by an artist or group the student is familiar with and practice the changes until it sounds passable and then play along with the teacher, the recording, or a friend.

The second approach, playing usually the E or A form in multiple positions, is associated with rock, metal, and popular music. When this approach is combined with the distortion effect, the chords are referred to as *power* chords, and it is considered a "heavier" sound.

The third approach, using multiple forms in multiple positions, is connected with all of the above styles, plus classical, (including baroque and romantic) jazz, flamenco, and the numerous fusions of different styles. A **fusion** is when characteristics of two or more styles are combined to produce a type of music that is distinct from either of the original styles. Examples of fusion are country-rock, jazz-grass (aka "Dawg" music), classical-metal, rockabilly, etc. The guitar piece "Classical Gas" by Mason Williams, is a fusion of bossa nova rhythms and classical harmonies. The piece "Mood For A Day" by Steve Howe, is a fusion of both classical and flamenco influences.

"Oh, I listen to all kinds of music. In 'Waynes World', I especially liked the part where they're riding around in the car listening to *opera*."

Tipper Gore, First Vice-Lady and founder of PMRC, a special interest group which successfully lobbied for record labeling - upon being asked what type of music she listens to.

Styles

There isn't any music that was created in a total vacuum. Every style grew out of the music that preceded it. Even what is now considered distinctly American music grew as hybrids and variations of music brought by immigrants from other countries. Irish, Scottish, Celtic, etc., tunes were blended and varied to become what we now know as American folk and bluegrass. These styles evolved further to become country music. What were once termed *negro spirituals*, the seeds of which sailed from Africa to germinate in southern soil, evolved into the blues and continues to thrive as a deeply emotional style of music. The blues and country both contributed to what was to become rock and roll, and so on. In each style there is a combination of factors which contribute to its character and distinguish it from preceding styles. The next step is to discuss a few styles in terms of the guitaristic and musical components that make it what it is.

The characterizations for the different styles are derived from the Menu headings. The specifications for the different styles are generalized and not to be considered as chiseled in stone. Over a period of time changes have occurred to alter our perceptions of what makes a style the way it is. When you examine a given artist you can get much more specific, and accurate specifications can be obtained when analyzing an individual composition.

Styles - Baroque Classical Romantic

The classifications for music written prior to the 20th century are separated by the life spans of the preeminent musicians of the era as much as by stylistic characteristics. As a matter of practicality, we will only discuss these styles in terms of the great masters of the day.

To most amateurs and non musicians, *classical* music is pretty much everything outside of popular music. In the realm of strict musicology, though, the term has a more specific meaning. Classical music actually refers to the music of Haydn, Mozart, Beethoven, and to some extent, Schubert. Their combined lifetimes represent a period of music dating from about 1750 to about 1820, so this time frame is termed the classical period in music history. The period preceding classicism was called the baroque period and the period immediately following, the romantic. The term classical was later applied because the music of these masters was deemed of a high class or rank and many authorities feel this level of musical accomplishment has never been surpassed. Classical music is characterized by its relative objectivity, formalism, simplicity, and interestingly, its emotional restraint.

I recently turned 36. It is a sobering thought that by the time he was my age, Mozart had been dead for two years.

Tom Lehrer

The term *baroque*, in contrast, refers in general to a style of overly ornamental architecture and a painting style as well as music. The word comes from the Portuguese "barroco" for an irregularly shaped pearl, and literally means grotesque or in poor taste. (Of course. Who would want a tasteless and grotesque painting by that baroque painter Rembrandt?) Needless to say, it is used in music as a purely chronological term. The music of J.S. Bach is of this period and stands among the worlds greatest musical achievements. The period spans from about 1550 to 1759, and here again, represent the lifespans of Cavalieri to Handel. Other notables of the baroque period include Caccini, Vivaldi, Scarlatti, Buxtehude, Pachelbel, Telemann, Couperin, Rameau, Purcell, and Handel. Many musicians refer to the works of the Baroque period as classical music, anyway. Adherence to the various musical forms developed in this period (formalism), and took precedence over the more subjective elements such as emotional content. Among the vocal forms introduced during this period were the opera, oratorio and cantata, aria and recitative. Among the instrumental forms spawned were the fugue, concerto, sonata, suite, prelude, passacaglia, chaconne, tocatta and rondeau.

Styles - Baroque Classical Romantic

The romantic period followed the classical and spanned from 1820 to about 1920 or the lifetime's of Weber to Sibelius. Romantic music can be characterized by an emphasis on emotional elements as opposed to a stricter adherence to form. The emphasis changed, paraphrasing Monteverdi, to "Let Emotion be the master, not the servant of music." The term derives from the Romanesque period of the middle ages which was popularized in the 19th century in the writings of Scott, Wackenroder, Tieck and Novalis. These authors, in search of themes, returned to the knights of old with their ladies in waiting, heroic kings, and pious monks. They longed for a fantastic, imaginative, and picturesque quality that spoke to the most fundamental human conditions of joy, despair, honor, deceit, love, and hatred. The music of this period became a more conscious reflection of the passions of the composers and the societies in which they lived. Among the romantic composers are Berlioz, Mendelssohn, Schumann, Chopin, Liszt, Wagner, Bruckner, Brahms, Tchaikovsky, Dvorak, Mahler, MacDowell and Strauss.

Styles - Blues

The roots of traditional blues can be traced back to the music of early black Americans. Brought to this country as slaves to work in the fields, they would communicate to one another by means of hollering back and forth over great distances. These *field hollers* evolved into a highly imaginative form of vocalization that was rhythmic and tonal on the surface, and emotional and spiritual underneath. As most slaves weren't allowed the benefits of an education and so could neither read nor write, their songs were passed down to successive generations in much the same way that epic poems of ancient times were told and retold by master storytellers. The music eventually divided into two fairly distinct forms. One was a form of worship and prayer which was to become known as gospel music, and the other was a form of lament which was to become the blues. Nowadays "the blues" or feeling *blue* is synonymous with loneliness and any nonspecific, dissatisfaction, unhappiness, or sorrow.

The blues was a distinctly southern style, with Mississippi, Tennessee, and Louisiana as major centers of early development.

Among the notable twentieth century blues artists are W.C. Handy, considered by many to be the father of the blues, Gertrude "Ma" Rainey, Robert Johnson, Blind Lemon Jefferson, Son House, John Lee Hooker, Mississippi John Hurt, Rev. Gary Davis, Count Basie, Big Bill Broonzy, Tampa Red, T-Bone Walker, Clarence Gatemouth Brown, Bobby "Blue" Bland, and practically anybody with the last name of King, but especially Freddie, Albert, and B.B.

Defining early blues pieces were "Memphis Blues" and "St. Louis Blues", both by W.C. Handy, "Matchbox", by Blind Lemmon Jefferson, "Candy Man" by Mississippi John Hurt, "The Thrill is Gone" by B.B. King, and "Stormy Monday", by T-Bone Walker.

A large percentage of the blues masters are guitar players. Among the most legendary are Robert Johnson, Blind Lemmon Jefferson, John Lee Hooker, T-Bone Walker, Gatemouth Brown, and of course, the extraordinary B.B. King.

The rhythmic character of blues is based in common time. The harmonic structure tends to be major oriented, but the melodic material is usually minor, and pentatonic. What has come to be known as the "blues scale" utilizes the pentatonic minor with the addition of the flatted fifth degree. Color tones include the frequent contrasting of the third and the flatted third as well.

Blues lead playing is heavy on certain articulation techniques, most notably bends, vibratos, hammer-ons, pull-offs, vibratos and slides. A typical solo will sustain particular target notes as if to squeeze every last drop of feeling from them. Blues tends to have a slower, more easy going tempo, and when it is speeded up past a certain point, most people will perceive it as boogie-woogie or rock and roll. The older blues guitarists used their thumbs to sketch out a rhythm while they sang, and would play licks in between verses, choruses and phrases. The alternating bass version of this style as played by Mississippi John Hurt, was sometimes referred to as "Country Blues". Most modern blues guitarists use a pick, though. Another contrast between the older and more modern players was the use of amplification. For the earliest blues players, the electric guitar and its sonic advantages simply weren't available, so they relied on archtops and flattops usually strung with steel for volume.

Styles - Blues

An interesting development in the style which was made possible by the new technology has been attributed to T-Bone Walker. He would use his amplifier to sustain notes by means of controlled feedback when Hendrix was still in diapers.

Although it began as a somewhat free form of expression, the form that this style has evolved to for guitarists of today is based on what is called "12 bar" blues. A typical 12 bar blues progression in the key of A is illustrated below.

A 12-bar blues progression in the key of A major, shown on a single treble clef staff. The progression is divided into four measures per line, with three lines total. The chords are: Line 1: A7 (measures 1-4), D9 (measures 5-8), A7 (measures 9-12). Line 2: A7 (measures 1-4), D9 (measures 5-8), D9 (measures 9-12). Line 3: A7 (measures 1-4), A7 (measures 5-8), E9 (measures 9-12). Line 4: D9 (measures 1-4), A7 (measures 5-6), D9 (measures 7-8), A7 (measures 9-10), E9 (measures 11-12). Each measure contains a single eighth note represented by a diagonal slash.

Continuing in the free form tradition, this basic background provides the blues instrumentalist with a solid, if somewhat predictable, harmonic structure upon which to base an improvised solo. There is little doubt when the changes are to occur and the blues guitarist can stretch out in 12 comfortable measures with no key changes.

If there are any guitarists who happened to have been abducted by aliens and *still* haven't heard the story of B.B. King's "Lucille", here's more or less how it goes. Lucille, by the way, is the name of his guitar. B.B and his band were playing a one-nighter during the winter in an old building that I think might have been a church. It was heated by nothing more than a 55 gallon drum filled with kerosene. Suddenly in the middle of everything a fight broke out and of course the combatants knocked over the drum instantly setting the entire building ablaze. Everyone scrambled to safety including the Beale Street Blues Boy, who eventually realized he'd left his only guitar in the burning building. Before anyone could reason with him, he ran back in to retrieve his instrument. (Kids don't try this at home.) Just as he was making good his escape, the roof caved in, and he was lucky to get out alive. So how did his guitar get named Lucille? That was the name of the woman the two men were fighting over.

Styles - Folk and Bluegrass

For guitar players, folk music can be divided into fingerpicked and flatpicked right hand styles. This area deals primarily with the flatpicking approach as typified in bluegrass guitar playing.

American folk music descended from from Irish, Scottish and English folk tunes that were played by people tucked away in rural mountain regions such as the Appalachians, Ozarks, Great Smokies, and Catskills. Here again, illiteracy played a part in this stylistic evolution. Since many hill people couldn't read or write, they would have to learn pieces by rote from one another. Like a rumor, when music is passed from one person to another, slight variations in interpretation eventually lead to considerable differences from the originals.

Among the noteworthy American folk and bluegrass musicians were Woodie Guthrie, Elizabeth Cotton, Pete Seeger, Mother Maybelle Carter and the Carter Family, Grandpa Jones, The Delmore Brothers, Gid Tanner and the Skillet Lickers, Bill Monroe and the Bluegrass Boys, The Stanleys, Flatt and Scruggs, Joan Baez and Peter Paul and Mary.

Famous songs include "This Land Is Your Land", "Freight Train", "Wildwood Flower", "Browns Ferry Blues", "Down Yonder", "Blue Moon of Kentucky", "Foggy Mountain Breakdown", "Will The Circle Be Unbroken", "Wabash Cannonball" "Billy In the Lowground", "Red Haired Boy", "Bill Cheatham", "Salt Creek" and "Black Mountain Rag". "Foggy Mountain Breakdown", you may recall, was the raucous banjo instrumental used as a getaway theme in the movie "Bonnie and Clyde".

Notable guitarists include Lester Flatt, Doc Watson, Clarence White, Tony Rice, Dan Crary, and Norman Blake to name but a few.

Bluegrass music per se, can be traced directly back to Bill Monroe and his Bluegrass Boys band. It evolved from Kentucky hill country variations of both American folk music and its European predecessors. Bluegrass instrumentation centered around the fiddle, mandolin, banjo, acoustic guitar (steel stringed flattop) and double (upright) bass. For guitar players the style involved mostly rhythm playing, relying on the powerful bass notes and open chord forms of a D-28 to anchor the high tenor vocals and the melodic lead of the fiddle, banjo and mandolin.

Bluegrass and flatpicked folk guitar style evolved to a more melodic stature with the increasing recognition of a number of outstanding flatpickers such as Clarence White, Doc Watson, Tony Rice, Dan Crary, Norman Blake, and many others. The flatpickers took traditional folk music and fiddle tunes and adapted them to the guitar creating a fronting role where it had been pretty much a backup instrument before.

Styles - Rock and Roll

In early rock and roll, as pioneered by Ike Turner, Bill Haley, Chuck Berry, Carl Perkins, and Little Richard, the music featured the same 1 4 5 chords as you would find in blues, but played in a different order, at a faster tempo, and with a driving beat. If boogie woogie was fast, playful blues, then rock and roll was hard driving boogie woogie on steroids, especially testosterone.

The roots of rock and roll are easily traced back to R&B, boogie woogie, blues, jazz, folk, country, and gospel in varying degrees depending on the artist. It was both a southern and southwestern phenomena, with major developments occurring in the Memphis and Cleveland areas due to airplay from a couple of ambitious radio stations.

Among the progenitors of this raucous style were Ike Turner, Otis Blackwell, Chuck Berry, Elvis Presley, Bo Diddley, Little Richard, Bill Haley, Jerry Lee Lewis, The Beatles, and The Stones. The song "Rocket 88" by Ike Turner, was about a car, had distorted guitar, and was #1 R&B hit in 1951. In retrospect, it could be considered the first aired rock and roll. By 1952, Bill Haley had produced "Rock The Joint", and the terms "rock" and "rock and roll" were well on their way into the mainstream American consciousness. "Rock Around The Clock", another hit by Haley and his Comets, was featured in the movie "Blackboard Jungle". The movie contained themes such as teenage rebellion, cars, violence, sexuality, crime, race, and alienation, all of which were to be reflected in the new music. In fact, rock and roll was the first truly biracial music, as if white 1950's parents needed another reason to censor it. In a word, it was the first music style that celebrated youth and a denial of established values. It shared with blues more than just harmonic and melodic materials. Alienated teenagers could identify with the plight of the average black man and woman in an unconscionably racist period in American history.

In 1955, a young man named Chuck Berry released a song named "Maybellene" which was to become one of the first monster rock and roll hits, and the first of many by this savvy guitarist. Interestingly, "Maybellene" was an adaptation of a country/folk song named "Ida Red". Among the Berry hits to follow were "Johnny B. Goode", "Roll Over Beethoven", "Sweet Little Sixteen", and "My Ding-a-Ling", all of which helped to outline the defining boundaries of the new style. Berry's looks, songwriting, guitar playing, lyrics, and stage antics all contributed to his success, and the success of rock and roll as a style unto itself.

Other seminal rock and rollers were Otis Blackwell who wrote "Don't Be Cruel", "All Shook Up", and "Great Balls of Fire", and Carl Perkins who penned "Blue Suede Shoes", both contributing to the success of the more famous Elvis and Jerry Lee Lewis.

The guitar sound of most rock and roll had more of an edge - not pure distortion - but not really clean either, and was definitely louder and higher in the mix, often sharing a fronting role with vocals. The defining guitar part of the early rock and roll songs was chord and interval riffing, and single note lead playing. In terms of articulation techniques, anything was fair game including bends, pull-offs and hammer-ons, slides, trills, vibratos, tremolos, etc. The more outrageous, the better.

The lyric themes usually centered around high school romance, parental interference, cars with their implied freedom, and alienation.

Styles - Rock and Roll

Rhythms were in common time, and the beats, backbeats, and tempos were designed to keep pace with the urban lifestyle of the American teen. Most rock and roll was major oriented in tonality, and like the blues, it tended to feature pentatonic minor and blues scale melodies with principle chords as a harmonic backing.

Most rock and roll guitar players strummed chords to a backbeat drum rhythm. **Backbeat** rhythm is when the accent is on the two and four counts of a measure. The tube amplifiers of the day would produce a warm kind of distortion that was more of an "edge" than what we know as saturated distortion nowadays. Semi-hollow body guitars such as the Gibson 335 were what Chuck Berry used (and still uses to this day), and when solid bodies became available, many rock and rollers turned to these as a means of controlling feedback at higher decibel levels. The traditional instrumentation of a rock and roll band has been guitar(s) bass and drums as the core unit, plus other instruments including keyboards, saxophones, etc. as added instrumentation.

Styles - Hard Rock and Metal

Rooted in a combination of alienation, blues, rock & roll, and technology, a new form of music with a definite edge to it came into existence. It was imported from England and home grown in urban America. The bands which typified the switch from light hearted fifties rock and roll to the harder edged sound, were a reflection of the sixties as an age of extremes in which as a teenager, you could find yourself in a free love rally in Central Park, or a free fire zone in Cambodia. Among the earlier groups were Cream, Led Zeppelin, Iron Butterfly, The Who, The Stones, Hendrix, The Doors, Black Sabbath, Deep Purple, and Alice Cooper. Later generations included Ozzy Osbourne, Aerosmith, Van Halen, Guns and Roses, Metallica, and Megadeath.

Among hard rock's defining compositions are "Whole Lotta Love," "Stairway To Heaven," "Inna Gadda Da Vida," "Iron Man," "Paranoid," "White Room," "Sunshine of Your Love," "Crossroads," "I'm Eighteen," "Welcome to My Nightmare," "Light My Fire," "This Is The End," "Smoke On The Water," "Highway Star," "Lazy," and "Welcome to the Jungle."

Hard rock split off from rock and roll with earlier groups like Cream, Iron Butterfly, and the Doors, but most definitively with the band Led Zeppelin. Iron Butterfly's name was in fact, was an intentional contrast of the elements of lightness and heaviness, but Led Zeppelin's music more convincingly contrasted the two extremes, culminating with the genre's anthem and FM radio's most requested song ever, "Stairway To Heaven." "Stairway" featured a lyrical arpeggiated introduction which developed into a driving rhythmic background for an classic electric guitar solo. As an apparent indication of extremes in textures, densities and weight, the term *heavy metal* was coined as a descriptive for the stylistic direction in which Led Zeppelin, perhaps more than any other band, was taking music. The band formed originally for the purpose of playing a type of British influenced electric blues. When this was explained to Keith Moon, the notorious drum and hotel basher for the Who, he remarked something to the effect, "That'll go over big, just like a lead balloon." Hence the name.

Another term absorbed into the mainstream was first associated with audiences at Led Zeppelin concerts because the most fanatical front row fans would not just rock to the music, they'd actually bang their heads against the stage.

It is said that guitarist and songwriter Jimmy Page claimed to be in league with the devil, much the same as was thought of the great violin virtuoso, Niccolo Paganini, several generations ago. Both musicians seemed to have acquired an aura of mystique to the general public and any controversy which may have resulted probably had some promotional value anyway.

Paganini told a friend (J. Fetis the Belgian composer and critic) in a letter: "I had played the variations called "Le Streghe" (the Witches), and they produced some effect. One individual, who was represented to me as of a sallow complexion, melancholy air, and bright eye, affirmed that he saw nothing surprising in my performance, for he had distinctly seen, while I was playing my variations, the devil at my elbow directing my arm and guiding my bow. My resemblance to him was a proof of my origin. (Paganini was not pretty.) He was clothed in red - had horns on his head - and carried his tail between his legs." You know, it could just be that *he* told a few people, and then they told a few people and before you know it, a legend is born.

Styles - Hard Rock and Metal

Groups like Cream, with their extended somewhat self-absorbed guitar solos, and Iron Butterfly with "Inna Gadda Da Vida," a song that took an entire album side, pointed the way for a new type of exploratory performance that set an introspective tone for their audiences, rather than the party atmosphere of the earlier rock and roll style. "Clapton Is God" was proclaimed in public restrooms and elsewhere throughout the land, only serving to underscore the important role music and performers played for people at certain periods in their development. It seems that the common denominator for the style is "extremeness." Whatever it is, rage, alienation, frustration or just plain volume levels, it must be done to extremes.

I think as people in certain parts of society became absorbed in the less enjoyable realities of life, the subject matter for artists in the genre became more nihilistic. No more driving around in cars trying to pick up girls. It was time to deaden the senses and talk openly about death. Rock and roll became metal, punk, thrash, and death metal. Musica in extremis.



When the going gets weird, the weird turn pro.

Dr. Hunter S. Thompson



Guitar Arrangement

This section outlines briefly the most common ways guitar music can be arranged and under what circumstances. As a practical matter, you will either be playing someone else's music or your own compositions. If you're playing other people's music you have the option of faithfully replicating their arrangement or changing it to suit your own needs. Writing your own music gives you the freedom (or responsibility) to arrange the guitar parts any way you like, as the piece is being written.

The ways you can arrange music to be played on the guitar depends first on whether you perform as part of a group of musicians or as a solo artist. Here there are also advantages both ways. If the audience's attention is divided among members of a group, the arrangement needn't be as involved and you aren't under as much pressure to maintain such a high level of interest. For solo artists, the activity level of your playing must be considerably higher to keep up the interest level in your listeners, but your esteem in the eyes of the audience is commensurate also.

Within a group, a great deal of the guitar playing will involve riffs and rhythm "comping" (short for accompaniment), usually behind a singer's melody and lyrics, and solo lead playing and riffing in between vocal phrases and sections. If a song, by definition, consists of lyrics, melody and accompaniment, that means the singer is carrying two thirds of the song. If you are the singer and the guitarist, by definition you are carrying the band. Musician joke. Not funny.

As a solo guitarist, you will have to provide both the harmonic and melodic materials of whatever you are performing. There are traditional approaches to voicing music for solo artist as well as what are termed *chord melody* and fingerpicked approaches to arrangement.

Voice leading is a term for the motion of the individual parts (traditionally soprano, alto, tenor, and bass) of a musical work. Traditional voice leading includes *counterpoint*, where secondary and tertiary melodic voices interweave the primary voice. The way these parts are arranged with respect to intervallic motion contributes greatly to the overall quality and character of the music.

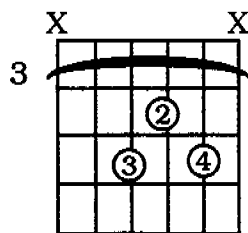
Chord melody style is a type of arrangement where both the harmony and melody are represented, but without traditional voice leading or an alternating bass figure. As the name implies, in chord melody style you literally play a chord containing the a melodic tone, and follow it with (ordinarily) single melody notes or harmonic intervals.

The alternating bass of fingerpicking style provides a solid foundation for a type of solo arrangement associated with Merle Travis, Chet Atkins, and many others, where both the harmonic progression and the melody are represented within a repeating right hand figure.

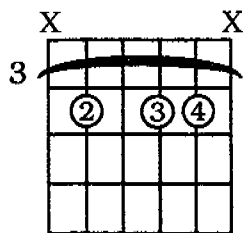
Guitar Arrangement - Chord Melody

The term *chord melody* is used to describe an arrangement that uses primarily chords voiced such that the melody is in the highest voice, with (usually) single note melodic material added. There is no set format for the ratio of chords to single melody notes, and *flow* and *taste* seem to be the overall guide. Chord melody is a Jazz and Pop soloist's all purpose guitar format.

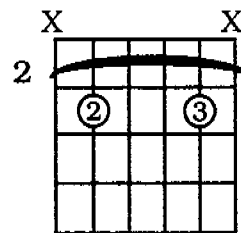
The following notation format is something I use for chord melody arrangements of music my students want to learn. It is a hybrid of tab and fretboard snapshots. The difference between this hybrid and the standard piano-vocal format is the precise form and position are used here whereas in traditional P-V any form of the chord will apparently suffice. Secondly, the rhythmic phrasing is left out simply because the students are already familiar with the pieces they want to learn, and this makes a cleaner presentation for them and a much shorter length of time to write the arrangement. Notice that below each graph the chord name, form and function are included for further comprehension. The following is an arrangement of a common opening turnaround of the music of the forties.



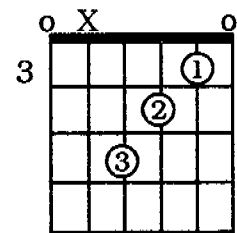
C Maj. 7th
A form
1 Chord



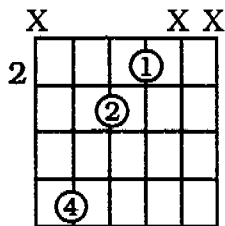
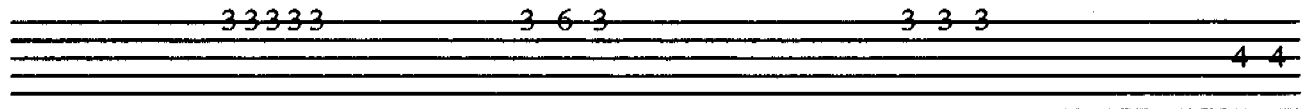
C# 13 b5
(C) form
#1 Chromatic



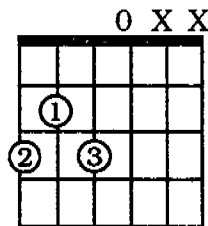
C 6/9
C form
1 Chord



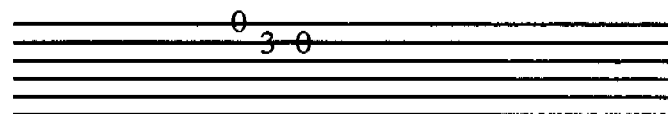
E min. 7
C form
3 Chord



D min. 7
C form
2 Chord



G dom. 7
G form
5 Chord



Guitar Arrangement - FingerPicking

FingerPicking, a.k.a. Travis Picking after Merle Travis, is one of the easiest and most satisfying ways to play the guitar. To the average listener it sounds more complicated than it really is so as a player, you feel like you're getting away with something. There are thousands of pre-arranged songs and solos to play based on the same right hand figure. This figure is somewhat like Alberti bass in piano playing. Example 1 is the basic three-fingered right hand pattern that most fingerpicking styles are built around. It uses the thumb, index and middle fingers in a repeating pattern on four or more strings. If the tablature and notation are unfamiliar, you might want to refer to the section on notation formats first. The letters between the staves represent Thumb, Index and Middle fingers as well as Ring and Pinky of the right hand. The $\%$ symbol above the pattern specifies the number of repeats. The double vertical lines indicate the end of an example or section. The first few examples focus on the right hand only. To get the feel of things quicker, it sometimes helps to not look at your hand as you're playing.

Ex. 1 $\% 1000$ Ex. 2 $\% 1000$ Ex. 3 $\% 1000$

Since first impressions are usually the strongest ones, try to play the examples correctly the very first time. This is far easier than trying to unlearn a habit and then relearn again. It also promotes good long term learning habits. Play them slowly and deliberately until you get accustomed to the feel. Speed and fluidity will come after you have done several hundred (or thousand) slower ones. There is no shortcut for building up strength, coordination, and muscle memory. After enough repetition, the pattern will become automatic and you won't even have to think about it very much.

Example 2 is the same pattern with a sixth string bass note substituted so your thumb has to "hop" over the fifth string. Since the roots of chords are on various strings, the patterns will start on certain bass strings and will include certain treble strings as a rule. The root for the E and G forms is on the 6th string. The root for the A and C forms is on the 5th, and the D form root is on the 4th string. Example 3 combines the two previous ones using bass notes on the fifth and sixth strings.



When fingerpicking, be sure your thumb is extended well beyond the index and middle (toward the headstock). This will cause your wrist to bend a little but the thumb will keep bumping into the index. Try to make a right angle "V" between your thumb and index. Play so your index and middle pull perpendicularly against the string. Tilting the guitar neck upward helps.



Guitar Arrangement - FingerPicking

Ex.4 ♩ 1000

Ex.5 ♩ 1000

Example 4 is the same as Example 3, but with the bass notes reversed to accommodate, among other things, chords with the root on the sixth string. Example 5 introduces a melody note along with the bass and fill notes.

Ex. 6 ♩ 1000

Ex. 7 ♩ 1000

Example 6 introduces the ring finger playing a melody note and Ex. 7 has a chord being used as part of the overall pattern. At this point you can see that the variations on the basic right hand pattern are pretty much limitless. Next we'll apply these figures to some modest chord progressions and make them start to sound like something.

Ex.8 ♩ 100

In the 8th example the most basic pattern is played through the C, G, and Am chords. The G has a B for its bass note (plus a D substituted for the B on the 2nd string) and is generally written as G/B. As the level of involvement progresses, the object will be to add more features to the basic right hand figure. Melody, bass lines and chord voicing are among the things to consider beyond the chord progression itself. In order to prevent the pattern from becoming stale and predictable, we'll also look for ways to make the right hand figure more rhythmically dynamic.

Guitar Arrangement - FingerPicking

As you can tell, each example adds on another factor to be expected in the fingerpicking style. So far only two things in combination have been presented. Next we'll show three things in combination. In Example 9 below, the right hand figure featuring alternating bass is combined with both a chord progression and a melody. Naturally it builds on the progression presented in Ex. 8.

At this stage you are being required to rely on just the tablature and the notation to understand and play the music. The rhythmic nature of the exercise is going to be the most work, and if you are new to this, divide it into two parts. The bass line is almost static, using only eighth notes until the last two beats. The treble line can be divided into rhythmic units according to each beat as demonstrated in the chapter on rhythm. Combining these is a matter of working within the open chord forms, and keeping a steady beat with the thumb.

On the fourth beat of measure one, the B to C melody notes can also be played using a hammer-on although it isn't indicated.

Ex. 9

Ex. 9 musical notation showing a treble clef staff with a melody, a bass clef staff with a bass line, and a guitar tablature staff below. The tempo is marked as quarter note = 100. The music is in 4/4 time and consists of two measures. The first measure has a melody of G4, A4, B4, C5, and a bass line of E2, A1, D2, G1. The second measure has a melody of C5, B4, A4, G4, and a bass line of E2, A1, D2, G1. The tablature shows fingerings for both hands.

Next we'll add a more in the way of melodic and harmonic material, with secondary dominants in the form of a 5/5 and 5/6 that you should be able to recognize. It would be a good idea to go through the exercise and label each chord and its function within the key. It also has more rhythmic variety with tied and dotted notes.

It is useful to be able to identify the separate elements of every piece of music for a complete learning experience. Sure, its good just to learn new music, but better to understand it on all the different levels.

Example 10 is continued on the next page.

Ex. 10

Ex. 10 musical notation showing a treble clef staff with a melody, a bass clef staff with a bass line, and a guitar tablature staff below. The music is in 4/4 time and consists of two measures. The first measure has a melody of G4, A4, B4, C5, and a bass line of E2, A1, D2, G1. The second measure has a melody of C5, B4, A4, G4, and a bass line of E2, A1, D2, G1. The tablature shows fingerings for both hands.

Guitar Arrangement - Fingerpicking

The image displays three systems of guitar fingerpicking exercises. Each system is written on a grand staff (treble and bass clefs) with a bass line below. The first system is in one flat, the second in two sharps, and the third in one flat. The exercises focus on developing the alternating bass technique, which is a fundamental skill in fingerpicking. The bass line in each system shows a consistent rhythmic pattern of alternating bass notes, often using the thumb (T) and index (I) fingers. The treble staff shows a melody line that is often a simple scale or arpeggiated chord sequence. The bass line includes fingerings (1-4) and rests (0) to indicate the specific technique for each note.

Each of the exercises were designed to develop some of the basic skills you will need to play in the fingerpicking style. The one common denominator of fingerpicking is the alternating bass played with the thumb. The terms alternating bass and fingerpicking have become synonymous. Classical music is picked with fingers but it isn't considered fingerpicking.

The alternating bass with its inherent rhythm provides a background against which other music elements will stand out. It presents different difficulties for players with different goals. For beginning players, the biggest hurdle will be to keep the thumb going while the other fingers play chord tones. This boils down to knowing which string the roots and fifths are on for the different chords. For those who are interested in a fingerpicked accompaniment to vocals, it means being able to keep this going while chords progress. For solo players, it means maintaining a steady bass while both chords and melodies progress.

Fingerpicking style is a solid guitar arrangement that isn't limited to folk and country music anymore. It has a broad range of appeal in other styles as well.

Sonics

This section is intended as a brief discussion on the characteristics and usage of common guitar effects or *signal processors*. For the record, guitar effects should be used to imbue a particular character or enhance the quality of a musical presentation.

Write down what you think is the most common guitar effect in use today. It is taken almost completely for granted, and if you guessed amplification, you are to be congratulated for an understanding of the basics of what we will term guitar sonics. The area of sonics is meant to deal with the non-guitaristic and non-musical aspects of what audiences hear when we as guitarists play. It is fortunate that we live in the era of the integrated circuit, because this stage of electronic evolution offers a wide range of capabilities to the modern guitarist the most basic of which is the ability to be heard by a large audience. The guitar's design from its inception has been a combination of mechanical and structural compromises which perform interrelated functions. The playing area of the instrument, the neck, is joined to the amplifying part, (the box or plank supporting the pickups), by the tone generators, the strings. This design is common to virtually all stringed instruments. Don't underestimate the importance of amplification. It is the way your audience hears you, and it can only help you one way, but it can hurt you two ways. The only way it can help you is if it enables your audience to hear you better. It can hurt you if it is not loud enough or too loud. Guess which one of those is the most common. It can also get in the way of the performance if it is not kept under strict control. Feedback is the biggest problem for amplified systems and occurs when the signal from the instrument (string/pickup) is fed directly back into the output devices (speakers). Feedback can be controlled by physically directing the speakers away from the instrument's pickups, or by isolating a resonant room frequency with an equalizer and eliminating that frequency from the mix.

Amplification for the performing guitarist is generally a two part affair. There is a stage level coming from the amp itself, and this is usually fed into the mixer for the house sound. As a practical matter, there are twice as many things to go wrong from the outset. The single most common bugaboo of performing musicians, is that they become attenuated to their own sound, and don't feel they are represented adequately in the mix. So guess what they do. And guess what that creates. And then what happens? Right, right and right. They turn themselves up, further unbalance both the stage and house sound, and then somebody else in the band does the same thing and starts the cycle over again ad infinitum. It becomes a loudness spiral. The reason for this is due in part to the long term effects of high decibel levels. On the psychological side, it has something to do with self promotion and at least to some extent, an overall sense of insecurity. If there is one area we as performing guitarists should be educated in, it is the area of amplification. One of the best ways to get a true picture of what your sound is like to the audience is to strap on a wireless and get as far away from the stage as your unit will permit. Standing outside of the building and hearing your band from a distance will give you a better sense of the overall band sound than standing on your side of the stage.

Right along with the amplification of a signal is the relative brightness or darkness of the overall sound which we refer to in an acoustical sense as tone. The two extremes of tone are treble and bass, and it is likely that early guitar makers became aware of this factor in terms of the material used for strings and the design of the tops of the resonating chambers. On amplified guitars, tone is controlled by either passive

Sonics

or active circuitry. In passive circuits, the bass is controlled by means of a low pass filter in the form of a capacitor, and variable resistance in the form of a potentiometer. It is significant that passive tone controls can only subtract from the overall signal. In active tone circuitry, aka equalization, you have the ability to not only add and subtract signal strength, but also to specify the bandwidths (frequency ranges) which are to be affected.

From a historical perspective, the next effect would perhaps be reverb and delay type effects. I'd bet that guitarists of ancient times would take their instruments out of the ale houses and into cathedrals for the sheer exhilaration of hearing the sound carry, maybe they believed, heavenward. There are three basic types of delay as perceived, and they are reverb, slapback and echo. The difference between these is the time between the original signal and the effected signal. Reverb occurs when the signal is delayed and combined within a range of approximately 30 milliseconds, slapback is in the range of (if I remember correctly) about 80 milliseconds, and echo is considered anything beyond slapback. Whereas reverb is a connecting and carrying of the instruments sound, slapback occurs at the moment that sound becomes disconnected from the original source. Slapback is easily produced with electronic delays, and the digital units are generally of higher quality than analog designs. Echo is usually associated with multiple repeats of the effected signal.

Most electronic signal processors were designed to reproduce effects that were the product of experimentation and evolution in the studio and on the stage. Distortion is an example of an effect that came into existence intentionally, after occurring unintentionally in real life playing situations. Legend has it that Ike Turner's amp fell off the car on the way to Memphis, and producer Sam Phillips stuffed the cones with paper just to get on with the recording session. When popular music started drawing larger audiences, musicians soon learned that the equipment that was adequate for most auditoriums of the day was insufficient for larger arenas and outdoor venues. If you get a chance to watch a Beatles retrospective, take a look at the equipment they used for the concert at Shea stadium, and you'll understand why all you could hear was screaming. (I think it was something like a four or six channel mixer pushing probably less than 100 watts, with about four speaker columns of the old Bogen or Shure type.) When this type of equipment was pushed to its limits, the weakest link in the chain, the speakers, would take the heat, literally. The signal sent to the speakers was greater than it could manage, and distortion, or clipping would result. Then, as the speakers attempted to dissipate greater amounts of energy, they would go into thermal overload and cause even more distortion until the lacquer suspending the coils melted. Eventually, this type of sound came to be associated with the success, style and direction of popular music, and a few guitarists would go so far as to slice up speaker cones with razor blades to enhance the distorted effect. Eventually the participants came to realize that there must be a way to achieve the effect without having to replace speakers so often. In essence, the signal to the speaker was being overdriven, or played beyond its practical limits. It was a logical next step to overdrive the signal fed to the speakers without the harmful result to the speakers themselves. This is when preamplification in the form of two stage guitar amps and "fuzz" boxes came into being. Instead of overdriving the speaker itself, the signal to the speaker was overdriven. Distortion or overdrive, as you know, eventually became associated with rock music and its stylistic descendants.

Sonics

Musicians and guitarists in particular seem to be afflicted with a strain of nostalgic egocentricity where their equipment and their sound is concerned. To this day you hear guitarists proclaim that they don't make amplifiers that sound as good as the ones made in the good old days. Naturally, they just happen to own one of these collectables.

The flange effect similarly evolved from a studio trick that is attributed to John Lennon. Did you ever wonder where the term *flanging* derives from? I understand that he used to experiment with the recording and the mixdown machines in the studio. In this particular instance, he'd put his thumb on the flange of the mixdown machine's take up reel, and de-sync the signal in an unusual way. The effect we know as the flanger came about because an electronics whiz tried to imitate the way it sounded. Phase, flange and chorus are electronic effects based on the ability to split a signal, modify it, and reintroduce it into the circuit path later.

The chorus effect has become the most popular of the three lately, and it gets its sound from slightly detuning the split off signal and cycling the variations against the unprocessed signal. In a way, this is similar to the 12 string guitar and the piano effect. Each string is slightly out of tune with the other and this produces a lush harmonic quality that is very rich sounding. The phase effect is what the name implies. The signal is reintroduced into the circuit path out of phase with the original. This makes a cycled whooshing sound that was the rage in the seventies. Eighties, if you were a country player.

Compression is a means of electronically fattening up a signal such that it not only sustains better, but also evens out the peaks and valleys. When compression and overdrive are combined, a "saturated" distortion is produced that can sustain for long periods.

The tremolo (literal meaning) was standard equipment on many amplifiers during the sixties and seventies, also. This effect was a cycled alternation in volume that could be set for speed. It was used in a lot of guitar music of the sixties and early seventies. Vibrato was also seen on amps, and it was an effect that cycled changes in pitch. To some extent these older analog effects have been phased out by digital effects such as harmonizers where a signal could be duplicated simultaneously by another a set interval apart. If you've studied intervals, you know that playing the same one over and over gets redundant quickly, so this type of effect loses its value in a fairly short amount of time. The octave effect is an early form of this where the primary signal was matched by two secondary signals, one, an octave below, and the other two octaves below, permitting a three note bass kind of sound. Octave pedals could also be set on the lowest signal only, in order to imitate a bass guitar.

So far, the effects mentioned have been static in terms of how they function. In other words, set em and forget em. The dynamic, or interactive effects are the wah-wah, the volume pedal, and the vibrato bar (tremolo bar) The wah-wah and the volume pedal are foot operated. The *wah* is a variable tone control that could produce effects that often came across as crying sounds. The tremolo bar gained a resurgence in popularity with the development of designs that actually stayed in tune. Coupled with an interest in dive bomb, motor cycle, and other sound effects, the tremolo had risen to the top of the heap by the mid eighties.

Sonics

Guitarists are always on the lookout for technology that will give them a sonic edge over the competition, or at least enable them to keep up with current trends. The range and quality of equipment the player has available to him nowadays is an embarrassment of riches. The temptation is to let our sound take control of our music. A great many professional guitarists have pretty much the same over-processed sound.

If you want to get noticed, you'll have to stand out from the crowd. Maybe when it comes to sound effects, less is more. When Hendrix experimented with all those effects, he was on the cutting edge, but nowadays modern signal processing is within the reach of everyone, so our attitude tends toward getting our money's worth out of them. Do all your songs sound the same because you use your one best sound for everything? Vary your setup. Try to step away from your personal preferences and ask yourself if it really helps the quality of the music it is supposed to enhance or is it a way to mask weakness in other more essential areas.

?

Q: How do you get a guitarist to:

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| 1) Turn up? | A: Put a volume control on his guitar. |
| 2) Turn down? | A: Put a chart in front of him. |

?

Guitar Tuning

By now you are familiar with the concept that as a result of the guitar's tuning system, a pattern organization occurs on the fretboard that is as important as any other aspect of learning to play. This section deals with the physics, mathematics, mechanics and history underlying that tuning system by examining: 1) the science of acoustics upon which musical experience is founded, 2) our present system of *temperament*, and its evolution, and 3) the history and evolution of the guitar's tuning system.

When Fretboard Logic was first published, yours truly would eagerly promote the book to other guitar players with a short description to the effect that it would help them because it explained the reasoning behind the guitar's tuning. Before I could get another word out they would quickly assure me that they already knew how to tune their guitars and were looking for a book to help them learn how to play it better or something to that effect. Although I managed to create a lot of wrong first impressions, there is, in fact, a great deal worth discussing about tuning systems per se, from a historical perspective to present day common usage.

Something many players don't realize but might have suspected all along is that when a guitar is correctly tuned, it does not produce acoustically correct intervals and so is not capable of producing perfect chords even under optimal circumstances. One of my favorite guitarisms on this subject is from the guy who said, "If I ever get this danged thing in tune, I'm gonna weld it in place." The first section deals with coming to grips with the necessary compromises that were adopted long ago but still continue to promote misconceptions that plague musicians and guitarists in particular. Our present system came into popular usage around J.S. Bach's time and like the guitar's own tuning system, is difficult if not impossible to improve upon because of its sheer versatility and practicality. The third section deals with the evolution of the guitar which led to the system in use today. It should be noted that this area was researched as much for my own interest than out of any sense of obligation teachingwise, but as with most endeavors of this sort, it was well worth the effort. Also, it seemed fitting that the last chapter of the last book should end at the beginning - with an explanation of a tuning system.

Before we go any further, I want to state that I am of the belief that most guitar players subscribe to a type of thinking that would be characterized as *right brain* oriented, *left brain* being the more ordered and analytical type of thinking. If differential calculus books were crib toys for you, then you're a left brainer. Us right brainers are supposed to be more, uh, creative and stuff. So, knowing how most guitar brains are, it is with trepidation that I utter the "M" word. Without some *math* there is no way to discuss why tuning can be so hard especially, and ironically, for people who have good pitch recognition. By the way, pitch recognition is simply a matter of concentration and practice. It can be compared to the ability to visually distinguish subtle differences in colors. Please don't confuse this remark with the numerous attempts dating back to the 19th century, to establish an association between the seven colors of the spectrum and the seven pitches in a diatonic scale. Such associations are purely subjective and by a simple comparison of the numerous attempts at this, it can be shown there has never been any consistency or relevance from one to another. Other than they make money for the folks that sell them, they are an exercise in "bogusitude", as a friend would say. From the outset, the difference between *perfect* and *relative* pitch are undifferentiated. Any musician has relative pitch, and a musician with perfect pitch would call it anything but a gift.

Guitar Tuning

Pitch recognition is a knack easier for some to acquire than others, but there's nothing extraordinary or even all that special about it. Lately it has become so oversold that I have to be physically restrained whenever some twit announces that he has "perfect pitch". Math, on the other hand is everywhere. Even if you aren't a left brainer you might eventually appreciate that numbers can always be reduced to their most fundamental relationships with little, if any, of the ambiguity of words.

Acoustics and Tuning

The foundation of almost all musical experience is the vibration of elastic matter within the range of human hearing. Elasticity appears in many forms such as stretched materials, *columns* of air, rigid materials, etc. The vibrational properties are realized in musical instrument design from the crudest to the most technologically advanced.

Acoustically, all vibrations can be characterized by two primary properties: amplitude and frequency. *Amplitude* pertains to a vibration's relative loudness or softness and *frequency* to its relative highness or lowness. Amplitude means the same as loudness and frequency the same as pitch (for now). On a guitar, you can actually see a string's amplitude by plucking it harder or softer and watching how wide it oscillates. Frequency can also be seen by shortening the length of the string and watching it speed up, but it is much more difficult unless special equipment is used. Pitches are determined by an arithmetic number in terms of its cycles per second. Loudness is determined on a geometric basis in terms of how it is perceived. Pitch is specific and loudness much more relative.

A discussion on tuning has to begin with a naturally occurring acoustical phenomenon called the overtone series or harmonics. The overtone series is the tones other than the fundamental, the lowest and most easily perceived tone, that make up every note played. The number and intensity of an instrument's harmonics determine the timbre, or quality of the tone. Richer sounds, like notes from a bowed violin or an acoustic guitar, have more overtones; purer sounds, like notes played on a flute or an (unmodified) electric guitar, have fewer. Everyone has produced tones on their guitar by lightly touching but not fretting the string just over certain frets and then plucking the string near the bridge. These are harmonics or partials. Each and every partial or harmonic contributes to the overall timbre or quality of an instruments sound. The relative strength of each partial, given the instruments design, gives its tone what could be considered an "acoustical fingerprint" by which we distinguish one from another. Even timbres similar in character can be easily distinguished by subtle cues from the harmonics. The pure tone of an (unaffected) electric guitar is easily distinguished from the pure tone of a flute. Another term comes into play here: intonation, or pitch accuracy. The reason a guitar has frets is to provide the player with easy, accurate intonation. (The idea of frets is a clever and lasting invention many hundreds of years old, and here again, it is hard to know who gets the credit.) The placement of the frets is not a simple matter and is a compromise corresponding to the even tempered tuning system. Tuning problems arise because there are necessary compensations made for the overtone series that create an imperfect pitch relationship on the fretboard. We will demonstrate mathematically that when you tune by matching the harmonics on the seventh and fifth frets of adjacent string pairs, you get the guitar dog's biggest flea, and that is playing noticeably out of tune. Nothing makes you sound more like an amateur than playing noticeably out of tune. And don't bother asking me how I know.

Guitar Tuning

Lets take a closer look at the overtone series. A scientific definition for the overtone series is: a series of tones consisting of the fundamental tone and the overtones produced by it, whose frequencies are *consecutive integral multiples* of the frequency of the fundamental. (You might want to read that last sentence over again about forty-six times.) It boils down to the consecutive integral multiples part. Simply put, consecutive integral (integer) multiples is "mathese" for taking a number and multiplying it first by 1, then by 2, then by 3, then by 4 and so on. For example, consecutive integral multiples of the number 3 are: 3, 6, 9, 12, and so on. No problemo. Now let's attach a more useful musical number to it and do it again. Let's use 440 Hz as in "A-440" which is the standard reference for tuning 12 tone instruments all over the world.

By the way, just to cover the bases, Hz is an abbreviation for *Hertz*, an award term for cycles per second. For those new to this term, acoustical frequencies, or those that are able to be heard by humans, are normally designated in Hertz (Hz) and Kilohertz (Khz) or thousands of cycles per second for ease of use. The highest and lowest limits of human hearing are usually given at 20 Hz to 20 Khz.

Consecutive multiples and the overtone series in cycles per second of A 440 are: 440, 880, 1320, 1760 and so on. An important result of the consecutive integral multiple process is that it produces a consistent series of intervals, or two-note groupings and ratios to be discussed momentarily. Watch how the math (frequencies in cycles per second) and the music (the order of intervals) line up in the overtone series on the fretboard:

Frequency	C.I.M.	Interval	Note	Where on Guitar
440 Hz	= 440 x 1 =	Unison	= A	1st string 5th fret
880 Hz	= 440 x 2 =	Octave	= A	1st string 17th fret
1320 Hz	= 440 x 3 =	Fifth	= E	1st string 24th fret

So far so good. Now lets apply this relationship in detail to a more guitar oriented frequency: 110 Hz. 110 Hz is the frequency of the open A string as you might have known. This is a good starting point because the multiples are easy to see and you are able to play the harmonics and hear the results on your guitar.

Frequency	C.I.M.	Interval	Note	Where on Guitar
110 Hz	= 110 x 1 =	Unison	= A	5th String Open
220 Hz	= 110 x 2 =	Octave	= A	5th String 12th fret harmonic
330 Hz	= 110 x 3 =	Fifth	= E	5th String 7th fret harmonic
440 Hz	= 110 x 4 =	Fourth	= A	5th String 5th fret harmonic
550 Hz	= 110 x 5 =	Maj. Third	= C#	5th String 4th fret harmonic
660 Hz	= 110 x 6 =	Min. Third	= E	5th String 3rd fret harmonic

The order of intervals resulting from the consecutive integer multiples is also a constant. The intervals in order are: Unison, Octave, Fifth, Fourth, Major 3rd, Minor 3rd, Minor 3rd, Major 2nd, Major 2nd, Major 2nd, Major 2nd, Minor 2nd, Major 2nd, Minor second, Minor 2nd, Major 2nd.

Guitar Tuning

The consecutive integer multiples of the naturally occurring overtone series produce a series of intervals which, given the twelve tone system, can be reduced to a series of notes where each note has an exact pitch. The C.I.M.s produce another constant in the form of a ratio between intervals as discovered by Greek philosopher and mathematician Pythagoras. This is how it works. If the frequency of a given tone is 1, then its octave will be 2 according to the C.I.M. This makes the ratio of the octave to the fundamental 2:1. Since the C.I.M. principle says the next multiple is 3, then the ratio of the next interval to the last one is 3:2 and the interval is a 5th. The next C.I.M. is 4 so the next ratio is 4:3 and the interval is a 4th and so on. Below is another chart to show the relationships between the ratios and the resulting intervals of the overtone series.

Interval	Ratio
Unison	1:1
Octave	2:1
Fifth	3:2
Fourth	4:3
Major 3rd	5:4

Temperament

Throughout history, there have been various schemes for tuning the intervals of the twelve tone system, or temperament, and as attitudes and technologies evolved, tuning systems evolved right along. **Temperament** is the general term for the systems of tuning in which the intervals are compensated, or deviated from acoustical correctness according to the mathematical precepts of Pythagoras. These adjustments have always been necessary since tuning systems based on the pure intervals are very limited minimizing the availability of keys and harmonic progression.

The **Pythagorean scale** is a scale in which all the frequencies are derived from the interval of the fifth and the ratio of 3:2 by multiplying upwards and dividing downwards. It was devised to closely follow the overtone series and produce acoustically pure intervals. The third of C, for example, is derived as the fourth consecutive fifth (C-G, G-D, D-A, A-E), and the ratios are $3/2 \times 3/2 \times 3/2 \times 3/2 = 81/16$. Reduced downward two octaves (divided) = $81/64$. This third is slightly higher (8 cents) than that of equal temperament, and much higher, 22 cents (almost a quarter of a semitone) than that of *just* intonation. The term **cent** means one hundredth (1/100) of a semitone. In intervallic terms the cent is the standard of measure just as Hz is in pitch measurement.

Just intonation is a theoretical system of tuning in which the third as well as the fifth are acoustically correct, and in which all the other intervals are derived from these two in the manner described above, dividing downward and multiplying upward. This system of tuning results in even greater limitations than the Pythagorean, and is included here for completeness only.

The mean-tone system was in vogue prior to our present day system of tuning.

Guitar Tuning

The **mean-tone system** featured pure 3rds and almost pure 5ths in the simple keys, or those with few accidentals, but was virtually unusable otherwise. Keys with more than a few sharps or flats were fairly uncommon from the 14th to 16th centuries, and it is likely for that very reason.

All of which brings us to our present day system of temperament originally termed *well* tempering, but now called *equal*. The "equal" in equal temperament pertains to the result of each key being equal to the next regardless of the number of accidentals, for the purpose of transposition, modulation, etc. This comes about as a result of making the octaves pure and compensating the other intervals. **Equal temperament** is based on the division of the octave into 12 equal parts (the 12th root of 2), each part representing a semitone. This fairly modern system makes it possible for the first time to play in all keys with no side effects such as would occur when accidentals were used with other tuning systems.

The theory behind equal temperament was known as far back as the 16th century, but it did not gain wide acceptance until J.S. Bach's lifetime. Bach produced a work of historical significance called "The Well-Tempered Clavier" which featured keyboard pieces in every key possible using the system. From that point on, equal temperament has become the standard because although the intervals are not perfect, the ability to make a smooth transition from key area to key area makes it the most practical by far.

In equal tempering the fifths are flatted so the octaves come out true doubles. Remember that the violin family of instruments are tuned in fifths and have no frets meaning that every note must be manually intonated. When the strings are matched for perfect fifths (tuning is traditionally done by aligning or *justifying* the adjacent strings), the tuning is *just* oriented. Because there are no frets, the players of this family of instruments are constantly adjusting for note accuracy or correct intonation by sliding, rolling, vibrato etc. Pianos have three strings per note in the middle range, and the strings are tuned slightly out of sync with each other to produce a richer tone.

The following is the formula for calculating exact frequencies in the even tempering system of tuning: **Fr (2 1/12)^N** Where:

F = Freq.

r = reference pitch (110, 220, 440, 880, etc.)

2 1/12 = 1.0594630943593

N = Number of 1/2 tones from known pitch to desired pitch *non-inclusive*

or: **Fr (1.0594630943593)^N**

Example: To find C above A 440:

440 (1.0594630943593)³ =

440 (1.1892071150027) =

523.25113060119 =

523.25

Guitar Physics - Equal Tempered Frequencies

Example: To find D above A 440:

$$440 (1.0594630943593)^5 =$$

$$440 (1.3348398541701) =$$

$$587.32953583484 =$$

$$587.34$$

To find F (4th Stg, 3rd fret):

$$110 (1.0594630943593)^8 =$$

$$110 (1.5874010519683) =$$

$$174.61411571651 =$$

$$174.61$$

Below are the open string's frequencies.

To find (lowest) E:

$$55 (1.0594630943593)^7 =$$

$$55 (1.4983070768767) =$$

$$82.406889228219 =$$

$$\mathbf{82.41}$$

Open A: **110** (Reference pitch)

To find (open) D:

$$110 (1.0594630943593)^5 =$$

$$220 (1.3348398541701) =$$

$$146.83238395871 =$$

$$\mathbf{146.83}$$

To find (Open) G above A 110:

$$110 (1.0594630943593)^{10} =$$

$$110 (1.7817974362808) =$$

$$195.99771799089 =$$

$$\mathbf{196.00}$$

To find (open) B:

$$220 (1.0594630943593)^2 =$$

$$220 (1.1224620483094) =$$

$$246.94165062807 =$$

$$\mathbf{246.94}$$

To find (open 1st String) E:

$$220 (1.0594630943593)^7 =$$

$$220 (1.4983070768767) =$$

$$329.62755691287 =$$

$$\mathbf{329.63}$$

	82.41	110.00	146.83	196.00	246.94	329.62
	87.31	116.54	155.56	207.65	261.63	349.23
	92.50	123.47	164.81	220.00	277.18	370.00
	98.00	130.81	174.61	233.08	293.66	392.00
	103.83	138.59	185.00	246.94	311.13	415.30
	110.00	146.83	196.00	261.63	329.63	440.00
	116.54	155.56	207.65	277.18	349.23	466.16
	123.47	164.81	220.00	293.66	370.00	493.88
	130.81	174.61	223.08	311.13	392.00	523.25
	138.59	185.00	246.94	329.63	415.30	554.37
	146.83	196.00	261.63	349.23	440.00	587.34
	155.56	207.65	277.18	370.00	446.16	622.25
12th	164.81	220.00	☆293.66	392.00	☆493.88	659.26
						698.46
						739.99
						784.00
						830.61
						880.00
						932.33
						987.77
						1046.50
						1108.73
						1174.66
						1244.51
24th		☆		☆		1318.51

Guitar Tuning

Using the methods discussed, we can compare the frequencies that occur when playing the harmonics against the even tempered frequencies. We've established the reference of A-440 plus its multiples and divisions as a basis for comparison. Using open A-110 as our starting point, the Pythagorean method for determining the frequency of the E harmonic (the 5th of A) is as follows: $110 \times 3/2 = 330/2 = 165$. Don't forget that the 3/2 figure came from the ratio of the consecutive integral multiples for the fifth. The equal tempered frequency as calculated on the previous page using the $12\sqrt{2}$ is **164.81**. Not off by much but check out the difference in Hz between one A at 164.81 and A# at 174.61. The difference is 9.8 Hz. At these frequencies, a mere 1 Hz is about a ten percent discrepancy or 10 cents off. Thus the .19 Hz difference in this one frequency represents about a couple of cents. Not that noticeable per se, but take a look at how much variation is occurs in some of the frequencies below.

What follows is a chart of pitches on the A string as calculated using the Pythagorean system as compared to Equal Temperament.

Note	Pythagorean	Equal Tempered
A	110.00	110.00
A#	117.47	116.54
B	123.75	123.47
C	132.15	130.81
C#	139.22	138.59
D	148.67	146.83
D#	156.62	155.56
E	165.00	164.81
F	176.20	174.61
F#	185.63	185.00
G	198.22	196.00
G#	208.83	207.65
A	223.00	220.00

One or two other things should also be mentioned concerning the process of tuning. Whenever a carpenter is marking consecutive pieces of wood to be cut the same length, he has the option of using each successive piece as the guide for the next mark, or using just one piece to make the mark for each successive piece to be cut. Which one is more accurate and why? If you answered to use just one piece to make all the marks, you are correct. Using only one as a guide avoids the gremlin of accumulated error. **Accumulated error** is a term for when unnoticeable imperfections are multiplied until they are noticeable. (You would accumulate less error if you were to use the first string as the sole reference pitch for the others.) Add accumulated error to the method of tuning by harmonics and you have a formula for being noticeably out of tune. Postscript. If you just want to get in tune, use an electronic tuner, and be sure that the strings are not hung up in any of the instrument's mechanisms, slots, etc. When using an electronic tuner, if you are below the target, tighten almost to the "zero" point on the meter and pluck the string hard and it will jump the last few cents. If you are above the target, tug the string the rest of the way to the zero instead of moving the machine heads. These tactics serve to "settle" the string into place and take up any latent slack that may still be in the system. Guitars with tremolos are especially sensitive and require more time and patience.

Guitar Tuning

A comparison of low and high frequencies as illustrated on the fretboard graphic a couple pages back, shows that the half step's value in Hz is constantly increasing. Its value in cents is constant, however. The unit of intervallic measure being the cent, we can get a feel for this value by comparing it to something we are naturally familiar with as guitarists: bends. As guitar players we are used to bending in whole tones, half tones and microtones (quarter tones and less). If a half tone is 100 cents, then a quarter tone, or a half fret bend, is 50 cents. An eighth tone is 25 cents and a sixteenth tone is 17.5 cents, and so on.

Evolution of the Guitar and its Tuning System

The last section is devoted to a discussion on the evolution of the guitar and its tuning system. The guitar's ancestry can be traced significantly back to the lute. The lute is of Arab descent, and artwork as early as the 13th century depicts four string versions of this predecessor to the guitar. Manuscripts show it to have been tuned in straight fourths. Within the 14th century the strings evolved into pairs or **courses** and tunings included the interval of a 3rd between outer 4ths. It should be apparent at this point that the guitar's tuning system was an evolutionary process spanning centuries, and not the achievement of any one person, as has been suggested. The instruction books of the day recommended tightening the highest string almost to the breaking point and tuning the others from that reference point. There is little doubt that this was to permit the maximum level of volume the delicate instrument was capable of producing. Less taut strings weren't as prone to breakage, but they were slower to recover for rapidly played passages. The next step in the evolution was the addition of two more courses bringing the total to six, with the standard tuning 4th, 4th 3rd, 4th, & 4th. Although surprisingly close to modern guitar tuning, it fails to achieve the same results with respect to pattern organization. During the 17th century, new combinations of intervals and numbers of strings were experimented with including nine course versions; the intervals 4th, 4th, 3rd, 3rd, & 3rd; and 4th, 3rd, 3rd, 4th, & 3rd.

The lute during this period of history was far and away the most popular choice for the virtuoso performer. The design of the instrument was refined to a point of near perfection (within existing technologies) and the guitar's more immediate relatives only succeeded in gaining an edge to an extent due to ruggedness of design and construction. Notable among these predecessors is the vihuela, a Spanish instrument more guitar-like than lute-like. Also worth mentioning are the cittern, the pandora and the English guitar. The cittern featured a **re-entrant** tuning, meaning the fourth course was an octave higher than the third as with the modern ukelele. The cittern also featured wire strings which, again, were louder and brighter than either the gut or silk strings of the day. More variations in construction produced the gittern, and the guitarra, but none of these featured the tuning system now in use. The closest was a 16th century five course instrument dubbed the *Spanish guitar*, with the intervals 4th, 4th, 3rd, & 4th. Now we're getting close. During this period, a sixth course was added (a 4th in the bass), and the courses were replaced by single strings. This was the instrument known to Paganini, Schubert, Sor, and other notables. And this was the tuning system which may one day find its rightful place in the history of the instrument, as clearly the optimal combination of number of strings and intervallic spacing for four fretting fingers.

Guitar Tuning

Postscript. A friend of mine who happens to be a guitar brain and a history professor, has a pet theory about the evolution of guitar design. He makes a pretty good case that the only consistency in guitar design has been in the direction of loudness. His arguments are more than a little plausible considering the following revisions in the tone production capabilities of the instrument. It was given more strings and the size of its resonating chamber steadily increased. Steel strings were substituted for gut and fiber, and the box was reinforced. The construction grew sturdier and more robust until a solid plank was implemented and the volume was derived from a separate source. Once electronic pickups and amplification were implemented, the combination enabled the instrument to produce so much volume that now you can't come away from a concert without your ears ringing from the sound pressure levels. But the evolution of the instrument has enabled performers to reach the size audiences that the master lutenists of the 14th century could only dream of. What began as a delicate parlour instrument has evolved into a sonic sledge hammer that has practically no limitations on volume.

1) An analog tone generator.

2) Six drift-prone monophonic oscillators on a plank of wood.

Hartley Peavey and
Craig Anderton - upon being asked
to define a guitar.

Coda

The three volumes of the Fretboard Logic series have each been developed with certain objectives in mind. In Vol. I, the pattern organization resulting from the tuning system was presented as a wholly guitaristic issue, separate from the ordinary musical requirements and not universally appreciated. In Vol. II, the primary tonal groupings used in music of all types were presented in the context of this pattern organization in order to provide the player with a means to construct the musical entities known as chords, scales, and arpeggios without the necessity of rote memorization of large amounts of seemingly unrelated information. In Vol. III, the focus widened to encompass as many of the issues facing the practicing guitarist as possible. The overall goal has been to offer a familiar and comfortable place to work (the patterns of the fretboard), the tools with which to do the work (tonal groupings) and the methods and practices with which the work is best understood and accomplished.

In the years since the first book was published, the single most common response to the method has been something to the effect that the readers wished they could have had it (more or less) twenty years ago. As a result, a conscious effort was made in Vol. III to produce the things the author wished he himself could have had, twenty years ago.

Although every effort has been made to produce the books accurately, a certain amount of errata is to be expected, and the author throws himself at the mercy of his readers on this account. I am eternally grateful to those who send corrections although I kick over my garbage can and swear in Technicolor every time another mistake is discovered.

Recommended Reading

This section is intended to serve as both a general bibliography and recommendation for further study, amusement, and enlightenment.

The Rolling Stone History of Rock and Roll, Miller
Making Music, George Martin
The Schillinger System of Musical Composition, Schillinger
The Musicians Business and Legal Guide, Mark Halloran
Harmony, Walter Piston
The Guitar Book, Tom Wheeler
Fundamentals of Musical Acoustics, Arthur Benade
Clive, Inside the Record Business, Clive Davis
Hitmen, Frederick Dannen
Rock Hardware, Tony Bacon
Complete Guitar Repair, H. Kamimoto
The Beatles Recording Sessions, Lewisohn
Guitar Electronics, Donald Brosnac
Home Recording for Musicians, Craig Anderton
The Ultimate Guitar Book, Tony Bacon
American Guitars, Tom Wheeler
The Harvard Brief Dictionary of Music, W. Apel
Psychotic Reactions and Carburetor Dung, Lester Bangs
This Business of Music, Shemel and Krasilovsky
A Whack On The Side Of The Head, Roger von Oech
The Guitar And Other Fretted Instruments, Albert Birch
Treatise On Harmony, Rameau
Sensations Of Tone, Hemholtz
The Craft Of Musical Composition, Hindemith
The Book of Musical Anecdotes, Norman Lebrecht
Hammer of The Gods
Star Making Machinery
World Book Encyclopedia
The Rolling Stone Interviews

Glossary

A tempo - return to previous tempo

Accelerando - Gradually increase tempo

Accent - Emphasis added to a tone or group of tones usually occurring on the first beat of a measure. Emphasis added to normally weak beats is termed syncopation.

Accidentals - 1. The symbols which increment notes by half steps. They are the sharp, flat, natural, double sharp and double flat. 2. Notes that are in a key "by accident".

Accumulated error - a term for when unnoticeable imperfections are multiplied until they become noticeable. Describes a little known problem concerning methods of tuning in which each successive string is used as a reference pitch.

Acoustics - The branch of physics dealing with sound therefore providing the scientific basis for all musical phenomena.

Action (guitar) - the distance from the top of frets to the bottom of the strings. This distance the string must travel to reach the fret.

AKA - abbv. for also known as.

Alteration - Changing a tone in half step increments. See accidentals.

Analysis - The separation of a whole into its constituent parts, and the determining of the proportions of those parts.]

Arpeggio - A chord played like a scale. Chord tones played in succession.

Articulation Techniques - the various non-standard methods of activating the strings such as hammer ons, pull offs, etc.

Attenuation - a reduction in strength, weakening. Pertains to sound as it is managed and perceived.

Beat - The repetitive temporal unit of rhythm.

Backbeat - A common time rhythm in which the accent is on the 2 and 4 counts as opposed to the 1 and 3.

Bar, barre- The use of the index finger to fret multiple strings for the purpose of playing forms in various positions.

Bar lines - In notation, the vertical lines that separate one measure from another.

CAGED Sequence - The arrangement of chord and scale forms as they occur naturally on a guitar fretboard.

Cent - 1/100 of a semitone. This is the unit of measurement of intervals. There are 1200 cents in an octave, and the chromatic scale is 0, 100, 200, 300, 400, etc., cents. Compare to frequency.

Glossary

Changes - Term used to describe the motion from one guitar chord to another.

Chord - A group of three or more (different) tones sounded simultaneously. On a guitar, chords are perceived as forms in positions.

Chord Form - A fretboard pattern which results from the combination of the guitar's tuning system and the twelve tone system of music indicating notes to be played simultaneously. There are five basic chord forms.

Clef - In standard notation, the symbol at the beginning of a composition which determine the relative pitches of the lines and spaces.

Comping - a corruption of the term accompaniment. For guitarists is generally strumming rhythmically to a progression.

Course - in stringed instrument design, a pair of strings played as one.

Crossover - A change of position on the fretboard such that the left hand passes over its previous position.

D.C. al Coda - return to the beginning of the piece and continue to the Coda sign, then jump to the Coda.

D.C. al Fine - return to the beginning of the piece and play to the Fine.

D.S. al Fine - return to the Segno (sign), play to the Fine (end).

D.S. al Coda - return to the Segno, and continue to the Coda sign, then jump to the Coda.

Degree - A numerical value ascribed to notes in a key for the purpose of equating them in any key.

Diatonic Scale - A scale with seven tones. Aka heptatonic.

Dot - A mark placed after a note indicating to increase its duration by one half.

Downbeat - Refers to the downward motion of a conductor's baton. The downbeat is the strong, usually first, count of a measure.

Duration - The length of time a note is held or tone sounded.

Enharmonic - Acoustically equivalent. Same tone but with different names.

Glossary

Equal Temperament - A method of tuning the pitches of the twelve tone system whereby the octaves are favored as true, meaning exact frequency doubles, and the other intervals are adjusted in relation to them. Equal temperament imperfectly corresponds with the overtone series since the intervals other than the octaves are not true. The system makes each key is the equivalent of the next, and harmonic activity involving multiple key areas practical.

Extension - A finger reach out of the normal playing area.

Fine - Marks the end of the music

FingerPicking - Aka Travis Picking. Right hand guitar style featuring a repeating pattern. Associated with Merle Travis and Elizabeth Cotten.

Five Basic Forms - The five chord and scale patterns which result from the guitar's tuning.

Form (guitar)- A distinct fretboard pattern resulting from the instrument's tuning system in combination with musical systems. Contrast with chord, scale, etc.

Formula (chord)- The combination of odd numbered degrees of a key and alterations which define each type of chord.

Frequency - The number of occurrences of a specified event within a given interval. The rate of repetitions of a tone. In music it is more or less synonymous with pitch and pertains to the perceived highness or lowness of a tone.

Frets - The metal strips precisely located on the playing area of the guitar enabling easy and accurate intonation.

Function - In harmony the characterization of a chord's tendency to progress to a chord with another function. The three primary chord functions are tonic, subdominant, and dominant.

Fusion - when characteristics of more than one style are combined to produce a type of music that is distinct from either of the original styles.

Group (Guitar) - In lead patterns relating each to a chord form for the purpose of naming the scale via form and position. Ex. C group, G group.

Harmony - A simultaneous sounding of tones of a musical nature. In general, the vertical structure of music. Contrast with melody.

Heptatonic - Seven toned.

Hertz - A term used to denote cycles per second. Abbv. Hz.

Interface - The common boundary between adjacent regions. In guitar this pertains to the operational aspects of the instrument as a pattern organization between the player and the music.

Glossary

Interval - Any two notes sounded either simultaneously or in succession. The distance in pitch between two notes.

Intonation - 1. The accuracy of pitch in producing music. Adherence to correct pitch. 2. (Guitar) - setting - The positioning of the string saddles to permit highest possible accuracy of pitch.

Inversion - In music when the order of the notes of a chord are changed such that a note other than the root is the lowest tone.

Iteration - Repetitions and layers of repetitions.

Key - a group of notes derived from the twelve tone system.

Keynote - The first and central note in a key. Aka tonic.

Key Signature - The sharps or flats at the beginning of a composition specifying the notes to be altered, and indicating the key.

Lead Pattern - A fretboard pattern which results from the combination of the guitar's tuning system and the twelve tone system of music indicating notes to be played in succession. There are two basic lead patterns. Lead patterns differ from scale forms in that they are regular patterns in various positions. Contrast with scale form.

Learning - The process by which changes in behavior result from experience or practice. Most forms fall into four categories: classical conditioning, instrumental conditioning, multiple response learning, and insight learning.

Lyrics - The words to a song.

M.M. - Malzel's Metronome or metronome marking.

Mathematics - the study of number, form, arrangement, and their relationships.

Mean-tone tempering - A system of tuning favoring perfect thirds and almost perfect fifths. Inaccurate beyond keys with more than three accidentals.

Measure - A subgroup of beats the first of which is accented. Measures are delineated by bar lines. A measure is a subunit of a musical works meter.

Mechanics (Musical) - The design, construction, operation, application and properties of sound producing devices.

Melody - A succession of tones of a musical nature where each tone possesses the characteristics of pitch and duration. Each successive pitch has direction (motion) relative to the previous one. Each successive duration has rhythm relative to the previous one. The horizontal structure of music. Contrast with harmony.

Meter - The basic organization of beats and accents measure by measure as specified by the time signature.

Glossary

Metronome - A device that produces a steady beat at a desired tempo.

Mode - A specific tonal orientation. A group of tones with a specified center.

Modulation - The process of changing keys in a composition.

Music - Organized sound. Contrast with noise.

Name, naming - In music the letter and accidental designation of notes, chords, scales, etc. Contrast with type and function.

Noise- Non musical sounds of a disorganized nature.

Notation - A system of symbols for recording music in written form.

Note - A musical concept denoting specific pitch and duration values. Ex. the G# note; half-note etc. 2. The written symbol itself. Contrast with tone. Generally, the note is what you see, the tone is what you hear.

Nucleus - In guitar, a form in which the degrees occur in succession from string to string starting from the root. In other instruments, this is termed "root position".

Octave - A pitch and its double. The term octave in music pertains to the eighth alphabet letter.

Open (Guitar)- Unfretted.

Open Position - Chords, scales, etc. played from the lowest possible point on the fretboard and including unfretted notes.

Pentatonic - Five toned.

Phrase - A musical statement.

Physics - The science of matter and energy and their interactions. Branches of physics include acoustics, mechanics, optics, thermodynamics, electromagnetism, etc.

Pitch - The relative highness or lowness of a tone.

Power Chords - Common name for intervals of a fifth played with heavy distortion. Often includes octave as root, fifth, root.

Position - The number of the fret by which a form is referenced, usually by the index finger.

Progression - A sequence of chords.

Pythagorean Scale - A scale attributed to the Greek philosopher and mathematician whereby all tones are derived from the interval of the fifth and the ratio of 3:2 thereby matching the naturally occurring overtone series. See temperament, equal temperament.

Glossary

Quatrad - A four note chord, aka seventh chord.

Rasgado- Sweeping the strings with the thumb or successive fingers to produce a rapid arpeggiation of the strings.

Re-entrant tuning - a tuning system whereby certain strings which would be low ordinarily, are tuned higher, usually by an octave, or vice versa.

Resolution - A period of repose or harmonic inactivity following tension such as a consonant tone, interval, or chord following a dissonant one.

Rest - A temporary cessation of tonal activity of a specific duration.

Ritardando - Gradually decrease tempo

Rhythm - In a general sense, anything that pertains to the durational characteristics of music. Rhythm is normally metric in nature in that its values are multiples of a temporal unit known as a beat. Beats are grouped into units termed measures (of time). In a more specific sense, rhythm is the patterns formed by the arrangement of note (duration) values.

Root - The first and lowest degree of an interval, chord, scale or arpeggio and note which specifies its name.

Scale - A group of notes sounded in succession.

Scale Form - A fretboard pattern which results from the combination of the guitar's tuning system and the twelve tone system of music indicating notes to be played in succession. Scale forms differ from lead patterns in that they are irregular patterns in only one position. Contrast with Lead Pattern.

Sequence - 1. A succession of events, forms, notes etc. 2. Musical and non-musical data stored in digital form.

Seventh Chord - A four note chord, aka quatrad. The seventh chords are Major seventh, minor seventh diminished seventh, augmented seventh, dominant seventh, and minor seventh flat five.

Song - Music form consisting of lyrics, melody and harmony.

Sound - Low frequency vibration normally within the range of human hearing of 20-20K Hz. With the exception of electronic oscillation, musical sound occurs when an elastic body is caused to vibrate. The two primary characteristics of musical sound are frequency and amplitude.

Staff - The five lines of standard notation on which pitches are placed.

Style - Pertains to the types of music as distinguished by cultural, historical, geographic, ethnic, religious, socioeconomic, and demographic considerations.

Sweep - Term used to describe arpeggios played with a chordal right hand technique.

Glossary

Symmetrical Chords - Chords whose lower and upper intervals are the same.

Syncopation - In rhythm when an accent is on a weak beat creating an unusual metric result. Off beat.

Tablature - A system of notation esp. for the guitar specifying the strings and frets to be played.

Target note - The final note in a phrase.

Technique - The physical aspects of playing.

Tempo - Relative speed at which a piece or section is played.

Tempo 1 - Return to original tempo.

Temperament - Various systems of tuning the pitches of the twelve tone system such that certain intervals are 'tempered' or deviated against the acoustically correct pitches of the Pythagorean scale. Systems using acoustically perfect intervals place a practical limit on the number of keys and harmonic material possible. Tempering schemes popular in the last few hundred years include mean tone, just, and equal temperament.

Tension - A physiological effect of notes, intervals and chords on the listener. Pertains to the dissonance of certain combined tones and suspense created in a musical composition.

Theory - The study of pitch and time relationships in music.

Tie - A curved line from one note to another indicating to sustain duration for the value of both notes.

Timbre - sound quality as determined by the relative strength of a sound's overtones. That which distinguishes tones of equal frequency and amplitude from one another.

Time Signature - The two numbers at the beginning of a musical composition specifying its meter. The number on top determines how many beats per measure; the number on the bottom determines what type of note gets a beat.

Tone - An audible frequency with the qualities of pitch, duration, intensity, and timbre. Contrast with note. In common usage, the tone is what we hear, whereas the note is what we see when written.

Tonic - The first and central note in a key. Aka keynote.

Triad - A three note chord. The four types of triads are Major, minor, diminished and augmented.

Tuning System - In a stringed instrument, the combination of a specific number of strings or courses, with a specific intervallic spacing. Refers specifically to the modern guitar's six open strings tuned in intervals of 4th, 4th, 4th, 3rd, & 4th, the result of which is an integral pattern organization of chord forms, scale forms and lead patterns.

Glossary

Twelve Tone System - A system of divisions of a pitch and its double ($12\sqrt{2}$) such that there are twelve pitches (semitones) of equivalent value between them (inclusive).

Type - Pertains to an interval's, chord's, scale's, etc. musical character, such as a "minor" chord or a "Major" scale. Contrast with *name* and *function*.

Upbeat - Refers to the upward motion of a conductor's baton. Upbeats are the weak beats in a measure.

Voice - An individual part of a chord or esp. a choral composition.

When you're a guitarist, sometimes you feel like you're hanging by six threads, and sometimes you feel like you've got the world on steel strings.

B.E.

By The Author

There are different ways to learn the truth about music. This is how I learned it. Our band used to practice at night in an office building owned by the singer's parents. One day her brother, Johnny, who has Downs Syndrome (actually PDD-NOS), came along to watch us play. The deal was he'd get to sit in with us pros if he behaved himself and didn't disturb us while we practiced. Throughout the rehearsal he sat quietly with his hands folded in his lap fiercely determined not to bother us while we polished our playlist for what must have seemed like an eternity to him. At the end of the rehearsal, he joined in on the one song he knew, "Johnny B. Goode" and there came a transformation you had to see to believe. It is not possible to adequately describe the sheer unrestrained intensity with which he threw himself into that song. His face turned beet red, the veins popped out of his neck, and his shirt was soaked with sweat. His eyes rolled around in his head while he screamed at the top of his lungs, his body a writhing, twisted, Gumby-thing. Ok, he got the words wrong, he got the chords wrong, and he got the melody wrong, but he got the important part right. He got "it" right. He reached down and grabbed a hold of the essence of some unnameable force that makes music transcendent. I realized later that the passion, intensity, and raw emotion that he put into "Johnny B. Goode" made the rest of us look like frauds. That's how I learned the truth about music.

"The best I've ever used. I keep loaning them out to my friends and they won't give em back. Send extra copies this time."

Tim Sharpe Seattle WA

"Brilliant."

Steve Hightower Tampa FL

*"Amazing. It filled in so many gaps."
Larry Weidel Greensboro NC*

*Thanks for putting your ideas in writing..."
James Quinn Hooks TX*

"It's the most sensible guitar book I've ever read."

Joe Hall Tampa FL

"These books are fantastic. I've been teaching for 30 years and they save a lot of time in the lesson."

Bill Heinz Delta CO

" Please find enclosed a M.O. for a copy of Fretboard Logic Volume II. I already have Volume I and it is a great book! If you come out with Volume III I will be pleased to buy it too."

Jon Thompson Chicago IL

"I have a library of guitar books at home - well over \$1000.00 invested in guitar books - but these two are the best."

Rod Hale Temple Terrace FL

"I found your book very interesting and informative in a practical way."

Bruce Kulick Kiss

It really is ingenious the way you've laid out things."

Terry Roche The Roches

"I heard of your book when two of my students brought it in for me to teach them from it. I've never found one book that did it all..."

Bill St. John Colorado Springs CO

"I just finished Fretboard Logic Volume 1 and I found it more valuable than the Star Wars Trilogy!"

Marshall Elliott Littleton CO

"I wish to say that Fretboard Logic Vol. I was interesting and enlightening. I started playing guitar at age 12. I soon lost interest because of the difficulty of the instrument. Recently I decided to finish what I started so many years ago. Your book has provided essential information in a clear fashion and has truly fueled the fire. I look forward to these other books."

Mark S. Weber St. Francis MN

"Vol. I was very impressive. I never learned so much so fast. I look forward to receiving Vol. II."

Brad Hollis Everett WA

"I really appreciate it. It's helped me piece together the fretboard in a way that I never have before."

Michael James Memphis TN

"I enjoyed Fretboard Logic Vol. I. I wish I had this when I was a beginner. Please rush Vol. II."

John Burke Santa Barbara CA

*"Thank you Bill Edwards! Your commitment to teaching has turned this malnourished student into a happy picker. Many many thanks."
Gena Rutkowski Silver City NM*

"Whenever my wife and I go into a music store so she can peruse music for her [piano] students, I gravitate toward the guitar section like a moth to a flame. I have been searching (albeit unconsciously) for a book that explains these mysteries of how the guitar is laid out. I figured that it just can't be that hard. But I was in a fog because of the music theory imposed upon the guitar instead of how the guitar works then adding music theory to it. Then I came across your unassuming book. I read the glowing praises on the back and decided to peruse it further. I couldn't believe what I was reading! I had found the Holy Grail! So I bought it and devoured it in one evening. Then I read it again a second time. Then I started reading it a third time and practicing it as I read. It makes so much sense. Being a left-brainer, I found your book totally logical. I took up the guitar to give my right brain a workout. Now I can appreciate the instrument a lot better and know how things fit together. In fact, I'm telling other guitarists that are learning, about your book. I'm glad I came across your books early on so I won't be wasting a lot of time and lose interest. It'll take a lot more practice to get proficient, but at least when I pay my dues early, they'll pay off in big dividends later."

Randy Little Lamont OK

"I bought Volume I of Fretboard Logic and found things in it I haven't found anywhere else."

Douglas McKay St. Paul MN

**"I've bought hundreds of dollars of instructions books but I've never seen anything that put things in as clear of a light. I'm just surprised that it isn't more well known."
Werner Dellmeier Concord CA**

"I don't care if you're a beginner, novice or professional, Fretboard Logic is amazingly inspirational. Even if you're a professional guitar player and have been playing 20 years - this book will benefit you - guaranteed."

Matt Edgeman Trilby FL

"Your first volume explaining the reasoning behind the guitar's unique tuning system is excellent. Please send me Volume II."

George Ridgeway Winter Park FL

**" Bill, your books are good! They're unlike many books (and solos for that matter) that seem to take forever to get through and not say much that the average person can understand. Thanks for sharing your knowledge with us thrashers. Another great thing I've discovered about your books is that one doesn't even need to have a guitar in hand to learn from them. I travel a lot and I've found that your books have the visualization tools that let me practice mentally while away from the fretboard. I'd heard from my keyboard playing friends that this mental activity is a key part of the learning process, but I hadn't been able to achieve it until I discovered your books. Thanks again!"
Dave Jenkins, Macon GA**

Volume III is a guitar player's encyclopedia.

"It's not only enlightening in a guitaristic sense, it's fun to read."

Charlie Bradley San Diego CA

"You want testimonials to the quality of the material and quality of usable knowledge contained in your books? Here's 24.95. Please send Fretboard Logic III to me at the following address. NUFF SAID!"
Douglas Ward Mayo FL

"I should state my 100% satisfaction to your fine work. One of the things I particularly like about your 1st book is that you explain materials in an intelligent way; you show us facts and reasons behind them."

Asoka Shinmyo Tokyo Japan

"After fumbling around for years - I finally 'Get-it' now! Keep up the good work. Your 'Introductions' to Theory, Technique, Rhythm, Lead & Styles left me salivating for more! Send a catalog - I'll buy everything you write! [and wrote later.] Thanks again. What a great book [Vol. III]. You continue to exceed all my expectations & are worth every cent!"

Allan Barsema Rockford IL

"Dear Bill, Just some happy greetings from a content customer who might also refrain 'why didn't I meet your work earlier?' Better now than never. Yours Kindly"

Michael Will Hannover Germany

"The Fretboard Logic series is the best learning tool for the guitarist. I like your use of humor in teaching as well. Thanks to you, I have a better understanding of music and that will help prepare me on my way to a career in music."

Jason Teague Hobbs NM

"Hooray! Please rush me a copy of Fretboard Logic Vol. III. Thanks for the 'new way of looking at things!'"

Linda Salvatore Mt. Ephraim NJ

"I have thoroughly enjoyed volumes one and two and look forward to what volume three has to offer. Thank you."

Trevor Dell Chagrin Falls OH

"I'd like to start out by saying that your book 'Fretboard Logic' has been an inspiration to me. For the first time, what has been a mystery to me is beginning to make sense. I was down at [the music store] when I picked up Volume I. I went home, sat down and read it cover to cover. I was totally amazed at the sense it was making. Your introduction touched on things that were so true in my own experience."

David Diaz Temple Terrace FL

"Please send me Fretboard Logic III. The other two books are great!"

Rick Wieprecht Hamilton IL

"Now I'm finishing the 1st book, and I'm addicted to visualizing my fretboard. Even though one knew completely what to do on a keyboard, he/she would not be able to do anything on a fretboard without understanding this hidden organization. This is the book every guitarist has to have! I didn't know that there's the 3rd book published already. Please send one to me. I'm totally satisfied with the books you've sent to me and I'm sure that III will not disappoint me."

Naoki Ebara Osaka Japan

ISBN 0-9624770-2-8 24.95

Canada/Intl. 26.95

ISBN 0-9624770-2-8



9 780962 477027

52495>

